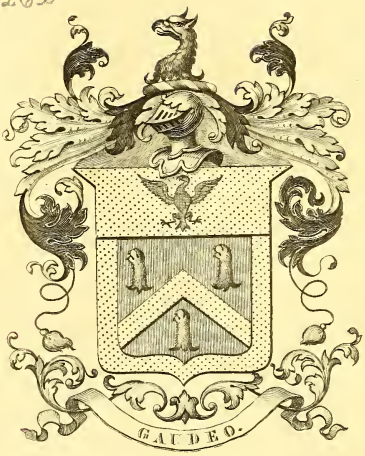
A268



John Carter Brown.

The NATURAL HISTORY OF *North-Carolina.*

WITH AN

ACCOUNT OF THE

Trade, Manners, and Customs of the CHRISTIAN and INDIAN Inhabitants. Illustrated with *Copper-Plates*, whereon are curiously Engraved the *Map* of the Country, several strange *Beasts*, *Birds*, *Fishes*, *Snakes*, *Insects*, *Trees*, and *Plants*, &c.

By JOHN BRICKELL, M. D.

Nostra nos in urbe peregrinamur. CIC.

DUBLIN:

Printed by JAMES CARSON, in *Coghill's-Court*, *Dame-street*, opposite to the *Castle-Market*. For the AUTHOR, 1737.

RPJCB

JOHN CARTER BROWN

TO

The Right HONOURABLE AND TRULY NOBLE RICHARD

EARL of *ANGLESEY*,
Viſcount VALENTIA, Lord Baron ALTHAM,
Lord Baron MOUNTNORRIS, Lord Baron of
NEWPORT PAGNEL; and Cuſtos Rotulorum
of the County of WEXFORD.

May it pleaſe Your LORDSHIP,

THOUGH I know how preſumptuous it is, to affix ſo great a Name to theſe inconſiderable Papers, yet the Neceſſity

Dedication.

Neceſſity of a Patron, both to Men and Books, againſt the unavoidable Cenſures of buſie Men, may perhaps, help to excuſe my Ambition, tho' exceeding its due Meaſure.

I muſt confeſs, tho' there may be nothing worthy in this Undertaking, yet at leaſt, it may have the Splendour and Warmth of a Burning-Glaſs, which borrowing a Flame from the Eye of Heaven, ſhines and burns by the Rays of the Sun its Patron.

Be pleaſed, my Lord, to caſt your Eye on theſe my Endeavours, which, thro' Your benignity, cannot go without their hoped for Effects; for under Your *Lordſhips* Protection, they will not only live

live now in Eſtimation and Reſpect, but ſtand as a ſignal to future Times of your *Lordſhip's* unlimited Goodneſs, fruſtrating the Deſigns of malicious Men.

May the great God ſtill preſerve Your Health, and inſpire you with all Wiſdom and Honour, ſo peculiar to Your Noble Anceſtors, whoſe Virtuous and Heroick Actions, are laſting Monuments to future Ages.

To give any farther Encomiums, on Your *Lordſhip's* Perfections, I muſt acknowledge would be far ſurpaſſing my weak Abilities, when I conſider, that You are the Head of that great and illuſtrious Family, whoſe many ſhining Virtues, have diſtinguiſhed themſelves in the greateſt Courts in *Europe*.

L

Dedication.

I ſhall only add, that God raiſes up great and virtuous Men, to make Princes and Nations happy, by the Influence of their Wiſdom and good Examples.

The deep Senſe of theſe Your great Merits, has even inſpired me with this Ambition, to teſtifie with what Reſpect I am,

My moſt Honoured Lord,

Your Lordſhips moſt obliged,

and moſt humble Servant,

JOHN BRICKELL.

THE PREFACE.

I will not be to my purpose to enquire whether America *was known to the Antients, there being various Opinions about it, yet with more Curiosity than certainty, whence this* New World *was Peopled; some assigning that the* Hesperides (*so called from* Hesperus *King of* Spain) *and the Continent of* America *were Peopled by the* Spaniards. *Others affirm that the* Americans *are the Race of* Jews *carried into captivity by* Salamanazer *and placed in Countrys till then not Inhabited, after a progress of* 18 *Months. Many believe they were People carried by Storm, being* Chinesses *sailing on the* Pacifick South Sea, *or other* Nothern People (*allowing the possibility of each Opinion.*)

Opinion) *I will not pretend to take upon me to decide the Controverſy, being altogether a ſtranger to the certainty of the Fact.*

The Writings of many Learned Men may be ſeen on this Head, who after having ſearch'd all the Records of Antiquity, ſhew much Erudition, but nothing of certainty, concerning the Antient Affairs of America. *I know the Memory of a Deluge is preſerved amongſt theſe People, but whether it is to be underſtood of the univerſal Flood, or the Inundation of ſome particular Provinces, I leave it to others to diſcourſe upon, for I am willing to lay aſide all manner of Conjectures of this Nature, having enough of Truth to treat of.*

The ſeveral Climates of the World have influenced the People with Natures very different from each other, and even their different Speeches bear ſome proportion of Analogie *with their Natures, as is to be ſeen amongſt the* Whites, Indians, *and* Blacks, *that are to be met with in this part of the World.*

But waveing theſe Diſcourſes, we here preſent the World with a Natural-Hiſtory *of* North-Carolina, *it being a compendious Collection, of moſt things yet known in that part of the World; wherein I have laid down every thing with Impartiality and Truth, in the moſt plain and eaſie Terms, which indeed is the Duty of every Writer, and preferable to a more eloquent Stile, accompanied with many Falſities.*

I have therefore endeavour'd in the following Sheets to give as faithful and exact Account of Carolina,

rolina, *as discoveries yet made will Authorize, and if any take offence at what is said about the* Indians *and their wanton and lascivious manner of living, I hope they will Judge of every Passage with due deference to good Authority of the most knowing and substantial Planters in those Parts. And consider that the nature of the Work required my being somewhat particular, in order to shew the good and bad Qualities of these poor Creatures, who at present have no light or benefit of the* Gospel.

And had we been as careful as the Spaniards *and* French, *in sending over proper* Missionaries *to Instruct these miserable People, we shou'd never have had occasion to give this Relation of them. Besides if these Methods had been put in practice, we undoubtedly had been better informed and aquainted with the many hidden Secrets in this part of the World, which these People are well aquainted with, and which they never will make known to us till they are Instructed in the* Christian Faith, *and have intirely abolished the many Idolatrous Customs and Practices still prevailing amongst them.*

I have viewed not only most part of the Lands Inhabited by the Christians, *but likewise vast spacious Tracts lying between them and the Mountains, from whence our noblest Rivers have their rise, running for several hundreds of Miles towards the Ocean, while they water and adorn as pleasant and fertil a Country as any in* Europe, *the greatest part whereof is only inhabited by* Savage Indians, *who*

covet

covet a Christian *Neighbourhood for the advantage of Trade. But not to amuse the Reader any longer with Encomiums on* Carolina, *I refer them to my Description of that Country, and it's Inhabitants, which they will find in the following* Natural History, *in which I have been very exact; and for Methods sake, have ranged each Species of* Animals, Vegetables, *&c. under distinct and proper Heads.*

A Collection of the Natural Curiosities of this spacious part of the World, will, I hope, not only give Satisfaction and Pleasure to each Reader, but likewise Profit, to all that are inclined to live in those Parts.

If these my Endeavours meet with this good Success, I am thoroughly satisfied, having nothing more at Heart than to be in any Degree serviceable to the Publick; this being the principal Motive that induced me to undertake any Work of this Nature, (the Task being not only Laborious *but* Difficult) *and not out of any Praise I expected from it.*

To conclude, Whatever Defects may be found in this Undertaking, we hope in time they will be supplied by the Labours and Industry of such as shall come after; and this we are made to expect chiefly from those of our own Nation; and that their laudable Attempts may meet with just Encouragement, shall be my constant Wish and Desire.

SUBSCRIBERS.

SUBSCRIBERS.

A.

THE Honourable Capt. Richard Allen.
Stephen Allen, M. D.
Mr. Pat. Archbold.
Mr. John Archbold.
Mr. Richard Armſtrong.

B.

EDward Bond, *Eſq;*
Worſopp Buſh, *Eſq;*
Edmond Barry, M. D.
Mr. Peter Brandon.
Mr. James Brickell.
Mr. George Brickell.
Mr. William Brickell.
Mr. Robert Bijar.
Mr. Jos. Burry, Attorney.
Mr. Thomas Brennan.
Mr. Stearne Brock, Bookſeller.

Mr.

Mr. Alexander Brown.
Mr. David Bush, of *Philadelphia*, *Merchant*.
Mr. Henry Barton, *Apothecary*.
Mr. John Brenan.
Mr. Richard Baxter.
Mr. Benjamin Brickenden.
Mr. Martin Bourke.
Mr. Arthur Brerton.

C.

THE Honourable Thomas Coote, *Esq*;
The Revd. Charles Carthy, A. M.
William Clements, A. M. F. T. C. D.
Edmond Castello, *Esq*;
John Curry. M. D.
Mr. John Clinch.
Mr. Patrick Connor.
Mr. James Connor.
Mr. Patrick Cassidy, Attorney.
Mr. Call. Mc Carty.
Mr. Patrick Carrick.
Mr. John Carson, of *Rathmullin*.
Mr. Nathanial Carson, of *Killough*.
Mr. William Connor.
Mr. Samuel Card.
Mr. William Carlile.
Mr. John Common.
Mr. Edmond Cumerford.
Mr. Samuel Cleapem, Chirurgion.
Mr. Robert Calderwood.
Mr Thomas Coote.

THE

Mr. Michael Barry, Attorney.
Mr. Benjamin Bardon, Apothecary,

D.

THE Revd. Patrick Delany, D. D. 12
Henry Davis, *Esq;*
Chap. Dawson, *Esq;* 6
Mr. Walter Davey.
Sam. Davey.
Joseph Davey, *Esq;*
Mr. Moses Darling.
Mr. James Dover.
Mr. Oliver Delahoide.
Mr. Henry Delamain.
Mr. James Doyle.
Mr. James Dobbin.
Mrs. Judith Doran.
Mr. George Dogherty.
Mr. Walter Durham.
Mr. William Dane.

E

MR. Valentine Egan.
Mr. James English.
Mr. William Edwards, Apothecary,
Mr. James Easdell, Saddler,

F

SIR William Fowns, Bart.
Lewis Falliot, Esq;
John Fitch, Esq;
John Fergus, M. D.

Captain Samuel Farra.
Captain Matthew Fitzgerald.
Mr. Charles Franck.
Mr. William Floyd.
Mr. Peter Fitch.
Mr. Richard Fitzimons.
Mr. Robert Finlay.
Mr. Francis Fitzgerald.

G

MR. James Glasco.
Miss. Sophia Gordon.
Mr. Thomas Gilbert, Architect.
Mr. Andrew Gore, Jun.
Mr. Matthias Gower.

H

MR. Obadiah Hill.
Mr. Samuel Hill.
Mr. Thomas Hall.
Mr. Jos. Harper, Chirurgion.
Mr. Richard Harford.
Mr. William Hamilton.
Mr. John Hill.
Mr. William Heatly, *Bookseller.*
Mr. Phil. Hughes, A. B. T. C.
Mr. Anthony Hay.
Mr. Nicholas Hadsor, Chirurgion.
Mr. John Hamilton.
Mr. Hans Hamilton.
Mr. James Hamilton.
Mr. Kane O Hara.

Mr.

Mr. Thomas Holt, Attorney.
Mr. Thomas Hartwell.
Mr. Richard Harney.
Mr. John Hitman.

I

MR. William Jackſon.
Mr. John Johnſton,
Mr. William Johnſon.
Mr. Samuel Johnſon.

K

THE Rt. Revd. Dr. *Charles Cobbe*, Biſhop of *Kildare*.
Mr. William Keating, Chirurgion.
Mr. Charles Kelly.
Mr. Martin Killikelly.
Mr. Nathaniel Mc Kinlie.
Mr. Charles Kelly.
Mr. Gilbert Kelly.
Mr. Nich. King.
Mr. James Keating. 6

L

THE Revd. Edward Ledwich, A. M.
Mr. Joſeph Lamb.
Mr. Richard Lincoln.
Mr. Thomas Lynch.
Mr. William Lamb.
Mr. James Lee.
Mr. William Leary.

Mr.

Mr. Edward Lynch.
Mr. Patrick Leary.

M

PAtrick Mitchel, Esq;
Topham Mitchel, Esq;
Thomas Morse, Esq;
The Revd. John Maxwell, A. M.
The Revd. John Magill, A. M.
The Revd. John Moore, A. M.
Mr. Sam. Monsell.
Mr. Patrick Murray.
Mr. Thomas Murphy.
Mr. Matthews, Attorney
Mr. Bernard Messink.

N

JOseph Nelson, A. M.
Mr. William Neale.
Mr. Thomas Noble.

P

COlonel Thomas Pollocxsen.
Gervas Parker, Esq;
Captain John Petry.
Mr. Samuel Parks, Chirurgion.
Mr. Matthew Pendergast.
Mr. Ur. Pepys.
Mr. Richard Pateson.
Mr. George Parker.
Mr. Robert Patten.

Mr.

Coleman Peirſon, Eſq;
Mr. Abraham Panel, Apothecary.
Mr. William Philips.

Q

MR. Jeremiah Quill.
Mr. John Quin.
Mr. Francis Quire.

R

SIR JOHN Rowdon, Bart.
Francis Richardſon, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Stanton, *Chirurgion.*
Mr. Richard Richardſon.
Mr. Edward Richardſon.
Mr. Thomas Reading.
Mr. Garret Ronan.
Mr. Chriſtopher Ruſſel, *Chirurgion*
Mrs. Dorothea Rowdon.
Mr. Matthias Reliy, Attorney.
Mr. James Reily.

S

JOHN Smith, *Eſq;*
Mr. Frank Smith, T, C. D.
Mr. Matthew Slater.
Mr. Stephen Stretch.
Mr. John Shaw.
Mr. Hugh Shaw, Apothecary.
Mr. Robert Siſſon.
Mr. Charles Seaton.

Mr.

Mr. James Simon, Merchant.
Mr. Samuel Smith.
Mr. Matthew Swiny, Attorney.
Mr. John Smith.
Mr. Edward Smith, *Chirurgion.*
Mr. Edward Sands.
Mr. Hugh Stafford.
Mr Philip Swettenham.
Mr. Elias Shee.
Mr. Randal Stretch.

T

Richard Talbot, *Esq;*
John Taaffe, M. D.
Miss Margret Tenison.
Mr. Joseph Taylor.
Mr. John Thornton.
Mr. Denis Tinan.
Mr. Thomas Tallon.
Mr. James Todderick.
Mr. Thomas Todderick.
Mr. James Thompson.
Mr. Matthew Templeton.
Mr. Daniel Tracy.
Mr. William Terrill.

U

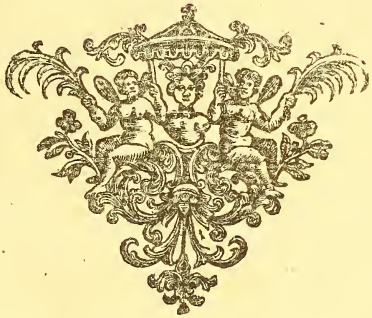
MR. Thomas Vincent.

W

CHamberlen Walker, M. D.
Mr. Samuel White.

Mr.

Mr. Thomas Wren,
Mr. Thomas Wilkinſon of *Kilkenny*
Mr. Iſaac Wills.
Mr. Thomas Wetherlt.
Mr. Laurence Whyte.
Mr. James Wall.
Mr. Robert Whitehall.
Mr. Thomas Woods.
Mr. John Warham.
Mr. Cornelius Wynne.
Mr. Jacob Weſt.
Mr. Michael Waldron.



THE

RPJCB

PART OF VIRGINIA
Roanoke R.
Cherwan R.
BERTIE PRECINCT
CHOWAN PRECINCT
Bertie House
Edenton
Court House
Currituck Inlet
New Inlet
Albemarle Sound
Roanoke Inlet
Gun Inlet
Roanoke I.
Charokee Mountains
ALBEMARLE COUNTY
EDGCOMB PRECINCT
BATH COUNTY
Handcock Town
Pamticoe R.
BEAUFORT PRECINCT
Hide Precinct
Bath Town
Mesponga R.
Pamticoe Sound
Neus R.
CRAVEN PRECINCT
New Bern
Cape Hatteras
Hatteras Inlet
Ocacock I.
Cedar I.
Core Sd.
Ocacock Inlet
CARTERET PRECINCT
Beaufort
Bogue Sound
Bogue Banks
New Inlet
H: quarter Inlet
Drum Inlet
Bogue Inlet
Brogues Inlet
Little Inlet
New R. Inlet
Cape look out
Fort Beaufort
Stumpy Inlet
Sandy Inlet
Rich Inlet
Barren Inlet
Bread Inlet
Shole Inlet
Cabbage Inlet
CLARENDON COUNTY
ONSLOW PRECINCT
NE Branch of Cape Fear R.
Black R.
PART OF SOUTH CAROLINA
Little Peder R.
Peder R.
Waccamaw R.
New Hanover Precinct
Brunswic Town
Cape Fear
WESTERN OCEAN
Long Bay
Black R.
Winyau
Cape Carteret
A MAP OF NORTH CAROLINA.

The NATURAL HISTORY OF *North Carolina.*

THE Province of *North Carolina* is separated from *Virginia*, by a due West Line from *Currituck* Inlet, in 36 Degrees and 30 Minutes of *Northern* Latitude, extending Indefinitely Westward, and from thence to the Southward, including *South Carolina*, as far as 29 Degrees North.

The Eastern Parts of this Country are hemmed in with a great number of Islands and Sand Banks, which defend it from the violence of the *Atlantick* Ocean; by which Barrier, a vast Sound is formed, and inclosed, which fronts the Mouths of the most pleasant and navigable Rivers, in this spacious and delightful Country. There are vast numbers of Creeks on the sides of these Rivers, and most of them Navigable for small Crafts, and abundance for Vessels of larger Burthen.

Between these Islands and Sand Banks, are Inlets of several depths of Water, some admitting only of Sloops Scooners, Brigantines, and Vessels of small Burthen, and such are *Currituck* Inlet, *New* Inlet, *Roanoke*, *Gun* Inlet, *Hatteras*, *New* Inlet, *Huntington-quarter* Inlet, *Drum* Inlet, *Bogue* Inlet, *Bear* Inlet, *Brown's* Inlet, *Little* Inlet, *New River* Inlet, *Stumpy* Inlet, *Sandy* Inlet, *Rich* Inlet, *Barren* Inlet, *Broad* Inlet, *Shole* Inlet, *Cabbage* Inlet, *Wacheſtau* Inlet, *Wahacau* Inlet, and *North* Inlet: many of these being only Navigable for Periaugers and small Crofts, by reason of their many Shoals which are continually shifting by the violence of Storms, and particularly, North East Winds, to which they are mostly exposed. Others are large and deep, and receive Ships of Burthen, such are *Ocacok*, *Beaufort*, or *Topsail* Inlet, and *Cape Fear*.

I will here give an Account of the most considerable Inlets and Havens of this Country. And first, *Currituck* Inlet, it being the Northermost of this Province, it lyes in the Latitude of 36 Degrees and 30 Minutes, and the Course over it is S. W. by W. having not above seven or eight Foot Water on the Barr, though a good Harbour when you are over, where you may ride safe and deep enough. But this part of the Sound is so full of Shoals, continually shifting, and Oyster Banks, as not to suffer any thing except Periaugers to Trade through it to Vessels that ride near the Inlet, it not being Navigable or safe for any Croft that draws above four or five Foot at most, to pass through it, which renders it very incommodious for Trade.

Roanoke Inlet, lyes in the Latitude of 35 Degrees and 50 Minutes, and has about ten Foot and a half Water upon the Barr; the Course over it is almost West, which brings you through the best of the Channel. This Barr,

as

as well *Currituck*, often ſhifts by the violence of the N. E. Storms; both theſe Inlets lying expoſed to the ſaid Winds. Notwithſtanding a conſiderable Trade is carried on by the Aſſiſtance of Pilots, this part of the Country being very Fertile, and the Planters Rich.

Hatteras Inlet lyes in the Latitude of 35 Degrees and 20 Minutes, it lyes to the Weſtward of the Cape, round which is an excellent Harbour, when the Wind blows hard a N. or N. E. If you keep a ſmall League from the Cape Point, you will have three, four, or five Fathom Water, the outermoſt Shoals lying about ſeven or eight Leagues from the Shoar. As you come into the Inlet, keep cloſe to the South Breakers, till you are over, whereon you may have two Fathom at low Water. You may come to an Anchor at two Fathom and a half; when you are over, then ſteer cloſe aboard the North Shoar, where is four Fathom cloſe to a Point of Marſh; then ſteer up the Sound a long League, till you bring the North Cape of the Inlet to S. S. E. half E. then ſteer W. N. W. the laſt Point of the Bluff Land at *Hatteras*, bearing E. N. E. the Southermoſt large *Hamock*, towards *Ocacock*, bearing S. S. W. half S. then you are in the Sound, over the Barr of Sand, whereon is but ſix Foot Water, then your Courſe to *Pamticoe* is almoſt Weſt.

It flows on theſe three Barrs S. E. by E. $\frac{1}{4}$ E. about Eight of the Clock, unleſs there is a very hard Gale of Wind at N. E. which will make it flow two Hours longer, but as ſoon as the Winds are down, the Tides will have their natural Courſe. A hard Gale at N. N. W. will make the Waters Ebb ſometimes 24 Hours, but ſtill the Tides will Ebb and Flow, though not ſeen by the turning thereof, but may be obſerv'd by the riſing of the Waters, and falling of the ſame at the Shoars.

Ocacock Inlet lyes in the Latitude of 35 Degrees 8 Minutes. It is one of the beſt Inlets in this Country, having thirteen Foot at low Water upon the Barr. There are two Channels, One is but narrow, and lyes cloſe aboard the South Cape; the Other in the middle, *viz.* Between the middle Ground and the South Shoar, and is above half a Mile wide. The Barr itſelf is but half a Cables length over; then you are in 7 or 8 Fathom Water, and an excellent good Harbour. The Courſe in to the Sound is N. N. W. at High Water, and Neip Tides here is 18 Foot Water. It lies S. W. from *Hatteras* Inlet

Port Beaufort, or *Topſail* Inlet, lyes in the Latitude 34 Degrees and 44 Minutes, and is above two Leagues to the Weſtward of Cape *Look out*, where you have a fair Channel over the Barr, and two Fathom Water thereon, and a good Harbour, in five or ſix Fathom, to come to an Anchor. Your Courſe over this Barr is almoſt N. W.

Cape Fear Inlet lyes in the Latitude of 33 Degrees 53 Minutes, it is the beſt in all *North Carolina*, where you have 7 Fathom Water at the Barr. You have likewiſe a fine Harbour, and can come with ſafety to an Anchor 5 or 6 Leagues up the River.

And notwithſtanding it is ſo commodious for Navigation, yet few or no Planters ſettled here till within theſe few Years but now in all Appearance, it ſeems to be the moſt riſing Part of all this Province; there being now many Subſtantial Planters ſettled there, and are become very Rich within the ſpace of Nine or Ten Years, it being little frequented or inhabited before that Time, *viz.* in the Year, 1723.

Moſt of the other Inlets that I have already mentioned, are ſo very incommodious for Trade, that they are little

little frequented or reſorted to, except it be by ſmall Croſts and Periaugers. I ſhall therefore omit giving any further Account of them.

North Carolina has ſome conſiderable Promontories or Capes in it: That Cape called *Hatteras*, is the moſt Northern of this Province, it lyes in the Latitude of 35 Degrees and 20 Minutes, Longitude 75. *Cape Look-out*, is the largeſt in this Province, extending a great way into the Main Ocean, and is about two Leagues to the Northward or Mouth of *Topſail* Inlet, in the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 46 Minutes, Longitude 75, 50 *Cape Fear* lyes at the Mouth of the Inlet, in the Latitude of 33 Degrees and 53 Minutes, Longitude 77. 20. *Cape Carterett* is part of *South Carolina*, and is the Northermoſt Promontorie in that Province, lying to the Southward of *Santee* River in Latitude 32 of Degrees, and 50 Minutes, Longitude 77. 55. Within theſe Capes is a very large Sound, with abundance of Iſlands of ſeveral Sizes, abounding with various kinds of Timber Trees, many whereof are fine Cedar, with variety of Wild Beaſts, eſpecially Deer, and great Quantities of Birds, according to the Seaſons of the Year, but there are ſcarce any of them inhabited by Chriſtian Planters at preſent.

I ſhall in the next Place proceed to give an Account of the Rivers that are to be met with in this Province; many whereof are very conſiderable and large, running for ſeveral hundred Miles, and taking their Riſe for the moſt part in or near the Mountains, others are but ſmall in compariſon with the former, as may be ſeen by the Map.

I ſhall therefore begin with the moſt Northerly, and ſo proceed to the moſt Southerly. And firſt, *Black-Water*, or *North River*, which falls into *Currituck* Sound,

North

North River, *Pasquotanck River*, *Little River*, *Pequimans River*, and *Taupin River*, all these Water and Adorn the Southern Parts of Virginia, and Northern Parts of this Province, which are very Fertile. Most of these Rivers being Navigable for Sloops, Brigantines, and other Vessels of Burthen.

Chowan River likewise Waters the North Parts of this Province, and part of *Virginia*, and is very considerable in these Parts; the Inhabitants on its Banks are very Rich by its Fertilty, and being so commodious for Trade, it is the fifth large and considerable River in this Province; it falls into *Albemarle* Sound.

Keja River is likewise to the Northward of this Province, but is not very Considerable.

Roanoke River is the largest in this Province, taking its noble Rise from the *Charokee* or *Appelapean* Mountains, and Watering several Parts of *Virginia*, as it crosses the due West Line that separates it from *Virginia*, it is very commodious for Trade, being Navigable for a vast way up the Country, most of the former Rivers empty themselves into this *Albemarle* or *Currituck* Sound.

Maca Punga River, is a North Branch of *Pamticoe* River, and admits of Sloops, Brigantines, and other Vessels of Burthen.

Pamticoe River is the fourth considerable River in these Parts, taking its Rise near or from the Mountains, and falls into *Pamticoe* Sound, with a very large Mouth, several Miles in Breadth, and is not inferior to any of the other large Rivers, for the goodness of its Navigation, as is manifest by the many Rich Inhabitants dwelling upon its delightful and fertile Banks.

Bay River is not very considerable, being small, yet its Trade is not despisable.

New

Neus River is the Third large River in this Province, but is not ſo good as *Pamticoe*, for Navigation, notwithſtanding its Riſe is near the Mountains.

Trent River is a South Branch of *Neus* River, which falls into *Pamticoe* Sound.

North River lyes to the Southward of *Neus*, and empties itſelf into *Cour* Sound; as do likewiſe *Newport* River, *Weetock* River, and *New* River; but are not very conſiderable, being only Navigable for Sloops and ſmall Crofts.

Black, or *Swampy* River, is but ſmall, and lyes to the Northward of *Cape Fear* River.

Cape Fear River is the Second conſiderable and large River, and is one of the beſt for Navigation in theſe Parts: There is a large River which is the Northeaſt Branch of *Cape Fear* River, but is diſtinguiſhed or called by no proper Name that I know of at preſent.

Waggomau River is a Northeaſt Branch of *Pedee* River, and is large, taking its Riſe from a great Lake to the Northward of the ſaid River.

Little Pedee River is a North Branch of the following, and is not large.

Pedee River is the Third large and conſiderable River in *North Carolina*.

Black River, and *Santee* River are the two Southermoſt in thoſe Parts, being part of *South Carolina*.

One thing worthy of Obſervation is, That the Current of all the Rivers in this large Country, are ſcarce to be perceived, 'till you travel ſeveral Hundered Miles, or near their Heads, which is chiefly owing to their being ſo large, and the Country ſo very level.

In many of theſe noble and ſpacious Rivers, are abundance of Creeks, ſeveral whereof are very commodious for Trade, being Navigable for ſeveral Miles; there

are

are likewiſe many conſiderable Iſlands in theſe Rivers, abounding with ſeveral ſorts of Trees, Wild Beaſts, eſpecially Deer, and various kinds of Fowl; they are Inhabited by few or no Chriſtians at preſent. In ſeveral parts of theſe Rivers are likewiſe to be ſeen great number of decayed Cypreſs and other large Trees, ſtanding at a great diſtance in the Water, the Earth being entirely waſhed away from them in the ſeries of many Ages.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the Towns and their beautiful Situation. And firſt, *Edentown* is the largeſt, conſiſting of about Sixty Houſes, and has been the Seat of the Governors for many Years, and is pleaſantly ſeated on a Creek on the North-ſide of *Roanocke* River; where you have a delightful Proſpect of the ſaid River.

Bath Town, is the Second conſiderable Town in this Province, and is moſt delightfully ſeated on a Creek on the North-ſide of *Pamticoe* River, with the ſame beautiful Advantages of the former: It's Navigation is much better, being the moſt conſiderable and commodious for Trade in this Province, except *Cape Fear*.

Newbern is ſituated on the South-ſide of *Neus* River, with a pleaſant Proſpect of that River: This Town has but a few Houſes or Inhabitants in it at preſent.

Handcock Town is ſeated on a North Weſt Branch of *Neus* River, being above two Hundred Miles from the Mouth of that River, and is ſcarce worth taking Notice of, only for its being formerly an *Indian* Town, and where they had a Fort in time of War.

Beaufort Town ſtands on the North-ſide of *Newport* River, it's Proſpect being as pleaſant as any of the former: It is ſmall, and thinly inhabited.

Brunſwick Town is moſt delightfully ſeated, on the South ſide of that Noble River *Cape Fear*; and no doubt but it will be very conſiderable in a ſhort time, by it's great

great Trade, the Number of Merchants, and rich Planters, that are ſettled upon it's Banks, within theſe few Years.

The Streets in theſe Towns are as level as a Bowling-Green, there being no manner of Pavement to be met with over all this Province.

The firſt Settlement of this Country was made in Queen *Elizabeth's* time, by Sir *Walter Raliegh* and others, at *Roanoke*, in *Albemarle* County; but continued not long, either by Sickneſs or other Misfortunes, or by the Barbarity of the *Indians*, who were very numerous and powerful in thoſe Days, but are now very few, being for the moſt part deſtroyed by their continual Wars with each other, and *European Diſtempers*, brought in amongſt them, and eſpecially the *Small-Pox*, which prov'd fatal to moſt of the *Indians* that were ſeized with it. This Diſtemper, and many others unknown to theſe Savages, before the arrival of the Chriſtians amongſt them in thoſe Parts. I hope it will not be unpleaſing to the Reader to inſert here a pleaſant Story which ſtill prevails amongſt them; and is atteſted by the moſt ſubſtantial and credible Planters of this Place, which is, 'That the Ship that brought the firſt Colo-'nies, does often appear to them (in *Albemarle* Sound 'near *Roanoke*) under Sail, in a moſt gallant Poſture." Which they call Sir *Walter Raliegh's* Ship.

The ſecond Settlement was made in King *Charles* the Seconds Time, chiefly in *Chowan* and *Barty* Precincts, in *Albemarl* County, by ſeveral Perſons from *Virginia*, and other Northern Colonies, who finding the Soil ſo very good and fertile, ſettled here, and are become very Numerous and Rich; for the Lands here produce every thing Planted in them in great abundance; Horſes, Cows, Sheep, and Swine, breeding in vaſt Numbers, the

Winter, being very ſhort, and that ſo mild, the Planters are at little or no Labour or Expence in providing Fodder for their Stocks, to what other Northerly Countries are. For in the Winter they only fell large Trees, whereon grow long Moſs, which the Horſes and Cows feed upon, and makes them both fat and ſtrong; the Cows will produce Milk, with this kind of Fodder, all the Winter Seaſon, in great plenty. As for Hay, I never obſerved any made in the Country, tho' they have ſuch plenty of Graſs, that they are obliged to burn it off the Ground every 10th of *March*, by vertue of a Law made in the Country for that purpoſe.

Theſe Inducements encouraged them to Settle here, though but a handful of People, ſeated at great diſtance one from another, amidſt ſuch vaſt Numbers of Savage *Indians*, of different Nations, who were then in *Carolina* to be met withal.

The Fame of this Province ſoon ſpread itſelf to the Neighbouring Colonies, and in a few Years drew conſiderable numbers of Families, not only from them, but likewiſe from ſeveral Parts of *Europe*, who all found Land enough to ſettle themſelves in, had they been many Thouſands more, both for Pleaſure and Profit; which makes the Planters in a great meaſure live after a moſt luxurious manner, and void of Care, to what other more Northerly Climates are obliged to, by providing Neceſſaries for the Winter. So that it may properly be ſaid, that Nature produces every thing here for the Pleaſure and Profit of the Inhabitants.

Moſt of the Plantations naturally have a very noble and beautiful Proſpect of large and ſpacious Rivers or Creeks, abounding with variety of Fiſh and Wildfowl; as alſo, pleaſant and delightful *Savannas* or *Meddows*, with their Green Liveries, interwoven with various kinds

kinds of beautiful and moſt glorious Colours, and fragrant Odours, which the ſeveral Seaſons afford, and fenced in with pleaſant Groves of the fine Tulip Tree, Laurel and Bays, equalizing the Oak in bigneſs and growth, likewiſe the Myrtle, Jeſſamine, Wood-bines, Honey-ſuckles, and ſeveral other odoriferous Plants, the moſt beautiful Vines and Ever-greens, ſhadow and interwave themſelves with the moſt lofty Timber, yielding a very pleaſant and delightful Proſpect, to thoſe that travel through the Woods of *Carolina*; that, turn your Eyes, which way you will, you have nothing but pleaſing and diverting Objects, and the more to be admired, being the Work of Nature, and not of Art.

The Lands being thus richly adorn'd, and the Planters enjoying all theſe Bleſſings, are as hoſpitable People as any in the World, to all that come to viſit them, there being few Houſe-keepers, but what live decently, and give away more Proviſions to Coaſters and Gueſts, that come to ſee them, than they expend amongſt their own Families.

The Lands in *Carolina* lie indifferently low and level, no Rocks, or even ſmall Stones are to be found, till you come near the Mountains, and the Heads of the great Rivers, where the beſt Lands are generally to be met with, abounding with all ſorts of Clover, in great Plenty, but is at preſent only inhabited by Savage *Indians*, of different Nations, or the Habitation of Wild Beaſts; and is more healthful to live in, than where the Plantations are already eſtabliſhed.

Here are in ſeveral Places large *Savannas*, beautiful to behold, which at certain Seaſons, appear at a diſtance like ſo many Pleaſure Gardens, being intermixt with variety of Spontaneous Flowers of various Colours, ſuch as the Tulip, Trumpet-flower, Princeſs-feather, and

ſeveral others, with great quantities of Graſs on them, but of a courſer and ſtronger Nature than up the Rivers, where there is moſtly Clover to be met with, notwithſtanding Horſes, and other Cattle feed very well on the former, and are fat, ſtrong, and fit for Labour, moſt Seaſons of the Year.

There are likewiſe *Perkoſons* and *Swamps*, which are good Paſturage for Cattle; ſo that by the richneſs of the Soil, and the many other Advantages and Bleſſings that attend the Planters, they live after a lazy and indolent Manner, to what thoſe in *New England* do, and other Northerly Countries are, by providing Neceſſaries for Winter.

Lands are ſo very Cheap, that (after you have taken out your Patten for *Six hundred and forty Acres*, which will coſt three or four Pounds *Sterl.* or the Value, in *Carolina* Money) you pay at the deareſt, for the ſaid Number of Acres, *Six Shillings and Six pence Sterl.* Yearly, and at the loweſt *three Shillings and three Pence*, free from all Taxes at preſent: So that with moderate Induſtry may be acquired all manner of Neceſſarys for the Support of a Family, though never ſo Numerous, nothing being wanting there but a ſufficient Number of Hands, and Induſtry, to make it as fine a Country as any in the World.

They Plant or Sow all their Corn by one Plough, or the Hoe, and ſeveral Plantations have produced *Indian* Corn, or ſome other Grain every Year, ſince the Settlement of the Chriſtians in thoſe Parts, without any Manure, and yet ſeems not to be the leaſt Impoveriſhed, producing continually a good Crop, unleſs a bad Seaſon prevents, which ſeldome happens in *Carolina*.

And, I am ſatisfied, that there cannot be one greater Argument in the World, to prove the goodneſs and fertiltie

fertiltie of the Lands than this, which is one of the greateſt Bleſſings that can attend a Country where there are ſo few Hands to Manufacture the Lands after that laborious Manner, which is cuſtomary with us, which every Farmer in *Ireland* is well acquainted with, who is at continual Expence for Servants, Horſes, and many other Neceſſaries to improve his Lands to the beſt Advantage.

The Lands of *Carolina* conſiſt of different Sorts of compoſt, in ſeveral Places, ſome Stiff, others Light, ſome Marle, others a rich Black Mold, ſome Sandy, one Part Pieny, another large Timber Trees, others Savannas, with variety of beautiful Flowers and long Graſs, a rich black Earth, where ſcarce any Tree will grow, yet produces the beſt Wheat and Rice of any Land in theſe Parts, as has been experienced by the Planters.

I have ſeen ſeveral of theſe Savannas ſome Miles in length and breadth, but are little regarded or made uſe of by the Planters, by reaſon that they are at ſome diſtance from their Plantations, ſome being two, three, or four Miles from the Water ſide, and are only Paſturage for Cattle. The Reader muſt underſtand, that all the Inland in this Province lyes waſte at preſent.

Other Lands in this Province are *Perkoſons*, where large *Cypreſs* Trees grow, others Swamps, where hollow Canes, Myrtle Trees and ſeveral ſorts of Vines grow, and produce good Paſturage for Cattle, but are generally the Habitation of wild Beaſts; both theſe being very wet and low Lands, and ſo full of Canes and Underwood, that there is no paſſing through them, many of which are ſeveral Miles in length. The *Indians* in their Hunting Matches ſet theſe Places on Fire at certain Seaſons of the Year, by which Means they drive out the Game, and kill vaſt Numbers of them.

The

The Planters for the moſt part live by the Water ſide, few or none living in the In-land parts of the Country at preſent, though the Lands are as good and fertile as any that are yet inhabited; but not ſo commodious for Carriage as by the Water, for moſt part of the Plantations run but a Mile backward into the Woods, ſo that betwixt every River you ſhall ſee vaſt Tracts of Land lying waſte, or inhabited only by wild Beaſts: What is worthy of Obſervation is, That almoſt every Planter may have a convenient Dock upon his Plantation, and a ſufficient Quantity of good Timber to build Ships and Boats withal.

Of the CORN of *North CAROLINA.*

THE *Wheat* of this Province is very good and fair, the Flower very White, but the Grain is not altogether ſo large as ours, yet it ſeldom yields leſs than thirty Meaſures for one ſown; not but that there has been Sixty Increaſe for one ſown in Piney Land, which is accounted the worſt Soil in the Country, and I have been credibly inform'd, that the Wheat which was Planted in the Savannas, and ſuch like rich Soil, has produced a Hundred for one Meaſure Sown. Theſe conſiderable Increaſes prevent the Planters to make ſtrict and nice Obſervations of the Nature and Goodneſs of the Soil; for I never ſaw one Acre of Land managed as it ought to be, and were they as Negligent in their Husbandry in *Europe*, as they are in *North Carolina*, their Land would produce

produce nothing but Weeds. And I muſt confeſs, when ſome of the Planters enquired of me how we managed the Land in *Ireland*, and what Labour and Expence we were at in ordering them to the beſt Advantage, it ſeemed very ſurprizing to them how we could live, and eſpecially when I told him, that we paid from three Shillings to four or five Pounds *per* Acre (beſides many heavy Taxes) which Relation they could by no means give Credit to, but looked upon what I ſaid as meer Romances or Tales, to impoſe upon their Credulity.

The *Rye* thrives very well here, but they having ſuch Plenty of Maiz, in this Province, they little regard or value it, and eſpecially by Reaſon of the Blackneſs of the Bread it makes.

The *Barley* does much better here than may reaſonable be expected from their Management of it, that Grain requireing the Ground to be well Wrought, with repeated Plowings to make it Mellow, which their general Way of breaking with *Hoes* will never perform; though I have ſeen extraordinary *Barley* produced in *North Carolina*, after that manner, or with one Plowing only.

Oats does well here, but the vaſt Plenty of other Grain prevents their propagating of it in many Places, ſo that it is not common in theſe Parts of *America* at preſent.

The *Rice*, whereof there are ſeveral Sorts, ſome Bearded, others not, beſide the White and the Red, but the White is beſt. The *Rice* of *Carolina* is eſteemed as good as any brought to *Europe*, and is of a prodigious Increaſe, yielding from eight Hundred to a Thouſand for one Meaſure that is ſown. It grows beſt in their Wet and wild Land, that hath not been cultivated or broken up before. The *Indian-Corn* or Maize is moſt commonly Planted with the *Hoe*, and proves the moſt uſeful Grain

in

in these Parts, being in great Plenty all over this Province; it is very nourishing in Bread Sodden or otherwise, as appears by those that continually feed upon it, making them strong, able, and fit for hard Labour. It grows in all manner of Ground except Barren Sands; but when Planted in good Ground, produces for one Measure, Seven or eight Hundred, at the lowest Computation that can be made. Pigs and Poultery fed with this Grain, eat the sweetest of all others.

The *Millet* does very well here, especially in light and loose Ground, they sow it in *April* and *May*, and prospers best in moist and rainey Weather: The Plenty of other Grain, prevents the Planters from sowing much of it, being only made Use off in *Carolina* to fatten their Poultry with.

There are two Crops of Corn in the Year, *viz.* the *European* Wheat is generally cut down first, and in their Barns the beginning of *June*, then they immediately Plow, Sow, or Plant the same Ground with *Buck-Wheat*, or *Indian Corn*, which wonderfully increases, and is ready to be brought home in *September*, *October*, or *November*, with which they generally feed their Horses, Hogs, and Poultry.

The *Guinea* Wheat thrives likewise very well here, and serves for the Uses of the former.

There are several sorts of Pulse in this Province; and first, the *Bushel Bean*, so called from producing a Bushel of Beans or more from one that is Planted; they are a Spontanious product in *Carolina*, and are Set in the Spring round Arbours, or near long Poles set in the Ground for that purpose, where they make a good Shade to sit under in the extreamity of hot Weather; they continue Budding, Flowing, and Ripening all the Summer, until the approach of Frost, which prevents their

their farther Growth, and so dye; they climb prodigious high, and their Stalk is about the thickness of a Man's Thumb, the Pod grows like the *Kidney Bean*, but the Bean is flat, white, or mottled, with a purple Colour: They are extraordinary good, and well relished Pulse, either by themselves or with Meat.

The *Indian Rouncival*, or *Miraculous Pea*, so called from their long Pods and great Increase. These are a late Pea, and require a pretty long Summer to ripen and bring them to Perfection, they are a good Pulse, and in great plenty all over this Province with *Christians* and *Indians*.

The *Bonavis* is another kind of *Pulse*, and yields a great Increase, it doth not require so long a Summer to ripen as the former, they grow like *Kidney-Beans*, and are very plenty in this Province.

The *Calivances* are another kind of *Pulse*, resembling the former, but are not so flat, they are in great plenty in most of the Plantations amongst the Indian Corn. These and the *Bonavis*, afford two Crops in the Year, and are generally ripe and in full perfection in six Weeks time.

The *Nanticoacks* are another kind of *Pulse*, and resemble the *Calivances*, and are in great plenty all over this Province.

There are several other kinds of *Pulse* in this Province that we have no Name for, which are well known amongst the *Indians*, and are excellent Food.

The *Kidney-Bean*, is likewise here in great plenty, growing for the most part in every Corn-Field. The *Indians* had these four Sorts of *Pulse*, *viz.* the *Bonavis*, *Calivances*, *Nanticoacks*, and *Kidney-Beans*, and several other sorts, long before the Arrival of the *Europeans* amongst them; which Report I have had affirmed several times, not only from the *Christians*, but likewise from the *Indians* in these Parts.

The large *European-Bean*, will in two or three Years degenerate into a dwarfiſh Kind, if not prevented by a new Supply of Foreign Seed, as I have experienced during my ſtay in thoſe Parts; yet theſe Dwarfiſh ſort become ſweeter, and better reliſh'd, than any Bean of the ſame Sort in *Europe*; but theſe kind of Beans are very little regarded or made uſe of, and therefore ſeldom Planted, by reaſon the other *Pulſe* are in ſuch Plenty all over this Province.

I have obſerved ſeveral ſorts of *European-Peaſe* in this Province come to as great Perfection, as in moſt Parts of *Europe*, particularly the white and gray *Rouncival*, the *Hot-Spur*, the *Dwarf*, the *Field*, and the *Sickle-Peaſe*; and there is no doubt but that all other kinds of *European-Peaſe* would thrive well here, had any tryal been made.

The Garden Roots that thrive here are *Parſnips*, *Carrots*, *Skirrets*, *Turnips*, Ground-*Artichoakes*, Garden-*Radiſhes*, Horſe-*Radiſhes*, *Potatoes* of ſeveral ſorts, and very large, ſome whereof weigh four Pounds; *Leeks*, *Onions* in great plenty, and excellent good *Shallots*, *Cives*, *Garlick*, and wild *Onions*, *Beets*, and moſt other Roots that are to be met with in *Europe*.

The *Sallads* are the curl'd *Cabbage*, *Savoy*, *Lettice*, round prickly *Spinage*, the ſweet and common *Fennel*, *Endive*, *Succory*, *Mint*, the *Dock* or *Wild Rhubarb*, *Creſſes* of ſeveral ſorts, as *Winter*, *Garden*, *Indian*, *Sciatica*, *Water-Creſſes*, and many more; *French* and *Engliſh* Sorrel, *Purſlain* two ſorts, *viz.* the Tame and the Wild; which are ſo plenty, that they are common Weeds in their Gardens, the Leaf is not as large as the Tame, but as good; the Planters boil it with their Salt Meat for Greens, this is never to be met with in the *Indian* Plantations; and is ſuppoſed to be produced from the Cow-Dung, which Beaſt the *Indians* keep not amongſt them.

Samphire,

Samphire, is in very great Plenty along the Marſhes near the Sea and Salt Water, and is very good.

Muſhrooms, good and in great Plenty all over the Fields.

Aſparagus, thrives in this Province to a miracle, without the aſſiſtance or benefit of Hot-Beds, Dung, or other Manure, being only produced from the natural goodneſs of the Soil, and it is found in Plenty in moſt Gardens in this Province, and as good as any in *Europe*. As likewiſe *Selery* and *Clary*.

Parſley, two Sorts, the White-Cabbage, from *European* Seeds thrive well here, but the Planters ſeldom or never take Care or Pains to preſerve good Seed of their own; ſo that by their Negligence, it is not ſo common as otherwiſe it might. The *Colly-Flower* does not thrive well here, by what tryals I have ſeen made during my abode in thoſe Parts; but the plain and curled *Coleworth*, flouriſheth.

The *Artichoak* I have obſerved but in two Places in this Province, which is tollerable good, here are likewiſe great quantities of excellent good *Water-Mellons* of ſeveral ſorts, *Musk-Mellons*, very good and of ſeveral ſorts, as the Golden, Green, Guinea, and Orange. *Cucumbers*, long, ſhort, and prickly, and all produced from the natural Ground with great Increaſe, without any help of Dung, or reflection from Glaſſes.

Pompions, yellow and very large *Burmillions*, *Caſhaws*, which is an excellent Fruit when boyl'd, *Squaſhes*, *Symnals*, *Horns* and *Gourds*, beſides variety of other Speces of leſs value, ſuch as the *Poke*, which is a kind of *Mechoacan*, and grows in every Field, the tender Tops whereof may be boiled and made uſe of as other Greens with all the ſafety immaginable, and are very good and nouriſhing, but the Roots (which are as thick as a Man's Leg) are

are not to be medled with, being in their Nature violent Purgers, and occaſion thoſe that eat of them to be frantick for ſome time, though I have never heard of any farther Miſchief done by them. *Lambs-Quarter*, and various kinds of Salleting, too tedious to mention.

The Pot-Herbs, and others which are uſeful in Phyſick are common here, and are as follows, *Angelica*, two ſorts, *viz.* the Wild and the Tame, *Balm*, *Bugloſs*, *Borrage*, *Burnet*, *Marygold*, *Pennyroyal*, *Rue*, *Marjoram*, two ſorts, *Summer* and *Winter Savory*, *Thyme*, *Roſemary*, *Lavender*, *Hyſſop*, which grows very large, *Sweet Bazil*, *Groundſel*, *Derg*, red and white, *Nep* or *Cat-mint*, *Mallows* ſeveral ſorts, *Tanſay*, *Columbine*, *Dandelion*, *Wormwood*, *Southernwood*, *Baſtard Saffron*; and ſeveral ſorts of *Muſtard*.

The more *Phyſical* Plants are *Anis*, *Aſarabacca*, growing in moſt Places in the Woods; *Cardus*, *Benedictus*, *Caraway*, *Cummin*, *Coriander*, *Scurvy-Graſs*, two ſorts; the one from *Europe*, and the other Spontaneous.

In theſe Parts *Tobacco* of many ſorts, *Dill*, all the *European* ſorts of *Plantain*, and two Spontaneous, *Elecampain*, *Archangel*, or *Dead-Nettle*, the *Stinging-Nettle*, the Seed being brought from *Europe*, there being none found growing Spontaneous in *North Carolina*; *Comfery*, *Monks-Rhubarb*, *Burdock*, *Featherfew*, *Wormſeed*, *Garden-Poppies*, none yet being diſcover'd growing Wild in this Province. *Ground-Ivy* is Spontaneous, but much ſmaller than the *European*; *Perewinkle* growing in great plenty in moſt parts of the Woods; *Golden-Rod*. ſeveral ſorts of *Horehound*, *Melilot*, *Baſtard-Lovage*. The *Rattle-Snake*-Root, whereof there are three ſorts, and is ſo called, becauſe it alone cures the Bite of the *Rattle-Snake*; it is very plenty in all the Savannas and Woods. *Snake-Root*, four ſorts in *Carolina*; *Purging Bindweed* or *Scamony*, growing in moſt parts of this Province. The

The *Ipecacuana* grows likewiſe in great Plenty in this Province, which I frequently made Uſe of during my ſtay in that Country, with as good Succeſs as any I have ever met with in *Europe*. This Herb bringeth forth one or more Stalks, which are Quadrangular, about a Foot high, whereon grow Leaves confuſedly ſet at certain diſtance one from the other, unleſs at the Top, where they grow one oppoſite to the other, ſomething like *Purſlain*, but more ſharp, and of a dark green colour, with a red circle about the Edges, and divided with Threads or Sinews in the middle, which periſh in Winter. I am not certain whether it beareth Flowers or Seed; the Root is ſo well known in every Apothecary's Shop, that it would be needleſs to trouble the Reader with a farther Deſcription about it. This and the *Scamony* grow in high Sandy Ground, in many Places in *Carolina*. Oak of *Jeruſalem*, *Indian-purger*, *Swallow-wort*, *Palma-Chriſti*, ſeveral ſorts of *Mint*, *Red-Dock*, *Jameſtown-Weed*, ſo called from its being ſo very plenty in *Virginia*, eſpecially on both ſides of *James's River*: The Seed it bears is exactly like that of an *Onion*, but it's Leaves are very courſe and large, and indented about the Edges; it is excellent good in aſſwaging all manner of Inflammations, and curing Burns, by applying it outwardly, with which the *Indians* are well acquainted, but if it be taken Inwardly, it immediately occaſions a Giddineſs and Madneſs, ſo that you ſhall ſee thoſe that take it (which moſt commonly happens to Children) run up and down the Fields in a moſt diſtracted manner, during its Operation, but does no further Miſchief.

There is another Weed, vulgarly called the *Swamp-Lillie*, which grows in the Marſhes and low Grounds, and is ſomething like our *Dock* in its Leaves, and hath the

the ſame Effect, and poſſeſſes the Party with Fear and Watchings; though few have had the Tryal, or felt the Effects of theſe intoxicating Plants, except Boys and Children; it is likewiſe uſed with good Succeſs in Inflammations and Burns, as the former.

Camomil thrives well here, but it muſt be Planted under a Shade, otherwiſe it comes to little or no Perfection.

The *Red-Root*, the Leaves whereof are like thoſe of *Spearmint*, is uſed with good Succeſs for Thruſhes, and ſore Mouths.

Vervine is very common here, being Spontaneous. *Houſe Leek*, being firſt brought from *Europe*. *Night-ſhade* of ſeveral kinds, *Yarrow* and *Mullein*, in plenty, both being Spontaneous. *Harts-Tongue*, *Polypodium of the Oak*; the greater *Centaury*, in great plenty; but I never obſerved any of the Leſſer growing in this Province. *Prickly Bind-Weed*, *Larks-Spur*, *Hops*, *Flax* and *Hemp*, the beſt and fineſt in the known World groweth in *North Carolina*.

Tiſinaw, or *Baſtard China-Root*, theſe grow in great Cluſters together, and have a Stalk like a *Brier*, whereon grow ſmall *Black-Berries*, the *Indians* boil theſe Roots and eat them, and ſometimes make them into Bread.

Sarſaparilla, *White Hellebor*, ſeveral ſorts of *Thiſtles*, *Fern*, *Male* and *Female*, *Liquorice*, *Oris*, *Water-lillies*, *Peony*, *Male* and *Female*, *Solomons-Seal*, *Agarick*, *Coloquintida*, *Guinea-Pepper*, *Water-Flag*, *Flower de Luce*, *Betony*, *Shepherds-Purſe*, *Chervil*; *Coffee*, whereof they begin to plant much, within theſe few Years; *Jeſſamine*, *Pellitory* of *Spain*, *Cloud Herb*, by the *Indians* call'd *Taughtli*. *Straw-berries* are in ſuch Plenty in the Seaſon, that they are Feeding for Hogs; *Narciſſus*, *Daffodil*, *Snow-Drops*, *Wall-Flowers*, *Bloodwort*, the white and red *Lillie*, *Stargraſs*, which is uſed with good Succeſs in moſt Fevers in this Country; *Ruſhes* of ſeveral ſorts; the Herb *Maſtick*, *Indian-all-heal*, *Cinquefoil*,

Cinquefoil, or five leav'd Grafs, *Rib-wort*, which is a kind of Plantain; *Pellitory* of the Wall, this Herb grows very plentiful on the Ground, there being no Rocks or Stone Walls for it to grow upon; *Shepherds-Needle*, *Rofa-Solis*, or *Sun-dew*; ſeveral ſorts of *Sage* being firſt brought from *Europe*; *Miſſeltoe* of the *Oak*, in great Plenty all over this Province, whereof good *Birdlime* is made.

There are ſeveral ſorts of Beautiful *Tulips* growing Spontaneous in this Province: The *Trumpet-Flower*, ſo call'd from its reſembling the Form of that Inſtrument, and is of a beautiful *Orange* colour.

The *May-Apple*, ſo call'd from its having Apples in the Month of *May*; it grows upon one Stalk like the *Wood-Sorrel*, about half a Foot high, and has Leaves like it, but very near as large as a Man's Hand, underneath which grow one Apple on each Stalk, about the bigneſs of a Musket Ball: This Plant is of a very ſtrong Purging nature, and is frequently made uſe of in theſe Parts for ſeveral Diſorders with good Succeſs.

The *Sun-Flower*, the *Indian-Figg*, or *Prickly-Pear*, the Fruit of this Vegetable is frequently eaten, and is very ſweet and luſcious, but occaſions ſuch a high Tincture in the Urine, that it ſeems like pure Blood; by which means ſeveral Perſons that have been unacquainted with its Effects, have been ſo ſurprized, that they expected nothing but immediate Death; yet it does no manner of harm, and as ſoon as its Operation is over, which is in leſs than twenty four Hours, the Urine reſumes its natural Colour, and the Patient, tho' almoſt out of his Senſes, becomes eaſy and well. There are various Kinds of Phyſical Plants growing in their Gardens, the Seed being brought from *Europe* and other Parts.

Thus have I given an Account of ſome of the Plants growing in this Country, yet not of the hundredth Part of what

what remains; a Catalogue of which, would be a Work of many Years, and more than the Age of one Man to perfect, or bring into a regular Classes, this Country being so very large, and different in its Situation and Soil; so that what one Place plentifully produces, another is altogether a Stranger to: Yet it is generally to be observed, that the greatest Variety is to be found in the low Grounds and Savannas.

The Pleasure Gardens of *North Carolina*, are not yet arrived to any great Perfection, or Adorned with many beautiful fragrant Flowers; there being only some few *Rose-Trees*, *Bead-Trees*, *Orange-Trees*, *Clove Gilly-Flower*, *Pinks* of several sorts, *Sweet-William*, *Cowslips*, *Lavender-Spike*, and *Lavender-Cotton*, *Violets*, *Princess-Feather*, *Tres-Colores*, and such like: But their Kitchen Gardens are very good, abounding with most sorts of Necessaries for that Use.

I will give an Account of the Climate, and so proceed to the *Present State of North Carolina*.

This Climate is very Healthful, and is not so Hot in the Summer as other Countries to the Eastward, in the same Parallels of Latitude; neither is the Country subject to Earthquakes, as *Italy*, and many other Hot Countries are: The Sky is generally very serene and clear, and the Air very thin and pure; and though we have but little Rain, yet the constant Dews that fall in the Night, sufficiently refresh the Ground, and supply the Plants with Moisture.

The North West Winds in the Winter, occasion very sharp and piercing Weather, the North East Winds blowing in the Winter, bring with them thick Weather, and in Spring some times Blight the Corn and Fruits of the Earth, but they very seldom continue long, being carried off by Westerly Winds, which are the most pleasant and healthful we have in these Parts of the World.

And

And though these Northerly Winds cool the Air in Summer and are very pearcing in the Winter, yet they are of no Continuance.

Southerly Winds cause very hot and unwholsom Weather, and often occasion Fevers, and other Disorders in these Parts. The Spring and Fall are the most delightful and pleasant Seasons of the Year, being neither too Hot or too Cold; and though these Seasons are very pearcing, yet the Cold is of no Duration, and are in a great Measure owing to the Winds shifting from one Point to the other; for Southerly Winds will occasion it to be warm in the midst of Winter, as with us in *April*, and the North East Winds will on the contrary, make it cool in the midst of Summer.

The Weather is generally pretty moderate till after Christmas; then the Winter comes on apace, and continues variable 'till the midle of *February*, according to the Winds, sometimes warm and pleasant, at other times Rain, Snow, or Frost but the Ice is seldom so strong as to bear a Man's weight.

In the Year 1730, we had the most agreeable and pleasant Summer that has been known for many Years, and the Winter most severe.

In the Months of *August* and *September* we frequently have very great Storms and Squals of Wind, and it is remarkable for two or three Days before they break forth, that the Clouds seem to hang down very thick and pressing towards the Earth, and scarce a breath of Wind to be perceived for the said time; they are sometimes so very violent, that they make Lanes through the Woods by tearing up Trees by the roots.

These Storms are generally attended with most violent Claps of Thunder and Lightning, and pouring with Rain all the time they continue, which are very

dreadful whilſt they laſt; and I have ſeen old decay'd Trees, and eſpecially the *Pitch-Pine*, frequently ſet on Fire by theſe violent claps of Thunder and Lightning, and ſometime Trees in their Bloom tore and ſplit in Pieces, yet I have ſeldom known or heard of any farther Dammage.

There are prodigious *Water-Spouts* to be ſeen in this Country, which are the forerunners and certain Signs of Storms and bad Weather, which quickly follow after them: Theſe Water-ſpouts are vaſt exhalations of Water running out of the Clouds like little Rivers, and are generally to be met with at Sea and near the Shores, but ſeldom or never at Land; and are to be ſeen at a great diſtance, reſembling all the colours in the Rainbow; it is ſaid they are dangerous to be met with at Sea, for fear of falling upon their Veſſels, for which reaſon when they eſpie them near at Hand, they frequently fire their great Guns to break them in the Air, before they come near the ſurface of the Water, as I have been credibly informed by ſeveral Maſters of Ships; for I have never ſeen them otherwiſe than at a great diſtance. There are no regular Tides in *Carolina*, but what are occaſioned for the moſt part by the Winds ſhifting from one Point to another.

THE

THE

Present STATE

OF

North Carolina.

THIS Province, and South *Carolina*, were granted by King *Charles* II. *March* the 24*th* in the Fifteenth Year of his Reign, and Confirmed by Letters Patents bearing Date, *June* the 13th. in the 17*th*. Year of his ſaid Majeſty's Reign, to the following Lords Proprietors, (*viz.*) *Edward*, Earl of *Clarendon*; *George*, Duke of *Albemarl*; *William*, Earl of *Craven*; *John*, Lord *Berkeley*; *Anthony*, Lord *Aſhley*; Sir *George Carterett*, Knight, and Baronet; Sir *John Colleton*, Knight, and Baronet; and Sir *William Berkeley*; who poſſeſſed them until the Year 1729: At which time King *George* II. Purchaſed them from all the ſaid Proprietors, excepting the Lord *Carterett*, who ſtill retains his Eighth Part. Whilſt it remained in the Hands

of the Proprietors, they had a Governor who acted for them until the Year 1731, at which Time his Majesty sent over Governor *Burrington*, who was the first Governor after the King had made the Purchase, and with him came most of the Superior Officers; such as Secretary of the Province, Chief Justice, Attorney General, Provost-Marshal, and Naval Officers, the rest were at his arrival in the Country, but Nominated by the King, such as Surveyor General, Judge of the Admiralty, Comptrollers and Collectors.

They have two Houses, which resemble the two Houses of Parliament with us. The first or *Upper-House* consists of twelve Members and the Governor; in this House are heard all Chancery Suits, and other Causes that cannot be decided in the inferior Courts; from whence there can be no Appeal, except to *England*.

The *Lower-House* consists of thirty five Members, being the most knowing, discreet and substantial Planters, chose out of each Precinct and Borough. In this and the *Upper-House*, are made all manner of Laws for the Safety and better Government of this Province. But whatever Laws are here made must be conformable to the Laws of *England*, and in no wise repugnant thereto. And such Laws as are made in these two Houses by the Governor, Council and Burgesses, are all recorded, and are as authentick and binding there, as our Acts of Parliament are with us.

There are likewise two other Courts in this Province, *viz.* the *Precinct-Court*, which is held in every Precinct of this Province, being much of the same Nature of our *Court-Leets*, or *Court-Barons*. The other is called the *General-Court*, which is held twice every Year, as the former is four times. This is much the same

ſame as our *Aſſizes*, where all Cauſes relating to Life and Death are heard, where the Chief Juſtice ſits as Judge, and determines all Cauſes within the Juriſdiction of this Court. In the *Precinct-Court*, the Juſtices of the Peace ſit on the Bench, and decide all Controverſies brought before them. This Court upon any Grievance can Appeal to the General Court for Juſtice, and the General to *Chancery*. The Governor by the Power inveſted in him, Commiſſions all Juſtices of the Peace, and all Officers in the Militia, who upon any Occaſion may call his Council, to adviſe with them, upon any Emergency that is neceſſary, or expedient, for the good and ſafety of the Country.

There are abundance of Attorneys in this Province, who are Licenced by the Governor, yet all Law-Suites are quickly decided in *Carolina*, to prevent the Planters ruining each other, as is too frequent to be met with amongſt us.

Theſe, and many other good Laws, that are to be met with in this Province, make it one of the beſt and mildeſt Governments to live under in all *America*. Whoever conſider the Latitude and convenient Situation of *Carolina*, may eaſily inform themſelves, that it is a moſt delightful and fertil Country, being placed in the ſame Latitude or part of the World which produces Wine, Oil, Fruit, Grain and Silk, with many other rich Commodities, beſides a ſweet moderate and healthful Climate to live in with all manner of Plenty, which are as great bleſſings as can attend any People upon Earth, which the Planters of *Carolina* at this Day enjoy, being ſubject to no vexatious Taxes, or Racking Landlords, to give them the leaſt uneaſineſs or diſcontent.

The

The Planters by the richneſs of the Soil, live after the moſt eaſie and pleaſant Manner of any People I have ever met with; for you ſhall ſeldom hear them Repine at any Misfortunes in life, except the loſs of Friends, there being plenty of all Neceſſaries convenient for Life: Poverty being an entire Stranger here, and the Planters the moſt hoſpitable People that are to be met with, not only to Strangers but likewiſe to thoſe who by any Misfortune have loſt the uſe of their Limbs or are incapable to Work, and have no viſible way to ſupport themſelves; to ſuch Objects as theſe, the Country allows *Fifty Pounds per Annum* for their Support. So there are no Beggars or Vagabonds to be met with Strowling from place to place as is too common amongſt us.

The Country in general is adorned with large and Beautiful Rivers and Creeks, and the Woods with lofty Timber, which afford moſt delightful and pleaſant Seats to the Planters, and the Lands very convenient and eaſie to be fenced in, to ſecure their Stocks of Cattle to more ſtrict Bounderies, whereby with ſmall trouble of Fencing, almoſt every Man may enjoy to himſelf an intire Plantation.

Theſe with many other Advantages, ſuch as the cheapneſs and fertility of the Lands, plenty of Fiſh, Wild-fowl, Veniſon, and other neceſſaries that this Country naturally produces, has induced a great many Families to leave the more Northerly Plantations, and come and ſettle in one of the mildeſt Governments in the World, in a Country that with moderate Induſtry may be acquir'd all Neceſſaries convenient for life; ſo that Yearly we have abundance of Strangers that come amongſt us from *Europe*, *New-England*, *Penſilvania*, *Maryland*, and from many of the Iſlands, ſuch as *Antegua*,

tegua, *Barbados*, and many others, to ſettle here; many of whom with ſmall Beginnings, are become very Rich in a few Years.

The *Europians*, or *Chriſtians* of *North-Carolina*, are a ſtreight, tall, well-limb'd and active People; their Children being ſeldom or never troubled with Rickets, and many other Diſtempers that the *Europians* are afflicted with, and you ſhall ſeldom ſee any of them deformed in Body.

The Men who frequent the Woods, and labour out of Doors, or uſe the Waters, the vicinity of the Sun makes Impreſſions on them; but as for the Women that do not expoſe themſelves to Weather, they are often very fair, and well featur'd, as you ſhall meet with any where, and have very Brisk and Charming Eyes; and as well and finely ſhaped, as any Women in the World. And I have ſeldom obſerv'd any Red-hair'd Women, or Men, born in this Country.

They marry generally very young, ſome at Thirteen or Fourteen; and ſhe that continues unmarried, until Twenty, is reckoned a ſtale Maid, which is a very indifferent Character in that Country. Theſe Marriages for want of an Orthodox Clergyman, is performed by the Governor, or the next Juſtice of the Peace; who reads the Matrimonial Ceremony, which is as binding there as if done by the beſt divine in *Europe*. The Women are very fruitful, moſt Houſes being full of Little Ones, and many Women from other Places who have been long Married and without Children, have remov'd to *Carolina*, and become joyful Mothers, as has been often obſerv'd. It very ſeldom happens they miſcarry, and they have very eaſie Travail in their Child-bearing.

The Children at nine Months old are able to walk and run about the Houſe, and are very Docile and apt

to

to learn any thing, as any Children in *Europe*; and those that have the advantage to be Educated, Write good Hands, and prove good Accomptants, which is very much coveted, and most necessary in these parts. The young Men are generally of a bashful, sober Behaviour, few proving Prodigals, to spend what the Parents with Care and Industry have left them, but commonly Improve it.

The Girls are most commonly handsome and well Featur'd, but have pale or swarthy Complexions, and are generally more forward then the Boys, notwithstanding the Women are very Shy, in their Discourses, till they are acquainted. The Girls are not only bred to the Needle and Spinning, but to the Dairy and domestick Affairs, which many of them manage with a great deal of prudence and conduct, though they are very young.

Both Sexes are very dexterous in paddling and managing their Canoes, both Men, Women, Boys, and Girls, being bred to it from their Infancy. The Women are the most Industrious in these Parts, and many of them by their good Housewifery make a great deal of Cloath of their own Cotton, Wool, and Flax, and some of them weave their own Cloath with which they decently Apparel their whole Family though large. Others are so Ingenious that they make up all the wearing Apparel both for Husband, Sons and Daughters. Others are very ready to help and assist their Husbands in any Servile Work, as planting when the Season of the Year requires expedition: Pride seldom banishing Housewifery. Both sexes are most commonly spare of Body and not Cholerick, nor easily cast down at Disapointments and Losses, and seldome immoderatly griveing at any

Misfortunes in Life, excepting it be the loss of their nearest Relations.

By the Fruitfullness of the Women in *North Carolina*, and the great Numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that are daily Transported from *Europe*, they are now become so powerful, in this and most of the other Provinces in the Hands of the *English*, that they are able to resist for the future any attempts the *Indians* may make on them. Add to this, the several *Indian* Kings that at present are in the Christian Interest, who pay some small Tribute as an Acknowledgment of their Subjection, and are ready upon all occasions to assist them when ever they are required so to do; therefore they live at present without any dread or fear of those Savages to what they formerly did.

The Men are very ingenious in several Handycraft Businesses, and in building their Canoes and Houses; though by the richness of the Soil, they live for the most part after an indolent and luxurious Manner; yet some are laborious, and equalize with the *Negro's* in hard Labour, and others quite the Reverse; for I have frequently seen them come to the Towns, and there remain Drinking Rum, Punch, and other Liquors for Eight or Ten Days successively, and after they have committed this Excess, will not drink any Spirituous Liquor, 'till such time as they take *the next Frolick*, as they call it, which is generally in two or three Months. These Excesses are the occasions of many Diseases amongst them. But amongst the better Sort, or those of good OEconomy, it is quite otherwise, who seldom frequent the Taverns, having plenty of Wine, Rum, and other Liquors at their own Houses, which they generously make use of amongst their Friends and

Acquaintance, after a moſt decent and diſcreet Manner, and are not ſo ſubject to Diſorders as thoſe who Debauch themſelves in ſuch a Beaſtly Manner. The former ſometimes bring their Wives with them to be partakers of theſe Frolicks, which very often is not commendable or decent to behold.

OF THE

Religion, Houſes, Raiment, Diet, Liquors, Firing, Diverſions, Commodities, Language, Diſeaſes, Curioſities, Cattle, &c. *of* NORTH CAROLINA.

THE Religion by Law eſtabliſhed, is the *Proteſtant*, as it is profeſſed in *England*; and tho' they ſeldom have Orthodox Clergymen among them, yet there are not only Glebe Lands laid out for that Uſe, commodious to each Town, but likewiſe convenient for building Churches. The want of theſe Proteſtant Clergy, is generally ſupply'd by ſome School-Maſters, who read the Lithurgy, and then a Sermon out of Doctor *Tillitſon*, or ſome good practical Divine, every Sunday. Theſe are the moſt numerous, and are diſperſed through the whole Province.

I ſhall treat of the other Religions as they are to be regarded according to their Numbers; and firſt of the *Quakers*: Theſe People enjoy the ſame Privileges as with us in *Ireland*, and live for the moſt part in *Albemarle* County, wherein they have a decent Meeting-Houſe.

The *Presbyterians* succeed next, and have had a Minister of their own Order for many Years past; they are chiefly settled in and about the River *Neus*.

Roman-Catholicks are the next considerable, and are settled in many Parts of the Country, but mostly in and about *Bath-Town*, they have likewise a Clergyman of their own Order among them at present.

Next succeed the *Anabaptists*, who live mostly in *Albemarle* County

There are likewise many Sectaries in *Carolina*, who have little or no appearance of Religion, except some few Forms of Prayers. This I take to be intirely owing to our want of Orthodox Divines, to instruct them in the true Notions of God, and right method of Worshiping, according to the tenor of revealed Religion. It is common to see here numbers of Men, Women, and Children, Baptized all together, when a Clergyman arrives in those Parts, and I have actually seen the Grandfather, his Son, and Grandson, receive this Sacrament at one time. There are numbers who never require Baptism, and consequently never covet to be made Christians, yet use some few Forms of Prayer.

By what I have already urged, my Readers will naturally observe, that there is Liberty of Conscience allowed in the whole Province; however, the Planters live in the greatest Harmony imaginable, no Disputes or Controversies are ever observed to arrise among them about their Religious Principles. They always treat each other with Friendship and Hospitality, and never dispute over their Liquor, which is a Custom too frequent and too much indulged with us, and from whence dangerous Consequences have arisen: By this Unity of Affection, the Prosperity of the Province has increased from its first rise, to this Day. But though they are thus

thus remarkable for their Friendſhip, Harmony and Hoſpitality, yet in regard to Morals, they have their ſhare of the Corruptions of the Age, for as they live in the greateſt Eaſe and Plenty, Luxury of Conſequence predominates, which is never without its attendant Vices. Can it be admired, that the generality of them live after a looſe and lacivious Manner, when according to my former Obſervation, they have no Clergy to inſtruct them, and recommend the Duties neceſſary belonging to a Chriſtian; and is it not natural to believe that Impiety and Imorality, when a People are void of thoſe Benefits, muſt ſway the major part of them. I would not be underſtood here, as if I deſigned to advance theſe imputations of Vice againſt the whole Body of the People: No, there are certainly Perſons of both Sexes Temperate, Frugal, good Oeconemiſts, remarkably kind to Strangers, and thoſe in Diſtreſs, and zealous in the practice of Chriſtanity.

Their Houſes are built after two different Ways; *viz.* the moſt ſubſtantial Planters generally uſe Brick, and Lime, which is made of Oyſter-ſhells, for there are no Stones to be found proper for that purpoſe, but near the Mountains; the meaner Sort erect with Timber, the outſide with Clap-Boards, the Roofs of both Sorts of Houſes are made with Shingles, and they generally have Saſh Windows, and affect large and decent Rooms with good Cloſets, as they do a moſt beautiful Proſpect by ſome noble River or Creek.

Their Furniture, as with us, conſiſts of Pewter, Braſs, Tables, Chairs, which are imported here commonly from *England*: The better ſort have tollerable Quantities of Plate, with other convenient, ornamental, and valuable Furniture.

The

The Cloathings uſed by the Men are *Engliſh* Cloaths' Druggets, Durois, Green Linnen, *&c.* The Women have their Silks, Calicoes, Stamp-Linnen, Calimanchoes and all kind of Stuffs, ſome whereof are Manufactured in the Province. They make few Hats, tho' they have the beſt Furrs in plenty, but with this Article, they are commonly ſupplied from *New-England*, and ſometimes from *Europe*.

Their Diet conſiſts chiefly of Beef, Mutton, Pork, Veniſon in Abundance, Wild and Tame Fowl, Fiſh of ſeveral delicate Sorts; Roots, Fruit, ſeveral kinds of Sallads, good Bread, Butter, Milk, Cheeſe, Rice, *Indian* Corn, both which they concoct like a *Haſty-Pudding*: But as I ſhall treat more particularly of the Productions of the Country in the ſucceeding Pages, I ſhall now proceed to their *Liquors*.

The *Liquors* that are common in *Carolina* at preſent, and chiefly made uſe of, are, Rum, Brandy, Mault Drink; theſe they import. The following are made in Country, *viz.* Cyder, Perſimon-Beer, made of the Fruit of that Tree, Ceder-Beer, made of Ceder-Berries; they alſo make Beer of the green Stalks of *Indian-Corn*, which they bruiſe and boyle: They likewiſe make Beer of Molloſſes, or common Treacle, in the following manner, they take a Gallon of Molloſſes, a Peck of Wheaten Bran, a Pound of Hops, and a Barrel of Fountain Water, all which they boile together, and work up with Yeſt, as we do our Malt Liquors; this is their common Small-Beer, and ſeems to me to be the pleaſanteſt Drink, I ever taſted, either in the *Indies* or *Europe*, and I am ſatisfied more wholſom. This is made ſtronger in proportion, as People fancy.

It is neceſſary to obſerve that though there is plenty of Barly and Oats in this Province, yet there is no Malt

Malt Drink made, notwithſtanding all kind of Malt Liquors bear a good Price, nor have any of the Planters ever yet attempted it.

Chocolate, *Teas*, and *Coffee*, are as common in *Carolina* as with us in *Ireland*, particularly the laſt, which of late Years they have induſtriouſly raiſed, and is now very cheap: Theſe are ſober Liquors, and take off the better Sort from Drinking what are hot and ſpirituous, who are not ſo addicted to Rum and Brandy as the inferior Sort, *Caſſena* or *Yaupan*, an *Indian Tea*, which grows here in Abundance is indifferently uſed by Planters and *Indians*.

The *Fireing* they uſe is Wood, and eſpecially Hickery, though we diſcovered Pit-Coal in our Journies towards the Mountains, yet it is not worth their while to be at the expence of bringing it, Timber being ſo plenty.

The chiefeſt Diverſions here are Fiſhing, Fowling; and Hunting, Wild Beaſts, ſuch as Deer, Bears, Racoons, Hares, Wild Turkies, with ſeveral other ſorts, needleſs to treat of here, 'till we come to deſcribe each particular Specie.

Horſe-Racing they are fond of, for which they have Race-Paths, near each Town, and in many parts of the Country. Thoſe Paths, ſeldom exceed a Quarter of a Mile in length, and only two Horſes ſtart at a time, each Horſe has his peculiar Path, which if he quits, and runs into the other, looſes the Race. This is agreed on to avoid Jockying. Theſe Courſes being ſo very ſhort, they uſe no manner of Art, but puſh on with all the ſpeed imaginable; many of theſe Horſes are very fleet.

It is common for People to come and go from this Province to *Virginia*, to theſe publick Diverſions.

They are much addicted to *Gaming*, eſpecially at Cards and Dice, Hazard and All-fours, being the common Games they uſe; at which they play very high, nay

nay to such a pitch, that I have seen several hundred Pounds won and lost in a short time.

Cock-Fighting they greatly admire, which Birds they endeavour to procure from *England* and *Ireland*, and to that intent, employ Masters of Ships, and other Trading Persons to supply them.

Wrestling, *Leaping*, and such Activities are much used by them; yet I never observed any Foot Races.

Dancing they are all fond of, especially when they can get a Fiddle, or Bag-pipe; at this they will continue Hours together, nay, so attach'd are they to this darling Amusement, that if they can't procure Musick, they will sing for themselves. Musick, and Musical Instruments being very scarce in *Carolina*.

These are the most material Observations I have made in respect of their usual Diversions.

But they have a particular Season, which is only at their *Wheat-Harvest*, not to be omitted; this they celebrate with great Solemnity, it is in the beginning of *June*, at which time the Planters notify to each other, that they design to reap the aforesaid Grain, on a certain Day, some send their *Negroes* to assist, others only go to partake of the great Feasts, *&c.*. Some will frequently come twenty, nay thirty Miles on this Occasion, the Entertainments are great, and the whole Scene pleasant and diverting; but if they can get Musick to indulge this Mirth, it greatly adds to the Pleasure of the Feast, It must be confest, that this annual Revelling is very expensive to the Planters, but as its customary, few omit it, nor have they ever those publick Diversions at the reaping any other Grain but the *European Wheat*.

I am sensible that many Persons, who by their Misbehaviour in this Country, were obliged to quit it, have maliciously

maliciously endeavoured to represent, not only the Province, but its Inhabitants, in a wrong Light; but as they intirely take the Opportunity to talk either before those who were never there, or before Persons incapable of judging, it is to be hoped, that the scandalous reports of such, will not be regarded. Several of those trifling Nusances have to my knowledge, scarcely been out of the Town or Port where they first arrived, during their Residence there: How therefore cou'd they be acquainted with the Fertilty of the Country, the Constitution, and Temper of the Inhabitants; before the learn'd, by whom they can be convicted, they dare not appear? And if the credulous and ignorant will be amused, all the Arguments Man can produce will not avail.

The People live to as great Ages as most *Europeans*, they are entire Strangers to Consumptions, a Distemper fatal to us; but they are much addicted to aguish Disorders, which is incident to all Strangers, for they generally have their Seasonings at their first Arrival, or soon after, though it seldom proves mortal, and is easily carried off by *Emeticks*, and other Medicines properly given.

This Colony boasts more Advantages than several others on this Continent, both for Pleasure, Ease, and Profit: Were the Inhabitants as industrious as the Soil is bountiful, they might supply themselves with all the Necessaries of Life? With little Industry they may have Wines, Oil, Silk, Fruits, and many sorts of Drugs, Dyes, *&c.* Here the Curious may have a large Field to satisfie and divert their Curiosity; here they may collect strange Beasts, Birds, Fishes, Insects, Reptiles, Shells, Mines, Herbs, Flowers, Plants, Shrubs, Trees, Gums, Tears, Rosin, Stones, and several other things

that yield both Profit and Satisfaction: If the plenty and cheapneſs of Proviſions, and the low rate of Lands, may tempt People to this delightful Country, ſure thoſe who have but ſmall Beginnings, with moderate induſtry, may here live more comfortably, and provide for their Families better than in any place I have yet ſeen in *Europe*.

The Rivers are very beautiful, pleaſant, profitable, large and Navigable for ſeveral Leagues up the Country: They riſe for the moſt part in or near the Mountains, and abound not only with great Quantities of delicate Fiſh, but likewiſe with Wild-Fowl of different kinds. In many of theſe Rivers are to be ſeen large and delightful Iſlands, where is excellent Paſturage and ſome of them afford large Stocks of Cattle and Deer, but ſcarce any Wild Beaſts, and few Beaſts of Prey. In theſe Iſlands frequently grow vaſt quantities of Cedar with ſeveral other kinds of valuable Timber Trees, as I have already mentioned.

The civilized *Indians* are very ſerviceable to the Planters in many Caſes, particularly in making Weares to catch Fiſh; this they do for a ſmall conſideration, and it proves very advantagious to large Families, becauſe they not only take great Quantities of different Sorts, but moreover what are very good and nouriſhing; theſe Weares are made after a method peculiar to the *Indians* only. Others Hunt and Fowl for them at very reaſonable Rates, this Country being as plentifully provided with all ſorts of Game as any in *America*; the *Indians* ſometimes aſſiſt the poorer ſort of Planters in planting their Corn for ſmall Triffles, when expedition is required.

The Mountains that are the moſt conſiderable are the *Charokee*, or *Appelapean* Mountains, they take their riſe from

from the North-west part of South *Carolina*, and so continue in one Ridge to the Northward for several hundred Miles, being in most places five or six hundred Miles from the Sea; they are vastly high, and abound with Trees, various kinds of Plants, and Stones of several different Natures. Beyond these Mountains you have a prospect only of large Woods, Savannas, dismal Swamps and Forrests, being as is supposed, the Habitation of Savage *Indians*, and wild Beasts of various kinds.

The Commodities convenient to bring to this Province from *Europe*, are as follows; Guns, Powder, Ball, Shot, Flints, Linnens of all Sorts, but chiefly Blues; Brown and Stampt Linnens, Oznabrigs, Men and Women's Apparel ready made up; some few Broad-Cloaths, Blew and Red Stuffs, Callimancoes, Druggets, Kersies, Cambletts, all light Stuffs for Men and Women's Summer Wear, Habberdashers Wares, Stockings of all sorts, some few Gloves, thin Wigs, Linnen Caps, Silk-Thread, common Thread of all Sorts. Needles, Pins, Tobacco Pipes, Glass for Sashwindows, Looking Glasses, all sorts of hard Ware, such as Knives, Forks, Sizers, Saws, Hatchets, Chisels, Bills, Hoes, Spades, Shovels, Grubing Hoes, Wedges, Nails, and all manner of Tools for Carpenters, Shoemakers, Coopers Shave Locks, Locks for Doors, Traps of all Sorts, and especially for Beavers, what we commonly call Fox-Traps, Grindle-Stones, all manner of Whet-Stones, Paper, Ink, Saddles, Bridles, Fish-hooks of all Sorts, several Toys, as Fans, Necklaces, Beads, Ribbons, Tape, Thimbles, Shoe-buckles, and the like; Tradesmen of all sorts, Honest Servants and Negroes.

The produce of this Country for Exportation to *Europe* and the Islands, are, Beef, Porke, Tallow, Hides, Deer-Skins, Furs, Wheat, *Indian-Corn*, Pease, Potatoes, Rice, Honey

Honey, Bees-wax, Myrtle-wax, Tobacco, Snake-root, Turpentine, Tar, Pitch, Masts for Ships, Staves, Planks and Boards of most sorts of Timber, Cotton, and several sorts of Gums, Tears, with some medicinal Drugs; Bricks and Tiles are made here, likewise several useful Earths, such as Bole, Fullers-Earth, Tobacco Pipe Clay, and Oaker, in great Plenty, excellent good Earth for the Potters Trade, and fine Sand for the Glassmakers. They export abundance of Horses to the Islands of *Antegua*, *Barbadoes*, *&c.*

Lead, Copper, Sulphure and Antimony, have been found here, but for want of good Encouragemenr, few or no endeavours have been made to discover these subterraneous Productions; here is likewise found in great Plenty the true *Blood-Stone*, near the Mountains, as also a very fine Earth, the same with Bruxels Sand, which the Goldsmiths use to cast with, which bears a good Price in several parts of *Europe*. We have likewise *Chalibeat Waters*, of several Tastes, and different Qualities some Purging and others working by the *Emunctories*; there are several Waters also amongst the Inhabitants that outwardly cure Ulcers, Tettars, and Sores, (disorders they are very subject to in this Country) by washing themselves in it; neither do they want very good Springs of fresh Water; as for Pump-water, 'tis to be had in most places in this Province.

We have an Account from the *Indians*, that there are hot Baths near the Hilly Country, where a great likelihood appears of making Salt-Petere, because the Earth in many places is strongly mixed and impregnated with a Nitrous Salt, which is much coveted by the Beasts of this Country, who come at certain Seasons of the Year in great Numbers, and by their licking this Earth, make great Holes in those Banks, which sometimes lye at

at the Heads of great Precipices, where they often tumble down and are dash'd in pieces.

It is very certain that the most Sweet and healthful Part of this Country is inhabited only by the Savage *Indians* at present; and a great deal thereof has no other Inhabitants but the wild Beasts. For the *Indians* are not inclinable to settle in the richest Lands, because the Timbers are too large for them to cut down to make Plantations of: A farther confirmation of the healthfulness of the Hilly parts of this Country, is very apparent, in the large Stature and gray Heads so common to be met with amongst the Savages that dwell near the Mountains.

The Christians or Planters of *North Carolina*, Barter the Commodities that are produced in the Country for Rum, Sugar, Mollosses, Negroes, and the like.

The current Coin of this Country is at present only made of Paper Bills, which pass throughout all this Province; not but that the Gold and Silver Coin of all Nations pass here, according to their Weight or intrinsick Value, which the Planters carefully preserve to buy Negroes with in the Islands and other Places. The Contents of the Bills in this Province are as follows, *viz. This Bill of ten Pounds shall be current in all Payments in* North Carolina, *according to an Act of Assembly made* November *9th.* 1729. This is the greatest Bill, and twelve Pence the smallest, which is wrote after the same manner of the former. The Assembly nominate five of their Members, who sign all these Bills with different Ink; all these Bills are numbered in figures at the top, in the nature of Bank-Bills, and Seals fixt to each of them; there is about thirty or forty thousand Pounds of this kind of Money in *North Carolina.*

There is a Treasury Office kept wherein all the Bills are changed, and new ones given for those that are old and

and torn; yet notwithſtanding all the Care that is taken, theſe Bills are counterfeited, and the publick very often impoſed upon. The Money of *North Carolina* is in value five Shillings for one Sterling; and in *South Carolina*, the difference is Seven to One Sterling; with theſe Bills they purchaſe Lands, and all Neceſſaries.

It is admirable to obſerve the Proſperity of ſeveral Adventurers to *Carolina*, in the memory of Man; and how many from the moſt deſpicable beginnings in a ſhort time, by Gods bleſſing, and their own Induſtry, are arrived to as ſplendid Fortunes as any have in the other *Britiſh* Provinces on this Continent. All manner of Game is here very plenty, neither are there any Laws here to bind their Priviledges, as it is with us in *Ireland*, for the meaneſt Planter may, with as much Freedom, deſtroy all manner of Game, as he that is the moſt Wealthy, or higheſt in Dignity. So that the pooreſt Planter has as much Right to the delicaceies of this Country, as the richeſt; nay the very Labourer is intituled to the ſame Priviledge.

The Language principally made uſe of in this Province is the *Engliſh*; notwithſtanding there are Planters ſettled here from *France*, *Germany*, *Holland*, and many other parts of *Europe*, who have all learn'd and ſpeak the *Engliſh* Tongue, many of the *Indians* alſo uſe it, and eſpecially the three civilized Kings, and thoſe that Trade and Converſe with the *Engliſh*; there are many of the Planters that underſtand and ſpeak the *Indian* Language well.

The Diſeaſes that are moſt common in *Carolina* are, *Agues*, or intermittent *Fevers*, *Cachexia*, *Diarrhœa*, *Dyſenteria*, the *Clap*, and *French Pox*, the *Yaws*, *Chollicks*, *Cholera-Morbus*, *Convulſions*, *Hooping-Cough*, *Cutaneous Diſorders*, ſuch as *Tetters*, *Ring-worms*, *Raſhes*, *prickley-Heats*, and the *Itch*.

The

The *Agues* or *intermittent Fevers*, do generally admit of the ſame method of Cure as with us in *Ireland*, ſo that it would be needleſs to repeat it here, which almoſt every old Woman pretends to have an infalible Cure for.

The *Cachexy*, or ill habit of Body, is a very common Diſtemper in theſe Parts; 'tis very ſtubborn in its Nature, and tedious and difficult to be cured. In this diſorder, the Face is very pale and diſcolour'd, and the Body big and ſwoln; this Diſtemper is principally owing to their eating great quantities of Fruit that this Country produces, and to a ſedentary way of living, and their eating Clay and Dirt, which the Children, both Whites and Blacks, and ſome of the old People are very ſubject to; by which means the whole Humours of the Body are corrupted and vitiated to that degree (through ſurfeits and ill digeſtion) that they will hardly admit of a Cure. Steel'd Wines, and other Prepararions of filings and ruſt of Iron, ſtrong Purgers, and Exerciſes, are the only Methods to perfect the Cure of this Diſtemper.

The *Cholera-Morbus*, is a vehement Perturbation of the whole Body and Bowels, from a deprav'd Motion of the Ventricle and Guts, whereby bilious, ſharp, or corrupt Humours, are plentifully and violently diſcharged upwards and downwards. This diſorder is happily carried off by giving proper Doſes of the *Ipecauacana*, that grows plentifully in *Carolina*, which I have already made mention of.

The *Cramp* or *Convulſions*, is a Motion whereby the Muſcles or Membranes are contracted and remitted, without the Will. This Diſorder is common in theſe Parts, and eſpecially amongſt the *Negroes* or *Blacks*, whereof many die, either for want, or before proper Medicines can be adminiſter'd; it admits of the ſame method of Cure as with us in *Europe*.

The

The *White* and *Bloody-Flux* are common Diſtempers in *Carolina*, and ſo are the *Clap* and *French Pox*; theſe are cured after the ſame manner as with us.

The *Yaws*, are a Diſorder not well known in *Europe*, but very common and familiar here; it is like the *Lues venerea*, having moſt of the Symptoms that attend the Pox, ſuch as Nocturnal Pains, Botches, foul Erruptions, and Ulcers in ſeveral parts of the Body, and is acquired after the ſame manner as the *Pox* is, *viz.* by Copulation, *&c.* but is never attended with a *Gonorrhœa* in the beginning. This Diſtemper was brought hither by the *Negroes* from *Guinea*, where it is a common Diſtemper amongſt them, and is communicated to ſeveral of the *Europeans* or Chriſtians, by their cohabiting with the Blacks, by which means it is hereditary in many Families in *Carolina*, and by it ſome have loſt their Palates and Noſes.

This Diſtemper, though of a venereal kind, is ſeldom cured by Mercurials, as I have often experienced, for I have known ſome undergo the Courſe of three Salavations to no purpoſe, the virulency ſtill continuing as bad as ever: Wherefore I judge it not amiſs to ſet forth the moſt effectual method for curing it, which I have often experienc'd, and never without good ſucceſs (during my reſidence in thoſe parts) though the Diſtemper was of ever ſo violent a nature, or long continuance; it is as follows.

Take four Ounces of the Bark of the Spaniſh Oak, *two Ounces of the middle Bark of the* Pine Tree, *two Ounces of the Root of the* Sumack, *that bears the Berries, of theſe Ingredients make a ſtrong Decoction, whereof let the Patient drink a full Pint milk-warm, and half a Pint cold, this gives a ſtrong Vomit, by which abundance of filthy Matter is diſ-*

charged;

charged. This is what is to be done the firſt Day. *Then let the Patient drink half a Pint three times a Day,* viz. *in the Morning, at one o'Clock in the Afternoon, and at Night, for ſix Weeks; and if there be any outward Sores, waſh them clean five or ſix times a-Day with part of the ſame Decoction, 'till they are all healed up, and the Patient becomes well.*

The Patient muſt abſtain from all ſorts of fleſh Meat, and ſtrong Liquors during the ſaid Courſe, his principal Diet muſt be Broth, Gruel, Penæda, and the like. They may boil the above quantity of Ingredients four times, if more, it will be too weak; this Method effectually cures the *Yaws* in the ſaid time, and the Patient becomes as ſtrong and healthy as ever. I have here given the true method of the Cure of this Diſtemper, it being little known in *Europe.*

The *Cholick*, or *Dry Belly-ach*, is another common Diſtemper in this Country, and is often attended with ſuch violent Convulſions, that frequently the Limbs are ſo contracted (and eſpecially the Hands) that for want of Care and good Advice, they have continued ſo all their life time; though I have known ſome of them die in theſe Fits, which are attended with ſuch a violent conſtipation of the Bowels, that they cannot void any thing either upwards or downwards: Strong Vomits, Purges, Clyſters, and Oyntments, for the contracted Limbs, are the moſt effectual Methods to carry off this Diſorder.

Raſhes and *Prikley-heat*, are common Diſorders here; in the extremity of the hot Weather, which ſuddenly comes after cold, they are attended with extream Itchings all over the Body, eſpecially the Legs, which if ſcratched immediately, inflame, and become inveterate Sores and Ulcers; to prevent which, Spirit of Wine and

Camphir, or any other Spirit, is of excellent use, by applying it to the Parts.

Tetters and *Ring-worms*, are common in this Province, and are easily cur'd by several Plants in this Country, and especially by the Juice of the Sheep-Sorrel, by applying it to the Part infected.

The *Hooping-Cough*, at my arrival in *Carolina*, was an universal Disorder amongst young and old, whereof several *Negroes* died. It continued in this Province for seven or eight Months successively, beginning in *September*, and ending in *June*; after Bleeding and Vomiting, I found the *Jesuite Bark* to be of excellent use in this disorder. I was assured by many in *Carolina*, that they never knew this Distemper in these Parts before that time.

The Children are much afflicted with the *Worms*, which is owing to their eating vast quantities of Fruit, this excess sometimes occasions Fevers amongst them, yet they are cured after the same manner as with us, likewise with many Plants growing here.

As for *Cutaneous* Disorders they are seldom at a loss for a speedy Cure, not only from the Plants, but likewise the Waters. Thus have I given an Account of the most common Disorders amongst the Christian Inhabitants.

The Curiosities here are, varietiy of strange wild Beasts, and several kinds of Birds, Fishes, Snakes, Insects, Reptiles, Herbs, Plants, Shrubs, Trees, and Fruits: many whereof are not to be met with in *Europe*, which the Reader will find inserted in their proper Places, when I come to treat on those heads. There is a large Cave on the top of the Mountains, that will hold a hundred Men and more to sit in, but whether it be natural or artificial, is not known by any that have seen it; but I

am

am of Opinion that it is natural, the *Indians* having had no Tools to work in Wood or Stone, at the firſt arrival of the *Europeans*, ſo that it cannot be reaſonably imagined that a Work of this nature could be perfected without proper Inſtruments for that purpoſe.

As all Grain and Pulſe thrive here to admiration, ſo do the Stocks of Cattle, Horſes, and Swine multiply ſurprizingly, there being as great numbers of each Species, as in any Province poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh* in *America*.

The *Veal* is very good and white, but they ſeldom kill any for the Market, being fond to preſerve their Calves to a larger growth. The Planters make Penfolds adjacent to their Habitations, wherein they milk their Cows every Morning and Evening; after which, they turn them into the Woods, where they remain feeding all Day; when they return at Night, they carefully ſhut up their Calves with ſome few of the Cows, in thoſe Penfolds, which protects them from the Wolves, or any other voracious wild Beaſts: In the Mornings and Evenings the Cows return from the Woods to be milked, and are turned out as uſual; the Calves are turned into the Incloſures where they remain feeding and ſafe all the Day, no wild Beaſt ever appearing near their Plantations in that ſpace of time. I have ſeen one hundred Calves together in one of theſe Penfolds, being all the Property of one Planter. The Calves generally ſuck their Dams all the time they are milking, otherwiſe the Cows would not ſuffer any one to touch them. The Milk is very pleaſant and rich.

Their Heifers bring forth Calves at eighteen or twenty Months old; this early production makes ſuch a wonderful increaſe, that many of the Planters, from mean beginnings, are Maſters now of ſuch large Stocks of Cattle, that you may buy hundreds in the Seaſon:

Their method of killing, is generally to ſhoot them in the Fields, or in the Penfolds; then they cut off the Head and Feet, and take out the Intrails, which they throw away as uſeleſs, except the Fat, (which they carefully preſerve.) After this manner they continue killing all the Year, as they have Occaſion.

If the Cattle be ſuffered to live to a proper Age, their Beef proves as large and fat as any in the neighbouring Colonies. They kill vaſt Quantities of Beeves in *October*, and the other cool Months, eſpecially when they intend them for Salting and Exportation, for at thoſe Seaſons they are in their prime of Fleſh, and beſt preſerved. The Exportation of this Commodity is one of the greateſt Branches of their Trade.

It may perhaps ſeem very ſtrange to ſome *Europeans*, how the Planters can have ſuch large Stocks of Cattle, where there are ſuch Numbers of *Wolves*, *Tygers*, *Panthers*, and other Beaſts of Prey; but I can aſſure them that they give themſelves no further trouble than what I have already obſerved, few or no wild Beaſts ever daring or attempting to kill either Calves or Foles, fearing their Dams, who vigorouſly defend them. When a Cow hath once eſpied a *Wolf* or any other voratcous Beaſt near, ſhe gives a Signal by bellowing and roaring, upon which all the Black Cattle within her hearing will run to her aſſiſtance, and moſt reſolutely defend their own Species.

There are great Numbers of thoſe Cattle wild, which continually breed in the Woods, (ſo are there of Horſes and Mares) here you ſhall ſee great Droves feeding promiſcouſly in the *Savannas* amongſt the Deer, fifty or Sixty Miles diſtant from any Inhabitants. This ſociable Diſpoſition amongſt Beaſts of different kinds we obſerved

obſerved in our Traveling up towards the Mountains, which, together with the Beauty of the Country gave us no ſmall Satisfaction.

The Horſes are well ſhaped, ſwift, and generally about thirteen or fourteen Hands high, they are durable and will travel incredible Journies. They are never ſhod, partly by reaſon of the ſoftneſs of the Ground, which is covered over with Graſs, without any Gravel or Stones; they have few or no Diſtempers amongſt them as in *European* Countries, ſuch as *Spavin*, *Splint*, *Ringbones*, and the like; they are ſeldom or never blind, and generally live twenty Years or more, moſt commonly dying of old Age. If there were but good Stallions and Mares ſent here from *England*, or any other Parts, we could not fail of a good Breed in a ſhort time; the Country and Paſturage being ſo proper for that end.

The Planters are the worſt Horſe-maſters I have ever met with, for few or none allow Corn to their Horſes after long Journies, for they frequently tye them to a Tree for Hours together, and ſometimes for a Day or two without any manner of ſubſiſtance, from whence it ſometimes happens that they break looſe, and take into Woods, where they remain for Weeks together, with the Saddles on their Backs, before they are found out, and had not they been ſuch good Drudges as they are, there would be but few in this Province, with the bad uſage they give them.

The Horſes which they keep within the Incloſures, and ſometimes feed with *Indian-Corn*, are rendered very durable for Journies and Hunting in the Woods. I hope it will not be improper here to give the Reader an Account how they take the Wild Horſes in the Woods, which is as follows. The Planters generally, two or more hunt on Horſeback in the Woods together, and

as

as ſoon as they eſpie a wild Horſe, they purſue him, and their Horſes are ſo well train'd to this way of Hunting, that they will neither hurt themſelves nor the Riders againſt a Tree, though you ride them in full Speed, they will perform this for Hours together, 'till ſuch time as the wild Horſe ſtands ſtill; then one of the Hunters alights and claps a Bridle into his Mouth, and a Saddle on his Back (tho' ten or fifteen Years old) and rides him to their own, or the next Plantation, where they feed him with *Indian-Corn* and *Salt*, which feeding, in a little time, makes him as tame and domeſtick, as any in their Plantation, and fit to purſue his wild Species in the Woods at the next Hunting match, or any other uſe they have occaſion to make of him.

The *Sheep* thrive well, having two or three *Lambs* at one Yeaning; they are never ſuffered to ramble in the Woods (as the other Cattle are) but are kept in Incloſures in the Plantations, from whence they will come every Evening to the Planters Houſes, having no Defence againſt the wild Beaſts (and eſpeceially the *Wolves*, their mortal Enemy) at Night they are put up in their Penfolds made of Timber, which every Planter has for that Purpoſe to defend them from all manner of wild Beaſts, but it ſometimes happens, through Negligence, that if they are not Incloſed, they become a Prey to the *Wolves*, who never fail to ſearch and watch for them at Night. The Mutton is generally exceeding Fat, and as well reliſh'd as any I have met with in *Europe*. Their Wool is fine, and a good Commodity here. They ſeldom kill any of their *Lambs* for the *Market*, but generally preſerve them to a greater Age; neither are the native Planters ſo fond of Mutton (which is of a middling Size) as the *Europeans* generally are.

Of

Of *Goats*, they have but very few in *Carolina*, and yet they would thrive very well there; but they are ſo miſchievous to Gardens, Orchards, and other Trees, that the Native Planters are not fond of keeping or preſerving great numbers of them, though their Fleſh is fat and well reliſh'd, as any in *Europe*, and their Skins are as good.

The *Swine* are more numerous here than in any of the *Engliſh* Provinces; and the Pork exceeds any in *Europe* for Goodneſs. The plenty of Acorns, Nuts, and other Fruits, which the Woods naturally afford, make their Fleſh of an excellent Taſte, and produces great quantities of them; ſome Planters poſſeſs ſeveral hundreds, and vaſt numbers are to be met with in the Woods, which are every perſons Property that can kill them; for no one claims them as his own, except they bear his own Mark or Brand, and it is ſo with Horſes and Cows, that are wild in the Woods. The Planters export vaſt quantities of Pork to the Iſlands in the *Weſt Indies*, ſuch as *Barbadoes*, *Antegua*, and ſeveral other places where Proviſions are ſcarce, for ſuch Commodities as they have occaſion for.

They have plenty of all manner of Domeſtick Fowl, ſuch as Geeſe, common Ducks, *Muſcovy* Ducks, Turkeys, Cocks and Hens, Pigeons, and the like, to be purchaſed at cheaper Rates, than in any part of *Europe*.

Notwithſtanding *North Carolina* yields to no Country in point of Fertility, eſpecially for Cattle, Veniſon, Fiſh and Fleſh, yet amongſt all this Plenty, there is a ſcarcity of ſufficient Hands to cultivate this noble and fertile Soil. It is caqable of producing as good Hemp and Flax, as grow in moſt parts of *Europe*, and Linnen might here be brought to great perfection.

This

This Country likewise produces as good Tobacco, as any to be met with in *Virginia*, *Maryland*, or any other Neighbouring Province in the Hands of the *Engliſh*: But the Planters having ſo many other valuable Commodities proper for Exportation, they little regard or improve it at preſent, in proportion to what they do in other Provinces.

OF THE VEGETABLES OF *North Carolina.*

THE Spontaneous Shrubs of this Country are the *Larks-heel* Tree; four ſorts of *Honey-ſuckle* Tree, or *Woodbind*, the firſt always grows in low moiſt Grounds, the other in clear dry Lands, the Flowers of which are more cut and lacerated; theſe grow about two or three Feet high; the third, which is of the ſame height, is one of the moſt beautiful Flowers of its Colour that is to be met with, and is found growing for the moſt part by the ſides of Swamps, or on the Banks of the Rivers, but never near the Salt Water. The Flowers of theſe are of a whitiſh colour, but the laſt is the moſt beautiful, growing in great bunches out of one Stem, and is commonly the bigneſs of a large Turnip. In *April* and *May*, nothing can be more beautiful, being at that time in their greateſt ſplendor, which affords not only a pleaſant ſight, but a moſt grateful and fragrant Smell to thoſe that paſs through the Woods. There is another *Honey-ſuckle* that grows in the Forreſt, and is about a Foot high, bearing it's Flowers on ſmall Stems, the main Stock being no thicker than a Wheat Straw; all theſe ſorts differ very little from ours, only with this variation, that thoſe here are larger.

Princes-feather, are very large and beautiful, not only in the Gardens, but in ſeveral parts of the Woods. *Tres colores*, *Branched Sun-Flower*, *Double Poppies*, *Lupines* of ſeveral ſorts, and all Spontaneous. The *ſenſible Plant*, (as I have been informed) grows near the Mountains, which I did not ſee during my ſtay in thoſe Parts.

The *Baſtard Saffron* is plenty in this Province, and I do not doubt but that the true *Saffron* of *England* would thrive well here if Planted, and the ſame care taken.

The *Cotton* Plant being ſo very profitable, I will give a Deſcription of, which is as follows: It hath ſmall Stalks about three Feet high, and ſometimes higher, divided into ſeveral ſmall Branches, wherein are many broad Leaves, cut for the moſt part into three Sections, and ſometimes more, indented about the Edges, not unlike the Leaves of the common *Mallows*, but leſſer, ſofter, and of a grayiſh Colour, among which come forth the Flowers, the Edges whereof are of a Yellowiſh Colour, and the middle part Purple; after which appears large Burs or Husks, wherein the Seed and Cotton is contained, as ſoon as it is ripe it opens into four Parts or Diviſions, if Care be not taken, it caſteth forth its Seed and Cotton upon the Ground. This Plant beareth but for one Seaſon, and as ſoon as the Seeds are ripe it immediately periſheth, as many other Plants do; ſo that the Planters are obliged to ſow the Seed every Spring, which is ripe in the Autumn, and they cut it down at that time as we do Corn. It groweth in great Plenty in ſeveral Parts of this Country, and is a beneficial Commodity to the Planters.

The *Yellow Jeſſamine* grows wild in ſeveral parts of the Woods, affording a moſt pleaſant and grateful Smell.

Ever-Greens are to be met with all over this Province, of ſeveral curious ſorts, of a very quick Growth, affording

ing pleaſant and refreſhing Shades in the extremity of hot Weather: And ſuch are the lofty *Cypreſs* or *White Cedar*, the *Red Cedar*, the *Pitch Pine*, the *Yellow Pine*, the *White Pine* with long Leaves, and the ſmaller *Almond Pine*: *Hornbeam*, *Holly* two ſorts, *Bay-Tree*, two ſorts of *Myrtle*, two ſorts of *Evergreen Oaks*, *Miſſeltoe* of the *Oak*, *Gallberry-Tree*, *Privet*, *Savine*, *Taupan*, or *Caſſena*, whereof the Tea is made, ſo very much in requeſt amongſt both the *Indians*, and *Chriſtians*, with many other *Ever-greens*.

I ſhall in the next Place treat of the Timber that this Country produces, *viz.*

The *Cheſnut Oak*, is a very lofty Tree and clear of Boughs and Limbs, for fifty or ſixty Feet high, and is commonly four or five Feet Diameter, they are the largeſt Oaks we have, and yield the faireſt Planks. Theſe kind of Oaks grow chiefly in low Land that is ſtiff and rich; ſome of them are ſo high that a good Gun will hardly kill a Turkey on the top of them, though with Swan Shot. They are called the *Cheſnut Oak* from the ſweetneſs and largeneſs of the Acorns; the Leaves and Bark of this and all the following Oaks are of a very Binding Nature, and may ſucceſsfuly be uſed to ſtop all kind of Fluxes, the Salt is Diuretick, and the Wood of ſome are of the ſame Uſes and Virtues with *Guajacum*; as is manifeſt in its cure of the *Yaws* and other Diſorders. In moſt of all the Oaks, grows a long Moſs, whereof the Cattle and Deer are very fond, which I have already mentioned.

The *White Scaley Bark Oak*; this is uſed as the former in building Sloops, Brigantines, Ships, and other Veſſells of Burthen. And though it bears a larger Acorn, yet it never grows to the bulk and height of the former. This kind of Oak is found generally growing on dry

ſtiff Lands, and is ſo called from the Scaly broken White Bark which covers the Tree. This and the former produce good Mast for Swine to feed on.

The *Red Oak* ſometimes grows very large and lofty in good Land, but it is not uſed as the former in building of Veſſels, being a very Porous Timber, and not durable, yet it is ſometimes uſed for Pipe Staves, and makes good Fences and Clap-Boards, which are the only uſe made of it in this Country; it is ſo called from the redneſs of its Wood. It produces good Maſt for Swine.

The *Spaniſh Oak* has a whitiſh ſmooth Bark, grows pretty large in wet low Ground, and is very free from Limbs or Boughs; it is durable Wood, and very eaſy to ſplit, therefore ſome uſe to build Veſſels with it, it affords good Plank, Clap-Boards, Rails, for Fences, and alſo excellent good Maſt for Swine; the Bark of this Tree is uſed for the Cure of the *Yaws*.

The *Baſtard-Spaniſh-Oak* is betwixt the *Red* and *Spaniſh-Oak*, it is not as durable as the former, but makes good Rails for Fencing, and Clap-Boards, and is very good Wood for the Fire, this being all the Uſe that is made of it at preſent; it likewiſe bears a very good Maſt for *Swine* to feed on.

The *Black-Oak* grows large, and is durable Wood under Water; it is ſeldom made uſe of in building Ships, but is ſometimes uſed in Houſe-Work; it bears as good Maſt as any of the former for *Swine*.

The *White-Iron*, or *Ring-Oak*, is ſo called from the durability and laſting quality of the Wood; this Wood is found to be one of the beſt *Oaks* we have in this Country, or in *America*, for *Pipe-ſtaves* and Building of all kind of Ships; it is as large as the former, grows on dry Lands, and ſeldom fails of producing a good Crop of *Acorns*.

The

The *Turkey-Oak*, ſo called, from the ſmall *Acorns* it bears, which are ſweet, and eat like the *Acorns* of the *Cheſtnut-Oak*, on which the Wild *Turkies* feed, and are very fat in the Seaſon; this Wood is only uſed for Firing and Fences, not being ſo durable as the former are.

The *Live-Oak*, ſo called, from its being Green all the Year, it grows on dry ſandy Ground, and is the moſt durable *Oak* in all *America*, but it is ſhort, and will not afford Plank of any conſiderable Length, therefore unfit to build Ships with. There are ſome few Trees that will afford a Stock of twelve Feet, but it being ſo very firm and weighty, they never make uſe of it upon theſe Occaſions, moreover the Wood being ſo very hard, the Sawyers ſeldom attempt the cutting of it: It is obſervable, that a Nail being once driven into it, it is next to an impoſſibility to draw it out again; the Limbs thereof are ſo cured, that they ſerve for excellent Timbers, and Knees and makes the beſt Trunnels of any Oak in the World for Ships and Veſſels of any ſort; the Acorns thereof are as ſweet as any *Cheſnuts*, and the *Indians* draw an Oil from them as ſweet and palatable as that from the *Olive*, though of an Amber Colour; with theſe Acorns ſome have counterfeited and made *Chocolate* not to be diſtinguiſhed by a good Palate; this Wood makes excellent Window Frames, Mallats, and Pins for Blocks. They are of an indifferent quick growth; there are two ſorts of this Oak, and Swine that feed on its Acorns, are excellent fine *Pork*.

The *Freſh Water Oak*, grows in Ponds of freſh Water, in Swamps by the River ſides, and in low Grounds overflown with Water, they continue Green all the Year; there is little or no uſe made of it, except for Fire or Fences.

The

The *Cypreſs* is not an Ever-green in *Carolina*, and is therefore called the *Bald Cypreſs*, becauſe the Leaves during the Winter Seaſon turn Red, and do not recover their verdure till the Spring. Theſe Trees are the talleſt and thickeſt of any we have in this Part of the World; ſome of them being above thirty Six Feet in circumference; the Nuts which theſe Trees bear yield a moſt odoriferous *Balſam*, that moſt effectually cures all new and *green Wounds*, *Gonorrhœa's*, and old *Gleets*, and being drank with *Alicant*, ſtop all kinds of *Fluxes* of Blood, and conſolidate *Ulcers* in ſtubborn Bodies, and dry up exceſſive Moiſtures, and cure *Ruptures*, *Polypus*, *Carbuncles*, and many other diſorders. The *Planters* and *Indians* moſt commonly make their *Periaugers* and Canoes of this Wood, with which they paſs over large Creeks and Bays, to Tranſport their Lumber from one River to another; ſome of theſe *Periaugers* are ſo large that they will carry thirty or forty Barrels of *Pitch* or *Tar* in them, though of one entire Piece of Timber; ſome trade in them to *Virginia* and other Places along the Coaſt, with Pork and other Productions of the Country: Of theſe Trees are likewiſe made curious Boats for Pleaſure and other Neceſſary Crafts; this Wood is very laſting and free from the Rot by the Worms in the Water, which often ruin many Veſſels and Boats made of Oak and other Wood, which I ſhall deſcribe in its proper Place, when I treat of thoſe Inſects: It is reported that no Moth or other Vermine will abide in a Cheſt made of this Wood.

The *Pine-Tree*, whereof there are four ſorts, if not more. The *Pitch-Pine* is a very large fair Tree, free from Boughs or Branches, 'till you come near the top, and continues green all the Year like the *Fir-Tree*, it's Timber is much redder than the former, and it's Leaves narrower, ſhorter and more ſharp pointed like the *Pine*; their

their Fruit is *Scaly*, the Bark of the Tree is blacker, tougher, and more flexible than that of the *Fir-Tree*. The Wood of this Tree being so full of *Bitumen*, or *Turpentine*, and is so durable, that it seems to suffer no decay, though exposed to all Weathers, or lying upon the Ground or in the Water for many Ages; and is used in many domesticks Affairs. This Tree affords four excellent Commodities, *viz.* *Turpentine*, *Tar*, *Pitch*, and *Rosin*, how they are made, I shall treat of in another Place.

The *White* and *Yellow-Pine*, grow to be very large Trees much after the same form with the former, but it's Leaves are larger, and the Wood is not so full of *Turpentine*, therefore more easy to be sawed, it affords excellent good Plank for Building, and several other uses, they make *Masts*, *Yards*, and several other Necessaries of this *Pine*, being the most useful Tree in the Woods.

The *Almond-Pine*, this last bears *Kernels* in the *Apple*, tasting much like *Almonds*; for which Reason it is so call'd, it much resembles the former in bigness and groweth, is used for *Masts*, *Boards*, *Piles*, *Fences*, and several other things.

The *Dwarf-Pine*, seldom exceeds above Seventeen Feet high, and is therefore of little or no use, except for shew, being an Ever-green, as all the rest are. There are many Virtues ascribed to the Produce of these Trees (which they rightly deserve) not only in external, but internal Disorders, which are well known amongst us.

The *Cedar*, whereof there are two sorts, the *Red* and the *White*. The *Red Cedar* is encompassed with a vast number of Branches, which grow gradually lesser and shorter, as they approach the top of the Tree, so that it grows exactly in the Form of a Pyramid. The Leaves are small and round like those of the Pine Tree, but shorter and not so sharp pointed; it beareth Berries all times

times of the Year, which are ſweet and pleaſant to eat; it is a moſt beautiful Ever-green, and is here in great Plenty. Thoſe near the Salts grow generally on Sand Banks, and that in the Freſhes is found in the Swamps and low wet Grounds. It is a ſoft Wood like Firr, and of a reddiſh Colour, but hardens in proceſs of time; of this Wood, Tables, Wainſcot, and other Neceſſaries are made, 'tis eſteemed for its ſweet-ſcent, and it is as durable and laſting a wood as any we have in *Carolina*; it is much uſed in Poſts for Houſes and Sills, as alſo to build Sloops, Boats, *&c.* by reaſon the Worms will not touch it, though it remain in the Water, or upon Land, for ſeveral Years. Of this Cedar, Ship loads my be exported, and it was formerly ſo very plentiful and common in this Province, that they have fenced large Plantations with it; the Coffins for the Dead are frequently made of it, by reaſon of its laſting Quality, the Wood of this Tree is profitable againſt the *French Pox*, and an infuſion in Vinegar helps Scabs and other cutaneous Diſorders.

The *White Cedar*, ſo called, becauſe it nearly approaches the other Cedar in Smell, Bark, and Leaves, only this grows taller, is exceeding ſtreight, very light, and free to ſplit: It is tough and durable, and maketh good Yards, Top-maſts, Boms, and Boltſprits, the beſt Shingles for Houſes, Pails, and other Veſſels, neceſſary for ſeveral uſes, are made of it's Wood; with the Bark and the *Red Cedar*, the *Indians* moſt commonly uſe to make their Cabbins of, which proves firm, and reſiſts all Weather.

The *Tulip* Trees, which are called by the *Planters* Poplars, as being neareſt in grain to that Wood. Theſe Trees grow exceeding large and tall, ſome being found Twenty one Foot and more in circumference as I have frequently

frequently seen in many places in this Province. And I have been informed, that some are found ten Feet Diameter; several of these Trees bear a white Tulip, and others a party-colour'd one: The Wood makes handsome Wainscot Tables, Shingles for Houses, and Planks for several uses; it is very durable and lasting under Ground, and in the Water. The Planters frequently make an Oyntment of the Buds, which is excellent good to cure all manner of Inflamations, Scalds and Burns; The Cattle are fond of its Buds, which gives a very odd taste to the Milk.

The *Aspen* Trees are the same here as in *Europe*, but are scarcely to be found in this Province; the Bark is used inwardly in the *Sciatica*, and other *Rheumatick* Disorders, and in the *Strangury*, but the Leaves being taken inwardly, are said to cause Barrenes.

The *Ash* Tree, whereof we have two sorts; the first is only like the *European* in the Grain of the Wood, for it differs from ours in the Leaves and the Bark, and Keys, it bears none; the Wood is very tough, but there is little use made of of it at present. The second sort is what they call in these Parts by the Name of the *Water-Ash*, and differs from the former by only being brittel and the Bark is food for the *Beavers*, both these sorts of *Ash* grow in wet low Swampy Grounds, and on the Banks of the Rivers.

The *Sycamore* Tree grows in low and Swampy Land, and by River sides; the Bark is quite different from ours, but very beautiful, being mottled and clouded with several Colours, as White Blue, *&c.* The Leaves of this Tree are exactly of the form and shape with those in *Europe*; Keys it bears none, but a Bur like the sweet *Gum*, or the *Chesnut*, but its Grain is fine and beautifully mottled with variety of Colours, and is made use

of for ſeveral domeſtick Neceſſaries, ſuch as Wainſcot, Tables, Chairs, Trenchers, Diſhes, Stocks for Guns, and the like. The Buds of this Tree boiled and applyed, help the hardneſs of the Spleen, and other hard ſwellings; the Fruit looſens the Belly, and the Tears that iſſue out of the Tree in Spring, the biting of Serpents.

The *Beech* Tree is frequently to be met with very large, whereof there are two ſorts; the firſt is much the ſame as in *Europe*, and is in plenty all over this Province, but is little regarded or made uſe of, only for *Fire-wood*, not being durable Timber, yet affords plenty of Sweet Maſt for *Swine*, which makes the *Pork* very oily, except it be hardned with *Indian Corn* before it is killed or made uſe of.

There is another ſort of *Beech* found here in ſeveral places called *Buck-Beech*, and differs little from the former, only in the Bark and Leaf there is ſome ſmall difference, and the Tree is generally not ſo large. The Leaves applied, help Swellings, Bliſters, and Excoriations of the Skin; the Juice that comes out of the Tree bored, is excellent againſt Scruffs, Tetters, Ring-worms, Scabs, and ſore Mouths; the Kernel of the Nut helps the Gravel and Stone in the Kidneys, ſo doth the Aſhes.

The *Elm* Tree, whereof are two ſorts, the firſt grows on high Lands, and is like the *European Elm*. The *Indians* take the Bark of the Root of this Tree, and beat it to a *Pulp* whilſt freſh, and then dry it in the *Chimney*, with which they heal a Cut or green Wound, very ſpeedily. The other kind of *Elm* grows in wet or low Grounds, and differs but little from the former, only the Bark is ſo very tough, that the *Europeans* and *Indians* make Ropes of it for ſeveral uſes, which they ſtrip of in *April* or *May*, when the Sap begins to run, this they can do with the greateſt eaſe imaginable at that time, there being ſuch

plenty

plenty of other valuable Timber, there is little or no other use made of it at present. The Decoction of the Bark and Leaves of the *Elm* is of a cleansing, drying, and binding Quality, and therefore good in Wounds and broken Bones; the Liquor that issueth out of the Tree takes away Scruff, Pimples, Spots and Freckles from the Face; one Ounce of the inner-Bark in Wine, Purges Flegm.

The *Mulberry* Tree, whereof there are three sorts here, beside the different bigness of some Trees Fruit. The first is the common red *Mulberry*, whose Fruit is long and taper at the Ends, and is the earliest in this Province (except the *Strawberries*) they are sweet and luscious, the Planters make use of their Fruit (which is above an Inch long) instead of *Raisons* and *Currans*, for several Dishes; they yield a transparent Crimson Liquor, which I do not doubt would make good Wine, if the Planters Inclination tended that way: The *Parakeetoes* and other Fowl feed upon the Fruit in the Season, and likewise the *Hogs*, as they drop from the Trees. These Trees grow to be very large, and make the most delightful and pleasant Shades to sit under in the Summer, of any in these Parts of *America*, by their large Boughs spreading at great distances, and growing as round as any I have ever seen; you shall see in most of their Plantations, and especially near their Dwelling Houses, these pleasant Arbours.

The other two sorts bear a smooth Leaf fit for the *Silk-work*; the first of these bear a white *Mulberry*, which is common: The second bears a Fruit like a small *Blackberry* which is very sweet; the Wood of these Trees are very durable and tough, and when the *Indians* can't get the *Locust* Tree, they use this, to make their Bows with. These Trees grow extraordinary round, and pleasant to the Eye, as any in these Parts, the Fruit, Leaves, and

Barke are uſed in *Gargariſms* for ſore *Throats* and the *Tooth-ach.*

The *Hickery* Trees are of the *Wallnut* kind, and bears a Nut as they do, whereof there are three ſorts, *viz.* the Common white, the red, and the flying Bark'd.

The common or white *Hickery* grows tollerably large, but is not a durable Wood, for if it be cut down and expoſed to the Weather, it will be quite rotten and ſpoiled in three Years (as will likewiſe the Beech of this Country) but it is very tough, eaſy to ſplit, and maketh the beſt Hoops I have ſeen. It bears a Nut much like the *Wall-nut* of this Country, with a Husk about it, but of an Oval Form; the Kernels are ſweet, good to eat, and make Oil; the Hogs feed plentifully on them in the Seaſon, by which means they become Fat, and make excellent Pork.

The *Indians* gather great Quantities of theſe Nuts, and the Black Wall-nuts (being ripe in *Autumn*) which they preſerve and lay up in Stores for the Winter Seaſon, whereof they make ſeveral Diſhes and Banquets; this is generally done after the following Manner, they take theſe Nuts and break them very ſmall between two Stones, until the Shells and Kernels are indifferent ſmall, and this Powder they preſent to Strangers upon little Wooden Diſhes, the Kernel diſolves in, the Mouth, the Shell is ſpit out, and taſtes as well as Almonds. They likewiſe thicken their Veniſon Broath with this Powder, whilſt the Shell precipitates and remains at the bottom, making it very rich and agreeable in Taſte; theſe Nuts have much the ſame Virtues with the Wall-nuts.

The *Red Hickery*, is ſo called, from the Heart thereof being red, firm, and durable, whereof are made walking-ſticks, Mortars, Peſtils, and ſeveral other fine Turn-

ers

ers Ware. Both these sorts are Plenty in this Province, and are the best Fire-wood they have.

The third sort is called the *Flying Bark'd Hickery*, from its brittle and scaly Bark: It bears a Nut with a bitter Kernel, and a soft Shell; of this Wood they make Coggs for Mills, and several other Necessaries: The Leaves of all these sorts of *Hickery* have a fragrant smell, and are much like our Wall-nut in *Europe*.

The *Black Wall-nut* Trees are plenty and large in this Province, and the Wood firm and durable, whereof beautiful Wainscot Tables, Chests of Drawers, and several other Necessaries are made. Some of this Wood is very Knotty, but fine Grain'd, and partly of the Colour of the *Yew* Tree; it is so durable, that some have bottom'd Ships with it, it is likewise reported that it is never eaten by Worms bred in the salt Water. The Kernels of these Nuts are good to eat, but after some time they grow rank and oily. It grows exactly in the shape of the *European Wall-nut*, but the Shell is much thicker and harder, as most of the native Nuts of *America* are. This Fruit is very agreeable and pleasant to eat; when it begins to grow ripe and hath its yellow Husk or Coat on, it looks exactly like a Lemon. The old Hogs feed plentifully on these Nuts, which make them fat, and good Pork, but the young Swine are not able to crack them, so that great quantities lye under the Trees. It is called the *Black Wall-nut* from its black Barck, to distinguish it I suppose from the other *Hickery*, whereof it is a Species.

The *Ches-nut* Tree in this Province grows mostly toward the Heads of the Rivers, and hilly parts of the Country; it is large and durable Wood, and is useful in building of Houses and many other Conveniencies. The Nut of the *Ches-nut* Tree is smaller than the *European*, but

but much ſweeter and better reliſh'd; they have the Virtues of Almonds and Hazle-nuts, but more nouriſhing, the Leaves or Bark of the Tree boiled in Wine are good againſt the Bloody Flux, and all other kind of Fluxes.

The *Sweet-Gum* Tree, ſo called, from the ſweet and fragrant Gum it yields in the Spring, by making an Inciſion in the Bark and Wood. It cures the Herps, Tettars, Inflamations, Morphew, and many other cutaneous Diſorders: It is likewiſe a ſoveraign Balſam for ſeveral internal Diſorders, as I have often experienced; it bears a Leaf partly like the *Aſpen* Tree, a round Bur; with a kind of Prickle like the *Horſe Cheſnut*, wherein is contained the Seed; ſcarce any Wood has a finer or better Grain, being very durable, and is frequently made uſe of for Tables, Drawers, *&c.*

The *Black Gum* Tree, whereof there are two ſorts; the firſt bears a black Berry well taſted, which the *Indians* commonly mix with their Pulſe, and the kind of Soups they make, to which it gives a pretty flavour, and Scarlet Colour: The Bears crop theſe Trees for their Fruit, of which they are very fond, yet if they are kill'd at that Seaſon, they eat unſavoury, which no doubt is occaſioned by their eating thoſe Berries, for at other times, when they feed on Beech and other Maſt, their Fleſh is well taſted and good Food.

The ſecond ſort bears a Berry in ſhape like the former, but bitter and ill taſted. This Tree the *Indians* report is never hurt or wounded by Lightning, as other Trees generally are. It has no certain Grain, and it is almoſt impoſſible to ſplit it for Uſe; from whence I am perſuaded the *Indians* took this Notion, that it is never hurt as above, from its being ſo very difficult to ſplit.

The *White Gum* Tree bears a ſort of long bunched Flowers, and is a beautiful knotted and curled Wood,

and

and maketh curious Furniture of ſeveral kinds, if wrought by skillful Artiſts.

The *Locuſt* Tree bears a Leaf like the *Liquoriſh* Plant, and has large and long Prickles (like the *Hawthorn* Tree, but as long as the Quills of a *Porcupine*) in the Boughs and Body of the Tree: It is the moſt durable Wood we have, and is made choice of for all ſorts of work that is expoſed to the Weather; it grows pretty tall and large, there are two ſorts of it, the White and the Yellow, it bears Cods like *Kidney-Beans*, but much larger, wherein are contained ſome few Seeds, and a certain Juice or Subſtance as thick and ſweet as Honey, but of a dark browniſh Colour. Of this Tree the *Indians* make their choiſeſt Bows, being tough and flexible; the Fruit of this Tree is much of the ſame Virtues and Uſes with *Honey*.

The *Honey* Tree is ſo like the *Locuſt*, that there is ſcarce any Difference between them, only the *Honey* Tree is more prickley than the former; and are a *Species* of the *Locuſt* though call'd by different Names; it bears long Cods like the former wherein is contained the Seeds and the *Honey*. This Tree grows as large as the *Locuſt*, and will bear in five Years from the time of Planting; they were firſt brought here by the *Indian* Traders, and propogated by their Seed, but from what part of *America* is not known: Theſe Trees, if planted, would make the beſt of Hedges, being very prickley, and of quick growth; I have ſeen Orchards of theſe Trees in *Virginia*, where excellent *Metheglin* is made of their Fruit, they ſometimes boil it to the conſiſtance of *Honey*, and uſe it after the ſame manner.

The *Service* Tree groweth to be very large, and beareth long Leaves like thoſe of the *Aſh* Tree; the Flowers grow in great Cluſters, and are of a whitiſh Colour, after which

which come forth ſmall *Berries*, ſomewhat long, which are unpleaſant to the Taſte, 'till they have lain by for ſome time, then they become ſoft and mellow; they are in taſte and operation like the *Medlar*, but ſeldom made uſe of but by the *Indians* the *Planters*, not regarding them: The Leaves are aſtringent, and ſtop Fluxes, and the Fruit is cooling, drying, and binding, (eſpecially when they are hard, and not altogether ripe) they ſtop Fluxes in the Belly, and all other kind of Fluxes; they Strengthen the Stomach, ſtop vomiting, and outwardly heal Wounds, being dry'd and made into Powder.

The *Birch* Tree is plentiful in this Province, but generally towards the Freſhes on the Banks and Heads of the Rivers, but never near the Salt Water; it differs ſomething in the Bark from the *European Birch*, and the Leaves are ſharper and ſmaller; it buds in *April*, and the *Parakeetoes* come from all Parts to feed on them at that Seaſon. Where this Wood grows there are no Plantations; the Leaves are cleanſing, diſolve and purge watry Humours, help Dropſies and Stone in the Bladder, the Aſhes of the Bark is effectual to heal ſore Mouths, and take away Scabs. The *Muſhrooms* are binding and cure the *Piles*, the Tears are pleaſant to drink and quench Thirſt.

The *Alder* Tree grows in wet low Grounds near the Freſhes and heads of the Rivers, but is not common amongſt the Planters, or near the Salt-Water; this Tree is ſo well known amongſt us, that it would be needleſs to deſcribe it. The Bark and Twigs are much uſed by the Planters in dying Wool and Cloath black; the Wood is ſoft, but durable and laſting in the Ground or Water, makes good Piles, and other Neceſſaries, the Leaves and Bark are cooling and binding, and uſed in hot Swellings or Ulcers in the Body.

The

The *Laurel* Tree is plenty all over this Province, and grows in low and ſwampy Ground, in height and bigneſs equalizing the lofty Oaks; the Planters dye a yellow Colour with the Leaves and Berries of this Tree, the Wood is not durable in the Weather, yet ſerves for ſeveral Uſes when kept dry, its Virtues are doubtful, yet it is ſaid to provoke Vomit, and bring down the *Menſes*.

The *Aſcopo* is a Tree, ſo called by the *Indians*, very like the *Laurel* in its Leaves, the Bark is of a hot ſpicy Nature, much like the *Cassia Lignea*; I never ſaw this Tree growing, but the *Indian* who procured me a Branch of it aſſured me, that they are plentifully to be met with at the Heads of the Rivers, and near the Mountains, and that they grow pretty large.

The *Bay* Tree delights to grow in the ſame Ground with the *Laurel*, it is a beautiful Ever-green, the Wood of this as well as the *Laurel*, are of little uſe only for Fire, and is plenty all over this Province; the Berries yield a Wax whereof they make Candles, which in burning afford a pleaſing ſmell, beſides it is uſeful in Chirurgery, the Leaves are of a bitter aſtringent Nature, but grateful to the Stomach, and reſiſts Vomiting; when made into a Pulſe, help all Inflamations, the ſtinging of Bees, and other venemous Beaſts, the Bark of the Root in *Rheniſh Wine* provokes Urine, opens Obſtructions, cures Dropſies and Jaundice, but kills the *Fœtus*; the Berries expel Wind and eaſe all manner of Pains proceeding from Cold, therefore good in the Cholick, Palſies, Convulſions, Epilepſies, and many other Diſorders; ſome have the Leaves tun'd up with Beer, which makes it pleaſant and grateful to the Stomach.

The *Bay Tulip* Tree is another beautiful Ever-green, is very common, and grows in the ſame Ground with the former; its Virtues are uncertain, neither have I known any uſe made of it.

The *Horn-beam* Tree, grows in some places in this Province both plentiful and large, the Leaves are like those of the *Elm* or *Witch Hazel*, but tenderer; the Timber of the Tree becomes so strong, durable, and hard, in process of time, that it may rather be compared to a Horn than Wood, from whence it took the Name *Horn-beam*, or *Hard-beam*; it is excellent for making Arrows, Pullies, Shafts for Mills, and many other Necessaries; yet is little regarded, or made use of, by reason of the great plenty of other Wood in those parts; there may be an Oil drawn from it, which is of excellent use in the cure of the *French Pox*.

The *Maple* Tree, of which there are two sorts, the first has an exceeding white Grain, and generally grows in the plain and champion Country; the second has a much harder and more curled Grain, and grows in the Hilly and Mountainous parts; both these sorts are large, with a smooth Bark, great Boughs, and Leaves much like those of the Vine, hanging by long reddish Stalks, which make delightful and refreshing Shades to sit under from the Heat of the Sun: The Flowers which are of a whitish-green Colour, hang in Clusters, after which come forth long Fruit resembling the Wings of *Grass hoppers*, with white and little Kernels in them: Of this Wood is made Wainscots, Tables, Trenchers, Dishes, Spinning-wheels, and the like; the Leaves and Roots are Astringent, stop all sorts of Fluxes, and the Root helps Pains of the sides and Liver.

The *Persimon* Tree agrees with all Lands and Soils, they are common on all Plantations, the Fruit when ripe is neareſt to our *Medlar*, it is one of the greateſt Astringents I have ever met with, for if eaten, or chew'd before it is ripe, it draws the Mouth up like a Purse. The Fruit when ripe, being apply'd to a Foul wound, presently

ſently cleanſes it, but cauſes exquiſite Pain: The Fruit ſoon rots after it is ripe, and contains four flat Stones, reſembling thoſe of the *Tamarinds*. The Planters make Beer of its Fruit, which they call *Perſimon Beer*. There are two ſorts of this Fruit, the one ripe in *Summer*, and the other not before the Froſt viſits thoſe Parts, theſe Trees ſometimes grow to two Feet diameter, ſome make uſe of the Bark, inſtead of the *Cortex peruviana*, or *Jeſuits Bark*, for Agues, and it is reported that that Bark is from the *Perſimon* Tree in *New-Spain*.

The *Holly* Tree, whereof there are two ſorts, one with a large Leaf, and the other with a ſmaller, they generally are to be met with in low wet Grounds; both ſorts are in plenty, and grow tolerably large, yet I have ſeldom ſeen any uſe made of their Wood there being ſuch plenty of much better. Their Berries are ſaid to be good in the *Cholick*, for ten or twelve being taken inwardly, purge ſtrongly by Stool. The *Bindlam* which is made of the Bark, being applied Plaſterwiſe, conſolidates Wounds, eaſes all manner of Pains, and ſtrengthens the Nerves, but if taken inwardly, it is mortal, for it glues the Intrails together, ſo that the paſſages of the Excrements are intirely ſhut up.

The *Chinkapin* Tree is a kind of a *Cheſnut*, and very plentiful, they bear great quantities of Nuts which are leſs than a *Hazle-nut*, and of a Piramedial Form, they are in Taſte like a *Cheſnut*, but ſweeter: It's Nut has a Husk or Bur about it like the former, which opens when it is ripe, ſo that the Fruit falls to the Ground, which is good feeding for Hogs, making them fat and excellent Pork. The Grain of the Wood and the Leaves on the Trees are very like the *Cheſnut*, but the Timber is not ſo large, yet it is uſed to Timber Boats, Shallops, *&c.* and makes any thing that is to endure the Weather;

this and the *Hickery* are very tough Rods to whip Horſes with, yet this Wood is in Subſtance very brittle. This Tree the Vine delights to twiſt about, it is good Fire-wood, but very ſparkling as well as the *Saſſafras*; the Nut or Kernel of this Tree has much the ſame Virtues with thoſe of the *Cheſnut*, but more binding, and are of excellent uſe to ſtop Fluxes.

The *Saſſafras* is very common, and grows large, its Wood being ſometimes above two Feet over, 'tis durable and laſting for Bowls, Timber Poſts for Houſes, and other things that require ſtanding in the Ground, notwithſtanding it is very brittle and light, it hath a pleaſant ſmell. The Leaves are of two ſorts, ſome long and ſmooth, the others indented about the edges (eſpecially thoſe growing at the top of the Branches) ſometimes like thoſe of the *Fig-tree*, it bears a ſmall white Flower, which is cleanſing to the Blood, if eaten in the Spring with other Salating; it likewiſe bears a ſmall Berry, which when ripe, is black and very oily, *Carminative*, and extreamly prevalent in Coughs: The Bark and Root help moſt Diſeaſes proceeding from Obſtructions, and of ſingular uſe in Diets for the *French Pox*, it ſtrengthens the whole Body, cures Barrenneſs, and is a Specifick to thoſe afflicted with the Gripes, or defluctions of Rheum; the ſame in Powder, and ſtrong lotions being made thereof, is much uſed by the Savage *Indians*, to mundify old Ulcers, and ſeveral other uſes; it is a beautiful and odoriferous Ever-green, makes a delightful and fragrant Fire, but very ſparkling.

The *Willow* Tree differs from the *European*, both in Bark and Leaves, but the Grain is not to be diſtinguiſhed from the former, and is commonly to be met with growing on the River ſides, and Banks of freſh Water, as the Birch does.

The

The *Black Wild Cherry* Tree, grows common in the Woods in ſeveral places, and eſpecially on light Lands, to be very large, the Leaves and Grain are like thoſe of the *European Black Cherry*; in *May* they are in their Bloom of Flowers, at which time they appear all over as white as a Sheet; it bears ſmall black *Cherries*, in prodigious Quantities, which are ripe in *June*, the *Parakeeto*'s, Wild Turkies, Swine, and ſeveral other Beaſt and Birds feed upon them at that time. Theſe *Cherries* are very ſweet and well taſted, and are better for making of *Cherry Brandy* than any I have ever met with in *Europe*, yielding a fine Colour, and moſt grateful Flavour to the Brandy, and have the ſame Virtues with the *European Cherries*.

The *Red Cherry* Tree, is very ſcarce, and rarely to be met with, it's Virtues and Uſes are much the ſame of theſe with us.

The *Wild Plum* Tree, whereof there are two ſorts, if not more, one is much ſooner ripe than the other, and differ in the Bark, one being very Scaley like the *American Birch*, and the other ſmooth, theſe Trees are in great plenty in theſe Parts, and eſpecially amongſt the *Indians*, who are very fond of them. Theſe Trees when they are in Bloſſom, ſmell as ſweet as any *Jeſſamine*, and look as white as a Sheet, but are ſomething Prickly, you may make them grow to what Shape you pleaſe; they are very Ornamental about a Houſe, and make a pleaſant ſight in the Spring with their beautiful white Liverys: Their Fruit is red, and very cooling and palatable to the ſick; they are of a very quick growth, and bear in five Years from the Stone. The *Engliſh* large *Black Plumb*, thrives well, as does the *Cherry*, being grafted thereon; this Fruit is in great Requeſt amongſt the *Indians*, which they ſometimes dry and preſerve for the Winter.

There

There is another ſort of *Plum*, about the bigneſs of a *Damſon*, the Tree is but ſmall, and ſeldom exceeds ten Inches in thickneſs, the *Plum* has a very phyſical taſte, what may be its Virtues is doubtful, but this I am ſenſible of, that when it is chew'd in the Mouth, it is apt to make that part ſore; the Wood is ſomething porous, but exceeds the *Box* for it's fine yellow Colour.

The *Damſon* Tree, whereof there are two ſorts, the black and the white, and are about the bigneſs of our *European Damſons*, they grow any where if planted from the Stone or Slip, they bear a whitiſh Bloſſom, and are a good Fruit, they are found growing in great plenty on the Sand-Banks, and all along the Coaſt, they never grow large, but are plentiful Bearers. The Fruit of this and the *Plum* Trees are very cooling and good in Fevers.

The *Fig* Tree, is to be met with growing wild in ſome parts of this Province, and eſpecially near the Mountains, the Fruit of this is but ſmall, notwithſtanding the Tree grows to be very large. The Leaves and Fruit are good to diſſolve and waſte all hard Kernels and ſcrophulous Tumors.

The *Hawthorn*, or *white Thorn Tree*, of theſe there are two ſorts, the firſt is exactly the ſame with ours in *Ireland*, and grows commonly near the Freſhes and heads of Rivers, but never near the Salt Waters. The ſecond ſort grows plentifully in ſome parts of this Province, the Fruit, or Haws, are quite different from thoſe with us being conſiderably larger and longer, and of a very agreable taſte. Theſe Trees are near as large as the *European*, but have few or no Prickles: There is no uſe made of the Timber, neither do they plant this or the other in Hedges, becauſe Timber is ſo plenty at preſent. The Leaves, Flowers, and Haws, are very binding, therefore good

good to ſtop all kinds of Fluxes; the Powder of the Stone drank in *Rheniſh Wine*, is of very great ſervice in the Stone, Gravel, and Dropſie.

The *Black Thorn*, or *Sloe* Tree grows plentifully in ſeveral parts of this Province, (and is a Slender Tree about the bigneſs of our *Hazel*) but is quite different from our *Sloe* Tree in *Ireland*, the Fruit being generally twice as large and as long as ours; this is of a more aſtringent or binding Nature than the former. The Bark of this Tree being dryed and made into a fine Powder, and apply'd to inveterate old Sores (and eſpecially in the Legs) very ſpeedily cleanſes and drys them up, and is one of the beſt Remedies on thoſe occaſions, I have ever met with.

The *Dog-wood* Tree, grows very plentifully in this Province, on light and rich Grounds, the Trunk or Body whereof, is covered with a rough Bark of a ruſſet Colour with ſome Pith in the middle, like that of *Elder*. It flowers the firſt in the Woods, of any Tree in this Province, making the Forreſt very beautiful at that Seaſon; it bears a white Bloſſom in the Months of *February* and *March*, much like the wild *Roſe*. The Leaves are full of Nerves or Sinews, in form like thoſe of *Plantain*, of a loathſome ſmell and bitter taſte. Some of theſe Trees are ten or twelve Inches diameter, and have a very fine and beautiful Grain, and ſerves for ſeveral uſes within Doors, but is not durable, being expoſed to the Weather. The Bark of the Root of this Tree, is frequently made uſe of by way of Infuſion, and given to Children to kill the Worms; theſe being the only uſe made of it at preſent.

The *Sugar* Tree grows very beautiful and high, with a ſmooth Bark and large ſpreading Branches, which make an excellent Shade to ſit under in the extremity of hot Weather. The Leaves are very large and broad like

like thoſe of the *Vine*, but I never obſerved any Flowers or Fruit growing on it, ſo can't ſatisfie the Reader as to that Point. It is of a very tedious growth, and is commonly to be met with at the heads of Rivers, and near the Mountains, but no where elſe. The *Indians* tap it at certain Seaſons of the Year, and place *Gourds* to it to receive the Liquor, and when they have got a ſufficient quantity of Juice, they boil it to the conſiſtence of Sugar, which is as ſweet, and ſerves for the ſame uſe, but what other Virtues, or Uſes, it may be indued with, I am a ſtranger to.

The *Hazel-nut* Tree is ſo well known, that it would be needleſs to ſay much on that head, it grows plentifully in ſome parts of this Province, and eſpecially near the Mountains and heads of Rivers, but its Nut is not as good as the *European*, having a much thicker and harder Shell, and ſo have moſt of the Fruits in *America* that I have ſeen. The *Hazel-nuts* before they are thoroughly ripe are an excellent Aſtringent, and ſtop Fluxes of all ſorts, a Decoction of the inner Rind of the Tree, drank for ſome Days together, is good againſt the Strangury and kill Worms.

The *Papau* Tree is not large, being only about eight or ten Inches diameter, but has the broadeſt Leaves of any Trees I ever ſaw in the Woods of *Carolina*; it bears an Apple, about the bigneſs of a Hens Egg, which contains a large Stone in it, when it is ripe it is of a beautiful yellow colour, and as ſoft and ſweet as any Fruit can be. The Planters make Puddings, Tarts, and many other Diſhes of the Fruit of this Tree.

The *Red-bud* Tree, ſo called from its red Buds; it bears a beautiful purple *Lark-heel* Flower, and makes the moſt agreeable and beſt Sallad of any Flowers I have ever met with; its Fruit is ripe in *April* and *May*, theſe

Trees

Trees are not large, ſeldom being above ten or twelve Inches through. The Flowers and Fruit are very cooling, and of an aſtringent Nature.

The *Sorrel*, or *Sower-wood* Tree, ſo called from it's Leaves, that taſte exactly like *Sorrel*. I have never known any uſes made of theſe Trees, which are but ſmall, being not quite as large as the former.

The *Pellitory* is a ſmall Tree that grows in this Province, eſpecially near the Salts, Sand-banks, and Iſlands. The Planters uſe it frequently to cure the Tooth-ach, by putting a piece of the Bark in the Mouth, which is very hot, and cauſeth much Rheum and Spittle to flow from thence; and as I am credibly inform'd, is one of the Ingredients that the *Indians* uſe when they *Huſquenaw* their young Men and Boys, whereof I ſhall treat in it's proper Place, when I come to deſcribe the Cuſtoms of thoſe People.

The *Myrtle* Tree, whereof are two ſorts, different in Leaf and Berry. Theſe Trees grow in great plenty in wet ſwampy Grounds, about ten or twelve Feet high, and bear ſmall white Berries in great quantities, which the Planter's Wives and Children pull in the Months of *October* and *November*, at which time they are ripe, and boil them in Water in large Pans, and ſo skim off the Wax it produces, which is of a greeniſh colour (but in proceſs of time becomes white) and yields a moſt fragrant and oderiferous ſmell. This they ſtrain and make into Cakes or Candles, which are not only very laſting, but grateful and pleaſant for Ladies to burn in their Chambers. Some mix half Tallow with them to make Candles, others without any mixture at all, and are more durable in burning than Tallow or Bees-wax; and the beſt in the World to burn in *Binacles* in Ships that paſs the Equinoctial Line, and all exceſſive hot Countries,

becauſe they will not melt with the extreamity of the heat, ſo readily as the former. A Decoction of theſe Berries cure the falling out of the Womb, Tettars, and Scald Heads, by fomenting the Parts, and their Syrup is good in Coughs, and the like diſorders in the Breaſt.

The *Sumach* Tree grows about nine or ten Feet high, and has tough and pliant Stalks, and Branches full of Twigs (like *Oziers*) of a browniſh colour, whereon grow Leaves that are ſoft and hairy, having a red ſinew or ridge growing through the midſt of them, and indented all about the edges. The Flowers which come forth in *July* are of a greeniſh yellow colour, and grow with the Leaves upon long and red Stalks in cluſters, after which follow ſmall reddiſh Seeds in bunches like Grapes, which are ripe in *Autumn*. This Plant is in very great plenty all over this Province, but little or no uſe is made of it at preſent. Yet it is of great value and uſe in *Europe* in dreſſing Skins, and eſpecially the *Spaniſh* Leather. There are ſmall Birds that feed on it and the *Myrtle Berries* in the Winter. This is one of the Ingredients uſed in the cure of the *Yaws*. The Leaves and Seeds ſtop all kind of Fluxes, and help the *Hæmorrhoides*, all Iſſues of Blood and weakneſs of the Stomach and Inteſtines; outwardly they reſiſt putrefaction; drie up running *Sores*, heal old *Ulcers*, *Gangrens*, *&c.* the Gum put into the Teeth eaſes the Pains thereof.

The *Indico* Tree (which is a kind of Woad, ſuch as Dyers uſe to dye Cloth) grows plentifully in this Province, but I have never known any uſes made of it.

The *Indian-Nut* Tree grows to be very tall, large, and ſmooth, and free from Branches 'till you come near the top, whereon grow Leaves like thoſe of the *Date*, but broad and ſharp at the point as Thorns, whereof the *Indians* make Needles, Bodkins, and many other Inſtruments for

for their uſes, among theſe Leaves come forth cluſters of Flowers like thoſe of the *Cheſ-nut* Tree, from whence are produced large Fruit of an oval Form: In that end next the Tree, are two Holes, and ſometimes three quite through the Fruit; the outſide of this Fruit is covered with a ſubſtance not unlike Hemp, or Flax, before it be beaten ſoft: In the middle whereof is contain'd a great Nut, with a very hard ſhell, of a brown colour, wherein is contained a white Kernel, firm and ſolid, which taſtes like an *Almond*; and within the Cavity or hollowing thereof is found a moſt beautiful Liquor like Milk, and of a pleaſant Taſte. This Tree continues green all the Year, the Timber, though large, is very ſpungy within and hard without. The *Indians* tie Ropes about theſe Trees for more eaſe in gathering the Fruit, and they ſometimes cut off tender Twigs and Branches towards the Evening, at the ends whereof they tye Gourds to receive the Liquor that diſtills from the Branches thereof, which they drink as *Europeans* do Wine, and very much cools and refreſhes their wearied Spirits. They ſometimes make Canoes of this Tree, and of the Hemp that grows on the outſide of the Fruit, Ropes for ſeveral uſes; from the Kernel likewiſe is produced a moſt precious Oil, wherewith the *Indians* anoint their feeble Limbs after long Journies, which not only refreſhes them, but likewiſe mitigates all manner of Pains and Aches. The Chriſtians ſometimes diſtil this Liquor, from whence is produced a ſtrong and pleaſant Spirit like our *Aquavitæ*, and is uſed as a great Cordial for many Diſeaſes in theſe parts.

The *Palmeto* Tree, the Leaves whereof grow in great Cluſters, only on the tops of the Trees are long ſtalks, exactly in the ſhape of a Fan. This Tree when it is at its utmoſt growth is about forty or fifty Feet in height, and about two Feet diameter; and it is obſervable that the

growth of this Vegetable is so very slow, that it is scarce perceivable in the age of Man, the Experiment having been often try'd in several places where it grows. The Wood of it is very porous and stringey, like some Canes, with the Leaves of this Tree the *Bermudians* make fine Hats for Women, Baskets, and many pretty Boxes for several uses, which are transported to the Northern parts of *America*, where this Tree does not grow, and to *Great-Britain* and *Ireland*. In *North Carolina*, this Tree is a Dwarfish kind, and the Planters make of the Fans of this Tree, Brooms to sweep their Houses with, which is all the use I have seen them make of it.

The *Hollow-Canes*, or *Reeds*, such as Angling Rods are made of, and Weavers use for their Reeds, grow in great plenty in many places in this Province, especially in wet low and Swampy Grounds, though there is none to be met with to the northward of *James's* River in *Virginia*. They continue green all the Year, and are extraordinary good Pasturage for Cattle and Horses in the Winter, and in the Month of *March*, when the Planters are obliged by the Laws of the Country to burn off the old Grass in their Fields and Woods, as the Heath is burnt off the Mountains in *Ireland*, by the Farmers in those Places. They are so very large towards the Heads of the Rivers that one joint will hold a Pint of any Liquor. When they grow old they bear an Ear like Oats, wherein is contain'd their Seeds, exactly like the Grains of Rye (which being boiled is good Meat, and often made use of by the *Indians*) soon after which they decay both Root and Branch, but the Seeds never fail to grow again. These hollow Canes are Lodges for vast Numbers of wild Beasts, which the *Indians* frequently set on fire to drive them out, by which means they kill vast Numbers of them, and you shall hear these Canes during the time that they are burning

ing at a great distance cracking and making a Noise like two Armies engaged, and firing at each other, which has deceived many, supposing it to be the *Indians* coming to War upon them.

The *Arrow-Wood*, so called from the *Indians* making use of it for Arrows for their Bows, and Rammers for their Guns. It grows very streight, of several sizes, and is tough and pliable, as the smallest Canes, of which it is a kind, and grows in great plenty on the Banks and River-sides. It is very strange to see how the *Indians* will harden the Points of their Arrows, and how artfully they can fix sharp Flint Stones to them, by which means they kill Deer, Turkies, and several other Beasts and Birds.

The *Prickley-Ash*, is so called from some resemblance it has to the Ash-Tree in its Leaves: It grows up like a Pole, whereof the *Europeans* and *Indians* make Poles to set their *Canoes* along the Shallow Waters, it is very light and full of *Pith* like the *Elder*, but is full of prickles and Thorns like the *Sweet Bryar*, but larger. It bears Berries of a purple colour in large Clusters like the *Alder* Tree. The Root of this Tree is *Cathartick* and *Emetick*, and is frequently made use of in *Cachexies*, with good success.

There is a kind of *Prim*, or *Privet*, that grows in this Province on dry barren and sandy Banks, by the Sound side, it differs little from ours, only this bears a smaller sort, and grows into a round Bush, and is beautiful to behold, when it's Flowers are full blown. The Leaves and Flowers are cooling and good in all Inflammations and soreness of the Eyes, Ulcers in the Mouth and Throat, looseness of the Gums, and to stop Fluxes.

The *Gallberry* Tree is a little Shrub, so called from its bearing a *Black-Gall* or Berry, with which the Women dye

dye their Cloth and Yarn. It is a beautiful Ever-green, growing plentifully in Swamps, low Grounds, and Ponds of freſh Water; and ſometimes on the Banks of the Rivers.

The *Savine*, is a low Shrub, and is plentifully to be met with in this Province, eſpecially in dry Ground and Banks on the River ſides. It beareth Leaves and Berries much like thoſe of the *Cedar*, it is a beautiful Ever-green, but is not as prickley, neither has it ſuch a ſtrong ſmell as the Barren *Savine* that grows in our Gardens. The Virtues of this Plant are ſo well known, that it would be needleſs to repeat them.

The *Miſſeltoe*, or *Miſſteltoe*, that grows upon the Oak, was formerly held in great veneration amongſt the *Pagans* in their Sacrifices; and it is much to be admired to ſee ſuch a Dwarfiſh Shrub grow without any viſible Root, on ſo tall, noble, and lofty Trees, as it does, and of a quite different Nature to them. Various are the Opinions amongſt Writers how this Plant is produced. Some aſſign it's growth to a certain Moiſture and Subſtance gathered together upon the Boughs and Joints of Trees through the Bark, whereof this vaporous moiſture produceth and bringeth forth the *Miſſeltoe*. Others aſſign it's produce from the Dung of *Wood-Queſts*, *Black-Birds*, and ſeveral other Birds that feed upon it's Seeds, which they diſcharge upon ſeveral Branches and Barks of Trees, and that the Seed will not grow without ſuffering a change in theſe Birds Bodies. But which of theſe Opinions may approach neareſt Truth, I will not take upon me to decide. But this I am certain of, that ſet the Seed after what manner you will, it will never grow. It grows in this Province in as great plenty as in any part of the World, eſpecially upon all the ſpecies of Oaks, and ſeveral other Trees. It ſeldom exceeds above two

Feet

Feet in height, and there are two ſorts of it. The firſt beareth Seed, and is full of green Branches all the Year. The ſecond is barren and fruitleſs, and ſheddeth its Leaves in the *Winter*, which it doth not recover 'till *Spring*: The Leaves of this Shrub is of a very bitteriſh Taſte, and the Berries are ſo tranſparent, that one my ſee thro' them, and within is a ſmall black Seed or Kernel. The Leaves and Berries are of a viſcous and clammy nature, whereof the beſt *Bird-lime* is made, far exceeding that which is made of the *Holly Bark*. The Deer and Sheep are very fond of it's Leaves, croping them wherever they can reach, which makes them very fat. It's Uſes in Phyſick are too well known, to be inſerted here.

The *Indian-Tea* Tree, which in their Language is called *Yaupan*, and *Caſſena*, grows in great plenty in this Province, eſpecially on the Sand Banks and Iſlands, bordering on the Sea, none to be met with near the Freſhes or heads of Rivers, that I ever could learn. This *Yaupan* is a Shrub, whereof there are three ſorts. The firſt is a Buſh of about twelve Feet high, and groweth in rich low Grounds. The ſecond is about four or five Feet high, and grows on the Sand Banks. The third ſeldom grows to be a Foot high, and is found both on the rich low Ground and on the Sand Banks. It grows the moſt like *Box* of any Vegetable I know, being very like it in Leaf, only dented about the edges like *Tea*, but the Leaf ſomewhat flatter. It bears a ſmall whitiſh Flower, which continues not long, after comes ſmall Berries about the bigneſs of a grain of Pepper, which are at firſt of a reddiſh colour, but in the Month of *December*, when they are ripe, they become brown. All theſe ſorts differ very little from each other in taſte, when the infuſion is made, neither is there any difference in the Leaves, that I could ever perceive, only thoſe that grow in the low

low and rich Ground, are of a deeper Green, and larger than thoſe growing on the Sand Banks, and this may be occaſioned by the richneſs that attends the low Grounds, thus ſituated. The Cattle, Sheep, and Deer are very fond of theſe Plants, and crop them wherever they can reach or find them. The Wood is very brittle, and its Bark of a light *Aſh*-colour. The Planters frequently make uſe of it with Phyſick, by reaſon of it's ſafe and ſpeedy paſſage through the Bowels and Ureters, which I have often experienced, and is of excellent uſe in the Stone and Gravel, by it's diuretick Quality. It is likewiſe uſed as *Tea*, and in making *Punch*. What requeſt it is of amongſt the *Indians*, and how they cure it, I ſhall inform the Reader when I come to treat of theſe People.

The *Piemento*, or *All-ſpice* Tree, grows commonly in wet and low Grounds, about eight or ten Feet high, though I have known ſome tranſplanted to high Land, where it thrives very well. It bears a Berry different in ſhape from thoſe in the *Eaſt Indies*, being longer and taper, yet not inferior to any of that ſort. The Leaves of this Tree are much like the *Hurts*, and ſo is the Bark.

The *Hurts*, *Huckle-Berries*, *Bill-Berries*, or *Blues*, of this Country, whereof there are four ſorts that we are well acquainted with. The firſt ſort is the ſame *Blue* or *Bill-Berry* which grows plentifully in the Mountains in *Ireland*, and many other places. The Juice of theſe Berries are of a very binding and cooling Nature, therefore good in Fluxes and Fevers, they cool and comfort the Stomach, and ſtop Vomiting.

The ſecond ſort grow on ſmall Buſhes in the *Savannas* and Woods, their Leaves are of a dark Green colour, much like the former, but larger, amongſt which come little hollow Flowers, which turn into Berries, and are longer than the former.

The

The third sort grow on one single Stem, about three or four Feet high, in low rich Lands, and on the Banks of the Rivers; their Fruit are as large and good as the former, and are very plenty in many places of this Province.

The fourth sort grow on Trees about ten or twelve Feet high, and about the thickness of the small of a Man's Leg; are very pleasant, and bear wonderfully: These grow plentifully in wet low Grounds, in many places in this Province; the Planters gather great Quantities of them in the Season, dry them in the Sun, and make use of them for Puddings, Minc'd Pyes, and many other Uses as we do *Currans* and *Raisons*: All these sorts ripen gradually one after another. The *Indians* get many Bushells of them, which they likewise dry on their Matts in the Sun, and preserve and keep all the Winter, whereof they make Bread mix'd with *Indian-Corn-Meal*, like our *Plum-Cakes*, and several other Eatables, which are pleasant enough.

* *Willow-Oak* is a kind of *Water-Oak*, so call'd from its Leaves, which very much resemble those of the *Willow*. It grows in low Grounds and ponds of Water, and is used for Fire, Fences, *&c.*

April-Currans, so call'd, from their being ripe in that Month, grow on the Banks of the Rivers, or where Clay has been thrown up; the Fruit when ripe, is red, and very soon gone. They are tollerable good Fruit whilst they last, and the Tree (for it is not a Bush they grow upon) is a pleasant Vegetable.

Bermudas-Currans, so call'd, from their growing plentifully in that Island, are very common in the Woods

* This Tree by Omission, hath not been inserted in its proper Place, *viz.* amongst the *Oaks*, whereof it is a Species.

of *Carolina* on a Bush, much like the *European Currans*, but not so agreeable to the Taste, being but an indifferent Fruit, though frequently eaten by the Planters.

Winter-Curran, so call'd, by reason it bears Fruit which are only ripe in *October*; it grows on a Bush about seven or eight Feet high, and the Fruit is like our *Billberry*; the Planters make the same uses of it as we do of *Raisons* and *Currans*, for Puddings, Minc'd-Pyes, *&c.* This Bush is very beautiful to behold, growing round, and is a plentiful Bearer. All these sorts of *Currans* are of a very cooling and binding Nature, therefore good in Fevers and Fluxes.

The *Brier-Rose*, or *Hip-Tree*, is to be met with in some places, especially on dry Lands, but is generally of a Dwarfish kind, but its Fruit is as good as ours. The Pulp is cooling and agreeable to the Stomach, good in Fevers or violent Heats, and is of excellent use in the Fluxes of this Country.

The *Raisberries* are of a purple Colour when ripe, very agreeable in Taste, but are not as rich Fruit as the *European*. They grow on a Stalk more like the *Bramble* than the *Rasberry-Bush*, and are in many parts of this Province, and its a difficult matter to root them out, when once planted; they have much the same Virtues with the *European Rasberry*, but are more binding.

The *European Rasberry* thrives and bears in *Carolina* to admiration, and is as grateful and pleasant Fruit in it's kind, as any in the World; and are to be met with growing in most of their Gardens. This Fruit has much the same Virtues with the *Black-Berry*, but is more Cordial and less Binding.

The *Black-Berry* grows after the same manner as those with us, but their Brambles or Stalks are not so thick or long, and their Fruit is not to be compared with ours, being

being ill tasted and bitter, but has much the same Virtues, *viz.* cooling and astringent; the Juice, with Honey, Allum, and red Wine, fastens loose Teeth.

The *Dew-Berrys* grow on small Brambles or Stalks about two or three Feet long exactly like the *Black-berry*. This Fruit is sweet and good to eat, and like our *Black-berry* in shape, but is as red as a *Ras-berry* when ripe, and has much the same Virtues with the former.

I will in this place give an account of the *Straw-berry* though it be not a Shrub. The *Straw-berrys* in this Province are not only large, sweet, and good, but in as great plenty as in any part of the World, growing almost every where, and are the first Fruit the Hogs feed upon in the Spring. The Planters in their Canoes go to the Islands (which are to be met with in several parts of the Rivers) and pull what quantities they please, bringing generally home their Canoes full of this pleasant Fruit, from those parts where the Hogs can't come to feed. They quench thirst, help inflammations of the Stomach, comfort the Heart, and revive the Spirits, help diseases of the Spleen, and Reins, provoke Urine, are good against the Stone and Gravel, and are usefull in Fevers, by cooling and comforting the inward parts.

The *Honey-Suckles* or *Wood-bind* (whereof there are four Sorts I have already given an account of) are very plenty in this Province, and are much the same as those with us, but do not grow so large. The Leaves and Flowers are pectoral and Diuretick, and cure Asthmas and Coughs, outwardly they are Cosmetick, and take away Scabs and Pimples in the Face, the juice is vulnerary, eases wounds in the Head, strengthens the Nerves, and makes an excellent gargle for sore and dry mouths.

The *Yellow-Jessamine* is to be met with here in several parts of the Woods, and not only affords in the Summer-

time, when it is in it's ſplendor a moſt delightful proſpect, but likewiſe a pleaſant ſhade and a grateful and fragrant ſmell to thoſe that paſs through the Woods. The Flowers are an excellent perfume, an Oil made of them with Oil of Olive is of excellent uſe in Convulſions, Cramps, and Stitches in the ſide. The Flowers are of the nature of *Camomile*, and are good in all hard and cold ſwellings, in Clyſters, help the Collick and pains of the Womb, and cure the Schirrus thereof, help delivery, Coughs, ſhortneſs of breath, Pleuriſies, pain of the Stomach and Bowels.

I ſhall in the next Place give an account of the *Vines* that this Country produces; and firſt the *European Vines*, which thrive well, and their produce are extraordinary great, the Lands of *Carolina* being as proper for *Vines* as any in the World, yet there are but few *Vineyards* planted in this Colony at preſent, for I have ſeen but one ſmall one at *Bath*-Town, and another at *Neus*, of the white Grape, the ſame with the *Madera*, I have drank of the Wine it produced, which was exceeding good. Though of late they have got Slips of ſeveral Sorts of curious *Vines*, which no doubt will ſoon come to perfection, there being nothing wanting but induſtry to make this as fine a Wine and Oil Country, as any in *Europe*, as may appear from the few Tryals that have been already made. Ripe Grapes eaten largly, often cauſe *Diarrhea's* yet the Stones ſtop vomiting and Fluxes, being dried and given in Powder. When they are drie in the Sun, they are good againſt *Coughs*, *Aſthmas*, *Colds*, *Obſtructions*, *Ulcers* in the *Mouth*, *Lungs*, *Kidneys*, and many other parts; outwardly, they ripen *Tumors*, help *Gouts*, *Gangrenes* and *Mortifications*.

The *Vines* that are Spontaneous and produce Grapes in *Carolina*. are of ſix Kinds, and are as follows, The *Fox-grape*, whereof there are four ſorts, two of which are

are call'd the *Summer-Fox-grape*, becauſe they are ripe in *July*.

The other two are call'd the *Winter Fox-grape*, becauſe they are not ripe till *September* or *October*.

The *Summer Fox-grapes* do not grow in cluſters or great bunches as the *European* do, there being only five or ſix upon one ſtalk, and are as big as a large *Damſon*. The Black ſort are very common and plentiful all over this Province, but the White are very ſcarce and ſeldom to be met with. Theſe Vines always grow in Swamps and wet low Lands, running ſometimes very high according to the growth of the Timber which they meet and twine about for their ſupport. They have the largeſt Leaves of any *Vine* I ever ſaw, therefore wou'd make delightful and Shady Arbours to ſit under in the extremity of the hot Weather. This Fruit always ripens in the Shade, and has a pretty Vinous taſte, but is not ſo jucy as the *European* Grape, having a much thicker Skin, and is of a more glutinous Nature, yet pleaſant to eat.

Winter-Fox Grapes are much of the ſame bigneſs with the former, and are very plenty in moſt parts, refuſing neither Swampy, Dry, Hilly, or Sandy Grounds to grow in, and are greater producers than the former, and when thorow ripe, have a Vinous Flavour and eat well, but are as Glutinous, have as thick Skins, and the Leaves as large as the other ſort.

The White are very clear and tranſparent, and have indifferent ſmall Stones. They make very pleaſant Shades in all parts of the Woods where they grow; and if they are tranſplanted, thrive wonderfully. I have ſeen Stems of theſe kind of Vines, that were thicker than a Man's Thigh.

The ſmall *Black Grapes* grow plentifully in *Carolina*, and have large Cluſters or Bunches growing together like

like the *European*. These Grapes, though very small, are well reliſh'd, and plentiful Bearers, they have a thick Skin and large Stone, which makes them yield little Juice, which is of a Crimſon Colour, and hath a Vinous Flavour. The *Black Grapes* and the following, are not ripe until *Autumn*.

There is another *Black Grape*, exactly reſembling the other ſmall *Black Grape*, only the Juice is of a lighter Colour, but as well reliſhed as the former.

The ſmall *White Grape* is to be met with in this Province, but is very ſcarce, growing in few parts of the Woods, yet its Bunches or Cluſters are as well knit together, and as well reliſh'd, as any of the former; all theſe Kinds of Grapes might be indifferently uſed in Phyſick, as the *European's* are.

The Planters pull and eat ſome of theſe Grapes when they are ripe, and frequently juice them, whereof they make Vinegar, which is all the uſe I have ſeen made of them, as alſo of all the other Spontaneous ſorts growing in *Carolina*. What remain in the Woods are devoured by ſeveral Beaſts (that climb high Trees) and the Birds.

I ſhall in the next place give an Account of ſeveral other ſorts of *Vines* (growing in this Province) that produce no Grapes, ſome whereof are moſt beautiful Ever-Greens, others affording moſt pleaſant Shades and fragrant Flowers, and are as follows.

Firſt, the *Scarlet Trumpet Vine*, ſo called, from the glorious red Flowers like a Bell or Trumpet, which it bears, and makes a fine Shade in the Woods where it grows, inferior to none I ever ſaw. It loſes its Leaves (which are large) in the Winter, and remains naked until the Spring. It bears a large Cod that holds its Seed, but I never ſaw any uſe made of its Bark, Leaves, Flowers, or Seeds, in Phyſick or otherwiſe.

There

There is another ſort of Vine which I know no Name for, but it is a beautiful Ever-Green, with Leaves like the *Jeſſamine*, but larger and of a harder Nature, this grows to be a large Vine, and twines itſelf round the Trees; it grows near, and makes a fine Shade. It bears a *Black Berry* which is not ripe till Winter. It is a very Ornamental Plant, and worth tranſplanting; for I never ſaw any thing make a more pleaſant and delightful Shade to ſit under in the extreamity of the Heat in the *Summer*, and likewiſe from the Rain and ſeverity of Weather in the *Winter*. But what Virtues it may be endued with, is uncertain.

The *May-Cock*, is a Vine ſo called, from an Apple which it bears, and is ripe in that Month, it has a beautiful Flower, and the Fruit is of an agreeable ſweetneſs, mixt with an acid Taſte. It is a *Summer-Vine*, and is naked all the *Winter* 'till *Spring*, at which time it buds, and in the *Summer* Seaſon is very Ornamental. The Fruit of this Vine is cooling and quenches Thirſt.

The *Oak-Vine* is no Tree, but ſo called, from a Burr it bears like the Oak, and generally runs up thoſe Trees, it's Stalk or Stem is ſo very porous, that you may ſuck Liquors through it at a length of two or three Feet; I know no other uſe it is for, never having ſeen it made uſe of amongſt either *Chriſtians* or *Indians*, in any manner of Diſorder.

The *Poyſonous Vine*, ſo called, by reaſon it colours the Hands of thoſe that handle it, of a yellowiſh Colour, but what Uſes or Virtues it hath, is uncertain, no Experiment as yet having been made of it. The Juice of it ſtains Linnen, never to be waſh'd out by any Art. It dyes a blackiſh blue Colour, this is done by breaking a bit of the Vine, and preſſing with it's End what Mark you think proper. It runs up any Tree it meets with

with, and claſps round it. The Leaves of this Vine are ſhaped like *Hemlock*, and fall off in the *Winter*.

The *Small Bamboo* is another kind of Vine, grows in wet low Grounds, and is ſeldom thicker than a Man's Finger; the Stem is like the *Sweet-brier*, full of Prickles and Joints, but very tough. Theſe Vines bear ſmall *Black-berries*, their Root is like a round Ball, which the *Indians* boil (as we do any Garden Root) and eat, which they ſay is good and nouriſhing. When theſe Roots have been out of the Ground for ſome time, they become exceeding hard, and make Heads for Canes, on which ſeveral Figures may be cut. I know of no other uſes made of them at preſent.

Prickley Bind-weed, or *Sarſaparilla*, is a kind of *Prickley Vine*, not unlike the former, it groweth plentifully in ſeveral Places, but eſpecially on dry Lands, or the Banks of Rivers. It has many Branches ſet full of ſharp prickles with certain claſping Tendrels (like ſeveral of the other Vines) with which it taketh hold upon Shrubs, or whatever is next to it. One ſingle Leaf groweth at each Joint, like that of *Ivy*, frequently mark'd with little white Spots, and guarded or bordered about the Edges with crooked ſharp Prickles. The Flowers are of a whitiſh colour, and fragrant ſmell. The Berries are like thoſe of the wild Vine, green at firſt, and red when they are ripe, and of a biting Taſte, wherein is contain'd a black Seed, like Hemp, the Roots are long, and grow deep in the Ground. It is good againſt *Catharrs*, all manner of *Defluctions*, *Gout*, and *Pox*, being of a *Sudorifick* Nature.

The *Indian Figg-Tree*, commonly ca..'d the *Prickley Pear*. This ſtrange and admirable Plant, call'd *Ficus Indica*, grows in great plenty, eſpecially on the Sand-banks and dry Land, and ſeems to be nothing but a multiplicity of Leaves; that is, a Tree made of Leaves, without

without Body or Boughs, for the Leaves ſet in the Ground, do in a ſhort Time take Root and produce other Leaves, that grow one above another, 'till ſuch time as they are pretty tall like a Tree, their Leaves ſpreading out like Boughs, ſometimes more or leſs according to the difference of the Soil it grows in, adding one Leaf above another, whereby it ſpreads over a great piece of Ground. Their Leaves are long, broad, and thicker than a Man's Hand, of a deep green colour, ſet full of long ſharp and ſlender Prickles. On the tops of theſe Leaves come forth long Flowers, not unlike thoſe of the *Pomgranate*-Tree, and of a yellow colour, after which is produced the Fruit, like the common *Fig*, or ſmall *Pear*, in ſhape. The outſide of this Fruit is of a greeniſh Colour, but within it is full of red Pulp or Juice, ſtaining the Hands of thoſe that touch it with a ſanguine or bloody colour. The tops of theſe *Figs* are invironed with certain ſcaly Leaves like a Crown, wherein are contain'd ſmall Grains that are the Seeds, which being ſown, bring forth Plants round bodied like the Trunk of other Trees, with Leaves placed thereon like the former, which being planted in the Ground, bring forth Trees of Leaves alſo. The Fruit of this Plant is luſcious and ſweet, and frequently eaten, but muſt be well cleanſed from the Prickles, otherwiſe wherever they enter, it's a hard matter to get them out, and frequently leave Knobs in the Skin. Upon this Plant grow certain Excreſcences, which in continuance of time become Inſects, which are the *Cochenele*, ſo much valued, for dying the beſt and richeſt Scarlet Colours. I have already made mention of it's changing the colour of the Urine like Blood, whereby many at firſt ſight doubted of their Recovery, imagining what they voided to be pure Blood, being altogether Strangers

to it's Effects upon the Urine; whereas it only gives this high Tincture, without any Pain, as I have frequently experienced. We have no certain Account, from the Antients, of the temperature or virtues of this Plant; yet I am very certain, that it is indowed with many excellent Qualities, and that the Juice of it's Leaves are good against Ulcers of long continuance, Burnings, and Inflammations in several parts of the Body.

Thus having given you the most exact Account that I could learn of the Trees, Shrubs, and Vines, that this Country naturally produces (But undoubtedly there are many other Species that are not yet known, which time and enquiery must discover) I shall therefore proceed to give an Account of the *European* Fruit-trees that are to be met with here, most of which thrive well. And first of the *Apples*, and their different Species.

The *Golden-Russet* is an excellent Fruit, and thrives well; this Apple, and the following sorts, are soon ripe, and have great produce.

The *Red-Strak'd* grow well, whereof they make *Cyder* in many places: But for the most part, these and the other Fruits are only Food for the Hogs, there being such plenty of most kinds, that they are little made use of or regarded.

The *Summer* and *Winter Pearmains* are apt to speck and taint on the Trees, especially the South-side of the Fruit, and the Trees are frequently damaged by small Worms, that breed in several parts of the Bark, which cut Circles about the Branches, and sometimes round the Body of the Trees, and destroy the Bark that it soon dies (especially above those Circles) for want of a sufficient quantity of Juice or Nourishment from the Roots, to produce Leaves and Fruit, this frequently happens in the heat of the Weather, when the Trees are loden with Fruit.

The

The *Winter-Queening* thrives well, and produces excellent and durable Fruit, of which the Planters make good Cyder, and is seldom prejudiced by the Worms.

The *Harvy-Apple*, likewise thrives well, whereof they make Cyder.

The *Leather-coats*, both Apple, and Tree stand well, have as great produce, and thrive as well as any in this Province

The *Jenneting* is an early Fruit, thrives well, but is soon gone, in this warm Climate.

The *Coddling* looks as fine and fair to the Eye as any Fruit in the World, yet the Tree suffres after the same manner as the *Pearmains* do, or rather worse, for they commonly dye before they come to their full Growth. The Planters make the first of their Coddling Cyder against the Reaping of the Wheat, which is in the beginning of *June*, as I have already made mention.

The *Long-Stalk*, is the same here as in *Europe*, it thrives well, and makes good Cyder.

The *Lady-Finger*, or *Long-Apple*, is the same as in *Europe*, and full as good. There are several other sorts of Apples in this Country called by different Names, according to Peoples fancies, and most of them good for Cyder. All these Fruits are very cooling, therefore good in Inflammations and Fevers, they gently loosen the Belly, and are of excellent use in all Burnings, Scaldings, *&c.* and take away the Heat of St. *Anthony's* Fire.

I never met with the *Wilding* or *Crab Tree* growing in this Province, or any other part of *America* that I have been in.

There are several sorts of *Pears* in this Country, all which thrive well, and are as good as any in *Europe*, such are the *Katherine*, *Sugar*, *Warden*, *Burgomot*, *Jenneting*, *Quince* Pears, and many others, which are as well

reliſhed as any I have met with, but all theſe Fruits are of ſhort continuance, being ſoon ripe and almoſt as ſoon gone.

The *Quince*-Tree thrives well, and is in plenty, and it's Fruit is as well reliſhed as in any part of the World. The Fruit eaten raw, is pleaſant, of which the Planters make a Wine or Liquor which they call *Quince-drink*, and is the beſt Drink that Country affords at preſent, though they have plenty of Cyder, and ſome Perry made there. They likewiſe draw a Spirit from this Fruit, Apples, and Peaches, which is as pleaſant and grateful as any Brandy I have ever taſted. This *Quince-drink*, moſt commonly purges thoſe that make uſe of it, and cleanſes the Body, which is a contrary Effect to what it hath in *Europe*, being of an aſtringent Nature there; which contrary Effect muſt certainly be owing to the difference of the Climates. The leaſt ſlip of this Tree ſtuck in the Ground, comes to perfection, and will bear in three Years.

The *Peach*, whereof there are ſeveral ſorts (theſe Trees do not differ in Shape, but in their Fruit only) *viz.* the *Queen's*, the *Nutmeg*, the *Newington*, and the grand *Carnation Peach*; the *Black*, the *White*, the *Roman*, and the *Indian Peach*, and many other ſorts, called by different Names, according to Peoples fancies are all ſtanding Trees like the Apple or Pear, with us; for the Reader is to underſtand, that there is no ſuch thing as Wall-Fruit in this Province, there being Heat enough, therefore do not require it. Theſe Fruits thrive to admiration, coming to Perfection without any Pains or trouble, for the Ground in theſe parts is ſo natural for theſe ſorts of Fruit, that a *Peach-ſtone* being Planted, or falling on the Ground, will grow and bring forth a *Peach-tree* that will bear in three Years, or ſooner. And it is to be obſerved,

that

that in their *Peach Orchards*, and many other places where the Stones fall, they grow so thick, that they become a perfect Wilderness of Trees, that the Planters are obliged to pull them out of the Ground, as we do Weeds out of our Gardens. They generally bear in such plenty, that the weight of the Fruit frequently break off great Limbs of the Trees. The Planters sometimes take out the Stones and dry the Fruit in the Sun, which they preserve for the Winter; they are grateful to the Stomach, and cause a good Appetite: They also make a Liquor of them which is very cooling, and good in Fevers. The Flowers loosen the Belly, kill Worms in Children, and open Obstructions.

The *Indian-Peach* Tree, is a kind of Peach common amongst the *Indians*, which they claim as their own, and affirm that they had it growing amongst them before any *Europeans* came to *America*. This Tree grows as large as any Apple Tree, the Flowers are of a reddish Colour, the Fruit is generally larger than the common yellow *Peach*, and more downy, it is an extraordinary good Fruit, very soft and full of Juice, will freely part from the Stone, which is much thicker than any of the former. These Peaches are common amongst the *Indians*, and those that live remote from the Christians, have no other sort: They are a hardy Fruit, and seldom damaged by the North-East Winds, as the other are. Of this sort there is made *Vinegar*, therefore some call them *Vinegar Peaches*; though this may seem to be a Spontaneous Fruit of *America*, yet in those parts already inhabited by the *Europeans*, I never cou'd learn that any of these Peach-Trees were ever found growing wild in the Woods. The *Indians* have plenty of this sort of Peach, but scarce any other is to be found amongst them. They have much the same Virtues with the former.

The

The *Nectarines*, whereof we have two ſorts, which are very fair and large, *viz.* the Red, which clings to the Stones, and the Yellow which parts from them. I ſee no foreign Fruit like theſe for thriving in all ſorts of Lands, and bearing to admiration. The Planters raiſe them from the Stone, which never fails to produce the ſame ſort the Stone came from; for I never obſerved much Pains taken in either Inoculating or Pruning their Fruit Trees, as is cuſtomary in *Europe*, notwithſtanding they bear in as great plenty. This Fruit has much the ſame Virtues with the former.

The *Apricock*-Tree grows to be very large, exceeding moſt Apple Trees. They are great Bearers, if the Seaſon proves favourable, but it often happens in an early Spring, and when the Trees are full blown, that the North-Eaſt Winds which happen in the latter end of *February* or beginning of *March*, blaſt and deſtroy moſt part of it's Fruit. The Flowers are of a whitiſh Colour, and the Fruit round like a *Peach*, Yellow within and without, wherein is contain'd brown ſmooth Stones, leſs than thoſe of the *Peach*, having a ſweet Kernel. Theſe Trees are generally raiſed from the Stone, and never fail to produce as good Fruit as the Stone came from. The Fruit is cooling and pleaſing to the Stomach, but apt to ſurfeit; an Oil made of the Kernel is much of the ſame Nature with the Oil of *ſweet Almonds*.

The *Medlar* Tree, I never obſerved growing in *North Carolina*, but do not doubt it would thrive as well as any other Tree from *Europe*.

The *European Wall-nuts* are very large Trees, and thrive as well here as in any part of the World. There are two of theſe Trees growing at *Bath-Town*, which were produced from the Nut, and are exceeding great bearers, and the moſt beautiful and fragrant, when in their prime,

of

of any Trees of that Sort, I ever saw. These Trees, arrive sooner to Perfection here than in any part of *France* or *Spain*, are excellent good Fruit (when ripe) and used in several Disorders of the Body, such as malignant Fevers, *&c.*

The *Cherry* Tree. The common red and black *Cherry* bear exceedingly well from the Stone, but would do much better had they been grafted in the *Indian Plum* Tree Stocks, because these admit of no Succors or Scions to grow round the Tree, which the *Cherry* Tree is subject to, and proves very prejudicial to the Trees and Fruit. *Cherry* Trees are not only liable to this, but several *Apple* Trees and other Fruit-Trees, which might be soon remedied by a skilful Gardener, or careful Planter, whose Genius tends that way. The *Cherries* are ripe here a Month sooner than those growing in *Virginia*. The Fruit of the *Black Cherry* is good in *Epilepsies*, *Convulsions*, *Apoplexies*, *Palsies*, and many other Disorders; the red is cooling, quenches Thirst, and good in Fevers, *&c.*

The large round *Black-Plums*, thrive well, and become large Trees, if planted in stiff Grounds; but they will not answer if planted in light sandy Ground, where they are subject to be torne up by the Storms and Squals of Wind, that are frequent in this Country. The same misfortune attends both Forest and Fruit Trees, growing in these kinds of Grounds. There are several other kinds of these Trees that bear Fruit of various Colour, Figure, Magnitude, and Taste, but have much the same Virtues with the *Cherries*, being of a cooling Nature.

The *Damson* Tree thrives well, and the Planter's Wives and Daughters make good Dishes of it's Fruit. The Leaves of these Trees are used with *Rhenish-Wine* for *Defluctions* and Swellings in the Jaws and Throat.

The

The *Figg*-Tree, of which there are two ſorts, *viz.* the greater and the leſſer. The large *Figg* Tree hath many Branches full of Pith within, like *Elder*, and large Leaves of a dark green Colour, divided into ſeveral Diviſions. The Fruit comes out of the Branches without any appearance of Flowers, that I could perceive, which is in ſhape like *Pears*. This Tree, notwithſtanding it grows to be very large, yet beareth the leſſer Fruit, which it produceth in abundance, eſpecially if planted in light Lands, for it thrives no where better than on the Sand Banks, and near the Sea ſhoar. This Fruit being broken before it is ripe, yieldeth a white glutinous Liquor, but when the Figs are ripe, the Juice of it is like *Honey*, and as ſweet.

The *leſſer* or *ſmaller Fig* Tree, is like the former in it's Leaves and Fruit, but ſeldom exceeds ſeven or eight Feet in height, growing more like a Buſh than a Tree. The Fruit is ripe in *July*, very ſweet and luſcious, and conſiderably larger than the former. If the Froſt proves ſevere in *Winter*, the Tops of this Shrub decay and dye. As ſoon as the *Spring* approaches, it ſprouts and bears vaſt quantities of Fruit. I could never obſerve any Flowers it has, for it comes out of the Branches, like the former. The Leaves of theſe Trees are ſharp, opening, and vulnerary; and being applied with the Roots of *Marſh-mallows*, waſte away the *King's-Evil*, and all hard Tumors; the Fruit is likewiſe uſed with good ſucceſs in the ſame Diſorders, the Juice or Milk is Coſmetick, and with *Barley-meal* and *Lard*, help the *Gout* and *Piles*, &c.

The *Filberd*-Tree being planted here, in a few Years degenerates into a ſmall Dwarfiſh *Nut*, no bigger than the *Hazle*, yet it's Fruit is as good as any in *Europe*, but few are either ſo induſtrious or curious to plant theſe Trees, there being ſuch quantities of ſpontaneous Fruit.

The

The *Orange-Tree* groweth to be as large as a ſmall *Pear* Tree, having many thorny Bougns or Branches; the Leaves are partly like thoſe of the *Bay-tree*, theſe, and their Flowers (which are of a beautiful colour) yield a moſt fragrant Smell. The Chriſtian Inhabitants have planted many of theſe Trees of late, which thrive tollerably well, eſpecially near the Sea-Coaſt and light Ground, where they chiefly delight to grow. The Flowers are of great Uſe in Perfumes; a Water made of them is *Pectoral*, and helps *Fevers*, the outward Rind is very hot, dry, and of thin parts; it expells Wind, and comforts a cold Stomach.

The *Bead*-Tree, ſo called from it's Fruit reſembling Glaſs-Beads at a diſtance. It bears Flowers (much like thoſe of the *Olive*) which ſmell ſweet. It grows in a round Bunch about four or five Feet high, and is to be met with in many of their Gardens; their Fruit are as large as *Peas*, and hard when ripe, but eaſily drill'd, whereof are made *Bracelets*, and ſeveral other Toys. It is ornamental in Gardens, and the Flowers are good for *Obſtructions* in the Head. The Decoction of the Bark with Fumitory and *Myrobalans*, help Agues. The Leaves and Wood are accounted deadly to Beaſts, and the Fruit is very dangerous, if not poyſonous.

The *Gooſeberry*-Tree, or Buſh, does not thrive here, though I have frequently met with it in their Gardens, but of a dwarfiſh Kind to what we have in *Ireland*, and other parts of *Europe*, but I am perſwaded that if it had been planted in their *Swamps* or moiſt low Grounds, it would thrive and bear well.

The *Red* and *White Currans* thrive much better here than the former, and bear tollerably well when planted near a ſhade, or in moiſt low Grounds. The Fruit is cooling and grateful to the Stomach.

The *Barberry*-Tree or Buſh, whereof we have two ſorts which thrive well, *viz.* one with, and the other without Stones, wherein conſiſts the difference; the colour and the taſte of the Fruit being the ſame. The Flowers are of a yellow colour, and grow in cluſters upon long Stems, after which are produced long ſlender red *Berries*, when they are ripe. The Leaves ſpring forth in *March*, and the Flowers in *Auguſt*. The Bark and Leaves open *Obſtructions*, and are of ſingular Uſe in the *Jaundice*. The Fruit is very cooling in *Fevers*, grateful to the Stomach, and cauſeth a good Appetite.

The *Roſe*-Tree, and it's Kinds. There are none to be met with growing Spontaneous in this Province. Theſe Trees have been brought from *Europe*, and other Parts, and are to be met with in moſt Planters Gardens, eſpecially the common *white* and *red Roſe*, but few of the other ſorts.

The *Roſemary* is not a Spontaneous Shrub in *Carolina*, as in *France*, *Spain*, and many other parts of *Europe*, in the ſame Latitude; but is to be met with in moſt of their Gardens, and thrives well.

There are many other Fruits in this Country, that I am a Stranger to, which are beneficial and advantagious to the Planters, not only for their own Uſe, but likewiſe in feeding their Swine, and makeing them exceeding fat, and as well taſted as any in the World.

Honey Tree and Fruit.
Sassafras Tree.
Indian Nut Tree.
Palmeto Tree.
Ipeca cuana
Elke
Buffelo
Bear
Tige
Panther
Pole Cat
Wild Cat
Racoon
The possum
Flying Squirrel

OF THE

BEASTS.

THE *Buffelo*, or *wild Beef*, is one of the largeſt wild Beaſts that is yet known in theſe parts of *America*; it hath a Bunch upon it's Back, and thick ſhort Horns, bending forward. *Pliny* reporteth in the eleventh Book of his *Natural Hiſtory*, that the Horns of one *Buffelo's* Head were ſo large that they contain'd or held two Meaſures, call'd *Urnæ*, which is about eight Gallons. This Monſter of the Woods ſeldom appears amongſt the *European* Inhabitants, it's chiefeſt haunts being in the *Savannas* near the Mountains, or Heads of the great Rivers. Their Fleſh is very courſe, and nothing to be compared with our Beef, but their Calves are ſaid to be excellent good Meat, as in all probability they are: And it is conjectur'd, that theſe *Buffelo's* being mix'd, and breeding with our tame Cattle, would much improve the Species for largeneſs and Milk;

for these Monsters (as I have been inform'd) weigh from 1600 to 2400 pounds Weight. They are a very fierce Creature, and much larger than an Ox. The *Indians* cut their Skins into Quarters, for the ease of Transportation or Carriage, and frequently make Beds of them to lie on; they likewise spin their Hair into Garters, Girdles, Sashes, and the like, being long and curled, and frequently of a black or red *Chesnut* colour. Of these Skins and the *Wild Bull's*, the best *Buff* is made. Their Horns wou'd serve for several uses, such as drinking Cups, Powder-horns, Lanterns, and many other Necessaries, being transparent when wrought; Rings made of them are said to help the Cramp, and the Liver the Spleen; the other Parts have much the same Virtues with the Ox. There were two of the Calves of this Creature taken alive in the Year 1730, by some of the Planters living near *Neus* River, but whether they transported them to *Europe*, or what other uses they made of them, I know not, having occasion to leave that Country soon after.

The *Elk* is a monstrous, large, strong and swift Beast, in shape exactly like a *Deer*, but bigger than a Horse, and is reported to be fearful, and subject to the *Epilepsy* or *Falling sickness*. They have two large Horns, which exceed in weight all Creatures that are yet known in the New World. Their Neck is short and thick, but the Ears and Back very long: Their Colour is like a *Harts*, and sometimes all White. Their Flesh is not near so sweet as the *Fallow-Deer*, being much courser and stronger. These Creatures may be made Domestick, and it is said, that they are so swift, that they will run more Miles in one Day, than a Horse can in two. Some take the *Elk* for the *Red-Deer* of *America*, but I am credibly informed, that they are of two different kinds, and that they will never breed together. Their Horns generally

weigh

weigh twelve or fourteen Pounds. These Beasts are plentifully to be met with in the *Savannas* near the Mountains, and Heads of Rivers: It is reported that some of them are seventeen Hands high. Several parts of this Animal are used with good Success in Physick, and especially the Hoofs of the Male's hinder Feet, which have a pleasant scent when they are burnt.

The *Stags* are swift in Motion, and are said to be a long-liv'd Creature, they are plentifully to be met with in or near the Mountains, but are not so large as those in *Europe*, yet much larger than any *Fallow-Deer*. They are fat all Seasons of the Year, and it is said, that some *Deer* on the Mountains afford the *Occidental Bezoar*, and not produced from the *Goat*, as some have reported. The Flesh nourishes almost like Beef, but breeds much more melancholy Juice. The *Tallow* makes incomparable fine *Candles*, and their Horns and Skins are a good Commodity. There are many valuable Virtues ascribed to the several parts of this *Deer*, and all the other sorts, and not undeservedly, which are so well known, that it would be needless to insert them here.

The *Fallow-Deer* are taller and longer Legg'd in *Carolina*, than those that are to be met with in *Europe*, but neither run so fast, nor are so well Haunched. Their Shingles are likewise much longer, and their Horns stand forward as the other incline backwards. Towards the Salts, they are not commonly so fat and good as those on the Hills, and near the Heads of the Rivers: They are in great plenty all over this Province. Their Nostrils and Throats are frequently found full of *Bots* or *Maggots* in the *Spring*, which make them very poor at that time; but as the *Summer* approaches these *Bots* become the most beautiful *Butter-flies* immaginable, being large, having black, white, red, and yellow stripes in their Wings.

The

The *Fawns* are beautifully mottled with rows or stripes of white and brown, which only continue 'till they are one Year old. Deer-skins are one of the best Commodities that *North Carolina* affords, which the Planters export in great Quantities for *England* and other parts.

The *Lyon* and *Jack-all* are supposed to be in *Carolina*, from an Account the *Indians* give us, who report that near a Lake of Water, towards the Head of *Neus* River, there is a Creature that haunts those parts, and frightens them from Hunting. They say that it is partly in colour like a *Panther*, and that the only way they have to avoid it is by climbing up Trees, which it cannot do. They likewise say, that there is a swift Creature which remains with, and attends it, much like the *English* Man's Dog: This Account I had from several of the *Indians*; but whether or no there be any such Beasts in these parts, I cannot affirm the certainty thereof, for I never saw either them or their Skins.

The *Bears* are very common in this Province, though not quite so large as in more Northerly Climates, such as *Greenland* and *Russia*. Their Flesh is good and nourishing, not interior to the best *Pork* in taste, and is betwixt *Beef* and *Pork*: The young Cubs are a most delicious Dish, as most of the Planters testifies, who prefer their Flesh before *Beef*, *Pork*, *Veal* or *Mutton*, and it looks as well as it eats, their Fat being as white as Snow, and the sweetest of any Creature in the World; for, if any Person drinks a Quart of it melted, it never rises in the Stomach, as other Oils and Fats are subject to do, and is prefer'd above all things for frying Fish, *&c.* Those that are Strangers to it may judge otherwise, as it happened to me not long after my arrival in *America*, who could not be prevail'd upon to eat *Bear's* Flesh; but travelling in the Country with some other Company, we were

were invited to Dine at a Planter's Houſe, who entertained us with a large Loyn of a roaſted *Bear*. I imagin'd it to be a Loyn of *Pork*, and eat as heartily of it, which ſeem'd to me to be the moſt delicious Meat of that kind I ever taſted; that I could not forbear all that Day to extol the goodneſs of it, ſtill ſuppoſing it to be *Pork*, tho' the Company knew the contrary, but did not undeceive me. The next Day we were invited to another Planter's Houſe, who told us he had the fineſt piece of *Bear* that could be, juſt roaſted and ready for the Table. The Company very readily accepted of his Invitation, but as for my part, I could not be prevail'd upon for ſome time to eat; the Company ſaid, they were much ſurpriz'd becauſe I prais'd it ſo much the Day before. For I never knew 'till then but that it had been *Pork*. I only mention this to ſhew what power Prejudice has over us.

But to return. The *Bacon* made thereof is extraordinary good, but muſt be well ſaved, otherwiſe it will ruſt. I have ſeen very good *Hams* (not inferior to the beſt *Weſtphalia*) made of theſe *Bear*'s-fleſh. Theſe Beaſts feed upon all manner of wild Fruits, and are great devourers of ſeveral ſort of Fiſh, eſpecially *Herrings*, which they catch at the Brooks ſide in the Months of *March* and *April*. The Fleſh of thoſe *Bears* that feed upon them is not good that Seaſon, and eats filthily; neither are they good when they feed upon *Gum-Berries*. They are great devourers of *Swine*, that they take in the Woods, eſpecially when they are hungry and can get no other Food, which is the only Fleſh-meat they are fond of. They ſometimes get into the *Indian Corn-fields*, or *Maze*, where they generally ſpoil ten times more than they eat. They are ſo fond of the *Potatoes*, of this Country, that they ſeldom fail to deſtroy and root out all clean whenever they chance to come where they are.

And

And notwithſtanding they ſeem to be ſuch a clumſy Creature, yet they will very nimbly climb Trees (when purſued by Hunters and Dogs) where they generally remain till ſhot; and it is ſtrange to ſee with what agility they will go up and down the Trees, and in coming down they always run tail foremoſt. They are likewiſe very dexterous and expert in Fiſhing, catching vaſt Quantities of ſeveral ſorts of Fiſh, as they run up the narrow Creeks and ſhallow Waters to Spawn. There you ſhall ſee theſe Beaſts ſit, and take up Fiſh as faſt as it is poſſible for them to dip their Paws into the Water. There is one thing very ſtrange and remarkable of this Creature, which is, that no Man, either *Chriſtian* or *Indian*, ever killed a *She-Bear* with Young; for it is ſuppoſed, that after Conception (which is in the *Winter*) the *She-Bears* hide themſelves in the moſt ſecret places 'till they bring forth their Young, which according to *Pliny* is in thirty Days. But *Elianus* affirmeth not 'till three Months, which is the moſt likely and credible, becauſe all large Creatures bear their Burthens longer than ſuch as are ſmall; when they Couple together, the Female lieth on her Back, and the Male coupleth with her, which few other Beaſts are known to do. They have commonly three or five Cubs at a time, which ſeem to be at firſt a lump of white Fleſh, void of Form, without Hair or Eyes, only there is ſome appearance of Claws. This rude Lump they faſhion by degrees, by their conſtant licking. It is likewiſe reported that after conception they will Sleep ſo ſoundly for fourteen Days that it is not poſſible by any means to awaken them, and that during their abode in thoſe ſecret Places, they never appear abroad for Food, but only ſuck their Paws, which is all they ſubſiſt upon during that time.

It is most certain, that they hide themselves in the most Secret Places, otherwise the *Indians*, who constantly hunt in the Woods, and kill thousands of Hennes, would at some time or other have found them. *Bear-hunting* is a very great Diversion amongst the *Christians* and *Indians*, the former have a Breed of Dogs fit for that kind of sport, about the size of Farmers Curs; these by practice become acquainted with the Scent of the *Bears*, which as soon as they have found, they run him by the Nose 'till they come up with him, and then bark and snap at him 'till he Trees. By the Noise of the Dogs the Huntsmen repair to the place, and find the *Bear* in a large Tree, where they generally shoot one after another, 'till they kill him: And though they are not naturally voracious, yet are they very fierce, and will fight most desperately when wounded, for which reason there are three or four of these Huntsmen together with Guns ready, for fear the first shot should miss, or not quite kill him.

If any of these Dogs should fasten on a *Bear*, the Huntsman looks upon him as not good, for the best Dog in *Europe* is nothing in their Paws, for when ever they get a Dog in their Clutches they either tear him in pieces, or blow the Skin from the Flesh like a Bladder, and sometime kill him; but if he recovers, he never is good for any thing afterwards. As the Paws are accounted the best Morsel of this Creature, so is the Head esteemed the worst, and is therefore cast away, for the Brain is said to be Poisonous. They are not near so plenty now as they were some Years ago in this Province, where the Planters have kill'd four or five Hundred in one Season; the reason is because they are so very easily kill'd, for the least Dog will make them Tree, where they most commonly remain 'till shot, for the Dog continues barking about the Tree 'till the Planters come to their Assistance. The

Parts of this Beaſt are good in ſeveral Diſorders: The Oil is uſed in many Cafes, and eſpecially by the *Indians* to paint their Bodies withal. The fine Furr at the bottom of their Bellies is uſed in making Hats, and the Skins for ſeveral Uſes, ſuch as Hammer-Cloths for Coaches, Furniture for Saddles, *&c.* and the black Cub's Skins for Muffs.

The *Tyger* is in ſhape ſomewhat like a *Lioneſs*, but has a ſhort Neck. His Skin is moſt beautifully mottled with ſeveral kind of ſpots reſembling the *Panther*, only the former are not ſo round, nor have ſuch different Colours. They are large, ſtrong and ſwift Beaſts, but are never to be met with in the Settlements, being more to the Weſtward, *viz.* on this and the other ſide of the Mountains, but are very ſcarce and ſeldom to be found in this Province, by what I could learn from the *Indians*; and in our Journy up towards the Mountains we ſaw but one. They have a great many young Ones at a time, and are very fierce and bold Creatures, and will ſpare neither Man nor Beaſt to ſatisfie their Hunger, as I have been inform'd by the *Indians* and ſome of the Planters who have ſeen and kill'd them. *Pliny* reporteth that the young Ones are carried off in the following manner in *India*, *viz.* The Hunters lie in wait to eſpy when the *Tygreſs* is abroad, that they may have an opportunity to carry off the whole Litter of Whelps at once, upon very ſwift Horſes prepared for that End. But when the *Tygreſs* returneth and findeth her young ones gone, ſhe purſueth moſt ſwiftly thoſe that carried them away, by the Scent. But as ſoon as they perceive the *Tygreſs* approaching near them, they let fall one of the *Cubs*, which ſhe taketh in her Mouth, and runeth back to her *Den* with it, and immediately purſueth again in queſt of the reſt of her Whelps, thus ſhe runneth to and from her *Den*, until ſuch time as the Hunters

Hunters have an Opportunity to embark and get off with part of the young Ones. The Fleſh of this Beaſt is eaten by the *Savage Indians*, who ſay it is as ſweet and good as *Beef*. The *Tyger* is much larger than a *Gray-hound*, with ſhining Eyes, crooked Nails, ſharp Teeth, and Feet having many Toes; they love their young extreamly, which may be tam'd by giving them *Opium*, as it is reported; the Fat is good againſt *Palſies*, &c.

The *Panther* is of the ſpecies or kind of *Cats*, is near as large as the *Tyger*, and much of the ſame ſhape, the Skin is of a reddiſh or whitiſh Colour, finely mottled with ſmall round black Spots, and the Hair is ſhort and *moſſy*. It is ſaid, all four-footed Beaſts are wonderfully delighted and enticed by the ſmell of the *Panther*, but that their frightful Countenances ſoon ſcareth them away, wherefore they hide their Heads 'till they come within reach of their Prey, which they leap upon and quickly devour. They climb Trees with the greateſt agility imaginable: They are very ſtrong limb'd, and will catch and take a piece of Meat from any Creature they ſtrike at. Their Tails are exceeding long, and their Eyes are large and of a grayiſh colour, yet look very fierce and ſparkling. They are very deſtructive to the Planters, being a ſwift Beaſt of Prey, devouring *Swine*, *Deer*, or any other Creature they can Maſter. No Creatures are ſo nice and cleanly as theſe in their Food, and when they have got their Prey, they fill their Bellies with the ſlaughter, and carefully lay up the remainder, covering it very neatly with Leaves and Boughs of Trees, which if any other Creature happens to touch, they will never eat any more of it. They pur like a *Cat*, and ſuch is the wildneſs of their Nature, that altho' taken young, they are never to be tamed. They will hollow in the Woods like a Man, by which means many have been deceived, ſup-

poſing it to be ſome of their Acquaintance that hollowed, yet I never hear'd of any Body being hurt by them; and the ſmalleſt Dogs will make them take up into a Tree, where they generally remain 'till they are ſhot by the Huntſmen, and if it happens that they don't kill them outright, theſe and the *Bears* are a very dangerous Enemy when they are wounded, to the Huntſmen; but more eſpecially to the Dogs that approach too near them. Their Fleſh looks as well as any Shambles-meat whatever, and abundance of People eat them as choice Food. The *Indians* make warm covering for themſelves in *Winter* of the Skins, though it is not eſteemed amongſt the choice Furs. Their Skins dreſſed, make Upper-leather for Shoes, or Gloves for Men and Women. The Fat is hot, dry, and coſmatick, and helps the *Vertigo*, *Palſie*, *Scabs*, *Ring-worms*, and *Varices* (or ſwelling of the *Veins*.) The Gall being drank, preſently kills, for it burns the Humours by its violent heat, cauſing *Convulſions*, vomiting of *Green Cholor*, and Death. It is reported that ſome Poyſon their Arrows therewith, that they may kill the ſooner.

The *Mountain-cat*, ſo called from it's living in the Mountainous parts of *America*, ſeldom appeareth or approacheth near the Settlements. This is likewiſe a Beaſt of Prey, as the *Panther* is, and is neareſt to him in bigneſs and Nature. They ſeldom do any Miſchief to the Planters, becauſe they are ſo remote from them, their continual haunts being in and near the Mountains, otherwiſe they are moſt deſtructive and fierce Creatures. They will nimbly climb Trees when purſued by Huntſmen and Dogs, where they remain till they are ſhot, but if only ſlightly wounded, will fight moſt deſperately, tearing the Dogs in pieces that they chance to meet with, which ſeldom happens, by reaſon ſo many hunt in a Body together,

gether, who are always well armed, and ready for such Encounters, otherwise these Beasts would be dangerous Enemies to meet with thus wounded, in the solitary parts of the Woods. What uses are made of these Beasts are uncertain, because they seldom or never appear or are kill'd by the *Planters* near the Plantations, and what use the *Indians* make of them we know nothing of at present.

The *Wild-cat* is likewise another Beast of Prey, and is quite different from those in *Europe*, being more fierce, nimble, and large; they have a very large Head, yet their Tails do not exceed four Inches in length. They are of a fine Tabby colour, and as large as a *Fox*. They make an odd and frightful sort of Cry in the Woods at Night. They are dextrous in climbing of Trees, which they do with the greatest Agility imaginable, and Prey as the *Panthers* do, being great destroyers of young Swine. They take most of their Prey by surprize, for they get up into the Trees and kill Deer as they feed or pass by near them, by leaping directly upon them, and so fasten their Teeth into their Shoulders, and thus suck their Blood 'till they die, as a *Weesel* does a *Rabbet* with us, so that you shall see the Deer run through the Woods in this manner, 'till at length for want of Strength he falls to the Ground, and becomes a prey to his Enemy. Thus they take every thing by surprize, not being able to catch any thing by running. They destroy *Hares*, *Birds*, and every thing they meet that they are able to conquer. The Furr is made use of in Stomachers for weak and cold Stomachs, in lining of Muffs and Coats in cold Countries. Their chiefest haunts are in *Swamps*, *Perkorsans*, and amongst the *Hollow-Canes*. They are not near so numerous now as they were some years ago, the Planters continually meeting and killing them as

as they hunt in the Woods. Their Fat is externally us'd for several Pains, and Aches, for which it is good.

The *Pol-cats* (by some called *Scunks*) of *America*, are different from those in *Europe*, being much thicker, larger, and of various Colours; not all alike, but each differing from another in their particular Colours. They smell like the *European Fox*, but if possible, ten times stronger, and more offensive: When a Dog encounters them, they piss on their Tails and sprinkle it on him, by which means he shall smell a Month or more, so that he is not to be suffered to come into the Houses; and if it should happen to touch ones Cloaths, the smell by no means can ever be discharged, except they be buried in the Ground for some time, which Method ends generally in the loss of the whole Suit.

The *Indians* love to eat their flesh, which has no manner of ill smell when the Bladder is out. They feed in the Woods on Rats, Mice, Birds, and sometimes Fish. They are easily made tame (and frequently come about the Planters Houses at Night) yet few covet to entertain Guests so offensive in their smell. There is another sort of *Pol-cat* in most respects like those in *Europe*, and I have been informed, that there are white ones to be met with in and near the Mountains: I know no use made of their Furs, or any part of them in Physick.

The *Minx* is a small Animal, much like the *English Fillimart* or *Pol-cat*, being long, slender, and every way like him. The haunts of these Beasts are chiefly in the Marshes by the Sea-side and Salt-water, where they live on Fish, Fowl, Mice, and Insects. They are very bold Thieves, and will steal Fish or Fowl from you in the Night, and will venture to take it even from under your Head when you are asleep. They are likewise found a great way up the Rivers, in whose Banks they make Holes

and

and live, which is known by the great quantites of fresh Water *Mussel-shells*, that lye at the mouth of their Holes. They are great Enemies to the *Tortoise* and *Terebens*, whose Eggs they find and scratch out of the Holes in the Sand, which they quickly devour, as the *Raccoons* and *Crows* do.

These Beasts may be made tame, and are the greatest destroyers of Rats and Mice in the World, and were it not for their paying unseasonable Visits now and then to the Poultry, they would be in great esteem amongst the Planters. Their Skins are good and valuable, provided they are kill'd in the Season; I never knew any use made of this Animal in Physick, except the Fat for Pains and Aches.

The *Wolf*, is the *Dog of the Woods*, for it is reported that the *Indians* had no other Curs before the arrival of the *Christians* amongst them. These *Wolves* may be made domestick, but they are not so large or fierce as those in *Europe*, they are no Man-slayers, neither are there any Creaturs in *Carolina* (except they be wounded) will attack Man, Horse, or Dogs. They go in great Companies together in the Evenings and at Night (especially in the Winter-time) and will hunt down a Deer in full Cry, as well as the best Pack of Hounds, one of them will hunt down a Deer, but they are frequently so very poor that they can hardly run or pursue their Prey. When they are very hungry, and can take no Game, it is reported, they go to the *Swamps* and fill their Bellies full of Mud, and if afterwards they chance to get any Flesh, or stinking Fish, they will readily discharge the Mud, and eat the other. They make a most hideous noise when they are in pursuit of their Prey, and will follow the *Indians* in great droves through the Woods, who only kill the Deer and other Beasts for their Skins, and generally leave most part of

the

the dead Carcais behind them, on which the *Wolves* feed, this being what induces them to follow the *Indians* after that manner. Formerly there was a Reward (in this Province) for all those that kill'd them, which made the *Indians* so active, that they brought in such vast quantities of their Heads, that in a short time it became too burthensome to the Country, so that it is now laid quite aside, and the *Indians* will not kill them. The Planters formerly made Holes or Pits in the Earth to take them in, where they killed great Numbers, but their Dogs being led to those Places by the Scent of the Baits that were laid for the *Wolves*, most of them were destroyed, so that this method is entirely neglected, and they are become as numerous as ever, being as great Breeders as our Dogs and Bitches. They are but small, many being no bigger than midling Dogs, they are very crafty, but fearful Creatures, for they seldom or never attack or kill either Foles or Calves, but are very destructive to Sheep, if they are not carefully put up in their Pentolds at Night, and especially if it prove stormy Weather, at which time they will come about the Planters Houses, and strive to devour their Sheep, but in good Weather they never dare appear so near their Dwellings, which if they had done, the Dogs would soon chase them away, so sensible and crafty are they to come when the Dogs are all under some Cover to protect them from the violence of the Weather, and they generally kill all before they begin to eat, as many have testified. It is the Opinion of the most judicious Hunters in these Parts, that if they did not die for Hunger, or some secret unknown way, which they have for destroying one another, they would be the most numerous Beasts in *America*, being such prodigious Breeders. Their Skins dress to Parchment make the best Drum Heads, and if Tan'd, good Shoes for *Summer* Countries,

and

and being laid on Beds, are ſaid to baniſh Fleas, Bugs, and all other kind of Vermine from thence The Skin worn about the Belly is good in the *Cholick*, and all cold Diſorders. The Fleſh being boiled helps the *Gout*, and many other Diſorders. The Fat is much of the ſame nature and uſes with that of a Dog, being externally uſed in all kinds of *Aches*, *Palſies*, *Luxations*, and *Fractures*. The Dung and Blood are excellent good to expediate the Birth, and after-Birth.

The *Beavers* are amphibious Animals, like the *Otter*, living both on Land and Water, yet they never go into the Sea, their Haunts being altogether in the Freſhes. They are very numerous in *Carolina*, there being abundance of their Dams in moſt parts of the Country where I have travelled. They are like an *Otter*, but larger, and have broad flat Tails, in ſhape like a *Soal*, and covered with a Skin like the Scales of a Fiſh, upon which they carry the Mud and Earth, with which they make their Dams. Their Heads are ſhort, and the Ears are very ſmall and round, and the Teeth ſo long and ſharp, that they will cut down Trees growing by the River ſides, as if it were done with an Ax or Chizel. Their Fore-feet are like a Dogs, and their hinder Webbed like a Water-Fowl, and they are one of the moſt induſtrious Beaſts in the World. They are very ſubtil, and cut down Trees in the Night (for they are ſcarce to be ſeen in the Day) with which they make their Dams. The Food which they chiefly feed on are Fiſh, and the Barks of ſeveral ſorts of Trees and Shrubs, ſuch as *Saſſafras*, *Sweet-gum*, *Aſh*, *Birch*, and many others. If they are taken young, they become tame and domeſtick, but are very miſchievous in ſpoiling Orchards, by barking the Trees, and blocking up the Planter's Doors in the Night with the Sticks and Wood they bring thither. If they eat any

thing that is Salt, it preſently kills them. Their Fleſh is very ſweet Food, and eſpecially their Tails, which is held as a great Dainty. They have ſuch a Jargon amongſt them when they are at Work, that one would immagine them Diſcourſing, or in a grand Debate about their Building, wherein it is ſaid, they have ſuch an orderly Government, that each knows his proper Buſineſs and Station, and that the Overſeers beat the Young ones that loiter in their Buſineſs, and will make them cry, and work ſtoutly. It is very ſurprizing to behold with what Pains and Labour they make their Dams, and how artificially they build their Houſes, one Appartment above another, until they lie dry. They are ſometimes ſhot, but are taken moſt commonly after the following manner. The Planters break down part of their Dams, and lay Traps in thoſe places, which the *Beavers* attempting to repair and mend at Night, are caught in them. Their Furr, which is of a browniſh colour, is ſofter and finer than any Plume or Down of Feathers, and a good ſtaple Commodity in this Country. Their Skins being dreſs'd, make thick Leather, fit for Shoes, and wears well, it is likewiſe uſed in Mittens for Hedgers, and ſeveral other ways. From this Beaſt comes the *Caſtoreum*, which is it's *Stones*, the Virtues whereof are ſo well known, that it would be needleſs to inſert them.

The *Otters* are plentifully to be met with near the Heads of the Rivers, and live on the ſame prey in *Europe*, *viz.* on Fiſh, and ſometimes Fowl, and are the ſame in moſt reſpects as thoſe with us: Yet there have been ſeen ſome *Otters* to the Weſtward of this Province, which were of a whitiſh gray Colour, a little inclining to Yellow. Their Furr, if Black, is valuable to make Hats, Muffs, and ſeveral other Neceſſaries. Although the Fleſh be cold and ill-ſcented, yet ſome eat it, the Blood mixed with Vinegar,

Vinegar, helps ſwellings of the *Sinews*; their Skins worn about the Body, help *Palſies*, and other cold Diſorders; the *Teſticles* are good in the *Epilepſy* and *Fits of the Mother*, and have much the ſame Virtues with the *Caſtoreum*.

The *Raccoon* (which I take to be a Species of the *Monkey*) is of a dark grey Colour, and in ſhape and bigneſs it partly reſembles a *Fox*, but has large black Eyes, with great Whiskers like a *Cat*, the Noſe like a *Pig*, and the Feet are form'd like a Hand, or thoſe of a *Monkey*. If theſe Animals are taken Young, they are eaſily made tame and familiar like a Dog, yet they are very Apiſh, and the drunkeneſt Creatures in the World; if they can come at Liquors that are ſtrong and ſweet; and, if poſſible, are more Miſchievous and unlucky than a *Monkey*; they are very ſubtile and cratty in taking their Prey. Thoſe that live near the Salt-Waters feed much upon *Oyſters*, which they are fond of. Theſe Beaſts watch the *Oyſter* when it opens, and nimbly put in their Paw, and pluck out the Fiſh, yet it ſometimes happens that the *Oyſter* ſhuts and holds faſt their Paw 'till the Tide comes in, by which means they are frequently drown'd notwithſtanding they ſwim very well. This Animal is very fond of *Crabs*, which are plenty in this Province, and the way they take them is very remarkable and diverting, for when he intends to make a Prey of this Fiſh, he goes to the Marſhes on the Water ſide, and ſtanding on the Land he lets his Tail hang down in the Water, which the *Crab* takes for a Bait, and faſtens his Claws therein, as ſoon as the *Raccoon* perceives it, he of a ſudden ſprings forwards a conſiderable way on the Land, and brings the *Crab* with him; as ſoon as the *Crab* finds himſelf out of his Element, he immediately lets go his Hold, and then the *Raccoon* encounters him, by getting him croſs-ways in his Mouth, and ſo devours him. There is a ſort of

Land-Crabs in *Carolina*, which are commonly called *Fiddlers*, these live all along the Sea-shoar, and have Holes in the Sand, into which they run when pursued by any kind of thing. These *Crabs* the *Raccoon* takes by putting his fore Foot into their Hole and pulling them out, which is very diverting with a tame one. The chief of his other Food is wild and tame Fowl, all manner of Fruits, Green Corn, and the like. This Beast and the *Possum*, are much of a bigness. They are very dexterous in climbing of Trees, and often make unseasonable Visits among the Poultry. The *Indians* and *Negroes* frequently eat them, and esteem them very much. The Furr makes good Hats, and Linings for Coats in cold Countries, and the Skins dress'd make fine upper-Leather for Women's Shoes, and Gloves for Men. The parts of this Beast are much of the same Nature and Virtues with those of the *Otter*, and may be indifferently used after the same manner.

The *Foxes* are as large as those in *Europe*, but generally of a gray Colour, they have reddish Hair about their Ears and are most commonly fat, yet I have never known any Person eat them, notwithstanding they have not that strong smell that the *Foxes* in *Ireland*, and other parts have; yet they are as mischievous in their Nature. When they are Hunted, they run up the first bending Tree they meet with for Security from the Dogs, where they generally remain 'till forced down or shot by the Huntsmen, but whether they Burrow in the Ground, I cannot inform the Reader (for I never met any *Fox-Holes* in the Country) They are never to be made tame or familiar as the *Raccoons* and other Beasts in that Country are. The Furr of this Animal, if taken in the Season, is very good, and is used for Muffs, and many other Ornaments. Their Food is chiefly Birds, Fowls, Rabbets, and such like small Prey. The Fat or Oil helps *Nodes*, *contracted Sinews*, Pains

Pains of the *Joints*, *Gout*, *Palsie*, and many other Disorders.

The *Possum* is to be met with no where but in *America*, that I could ever learn, and is the wonder of all Land Animals; it is near as large as a *Badger*, and partly of that colour, but lighter. The Males Pisel is retrogade, and in time of Coition differs from most other Animals, turning tail to tail as Dog and Bitch when tied together. The Female no doubt breeds her young ones at her Teats, for I have frequently seen them stick fast thereto, when they have been no bigger than the end of a Childs little Finger, and seemingly to move and be alive. The She one has a false Belly or Pouch, which covers her Teats, and wherein she carries her Young; in the middle of which is a Hole where the young ones creep in and out, for the Female will lye down upon a Bank, and the young come out to sun themselves, and return in at Pleasure, yet the Female will contract this Pouch so secure and close together, that she will swim over large Ponds and Creeks of Water with her Young, without any danger of their being drowned. They have about five or six young ones at a time, which remain sporting in and out of this false Belly, till they are able to fend for themselves. They have long Tails without Hair, like a Rat, but as thick as a Man's Thumb; and appear as if they were Scaly, which they will readily twine about your Finger or Cane, in which Posture you may carry them where you please. They are a very stupid Creature, being altogether negligent of their own Safety, and never strive to flie from their Enemies, as it is natural for all other wild Beasts to do. In shape, they are most like Rats of any thing, and have very wide Months and sharp Teeth. They are hard to kill, for I have known their Sculls mashed and broken in pieces, so that they seemed to he quite

quite dead, yet in a few Hours they will recover and creep about again; and it is a common saying in *Carolina*, that if a *Cat* has nine Lives, a *Possum* has nineteen. Their Feet are very white, soft, smooth, and without Hair, and have five Toes upon each Foot, but the hinder Feet more resemble a Man's Hand, with a Thumb and four Fingers, than the fore-Feet do. Their Flesh is generally fat, white, and well tasted, several Persons eat of them, especially the *Indians* and *Negroes*, who prefer them before *Pork*, but their ugly Tails are enough to put one out of Conceit with them. They climb Trees as the *Racoons* do, and feed on Flesh, Poultry, Roots, and most kinds of Fruits. Their Furr is not esteemed, and therefore made very little use of, only that the *Indians* spin it into Girdles and Garters, The Fat of this Beast is much of the same Nature of that of Hogs. The Testicles given with Honey stir up Lust, and cause Conception.

That Animal which the People of *Carolina* call a *Hare*, is nothing but a *Hedge-Coney*, for I never met with or heard of any of the Species of the *European Hares* being in this Province. The *Hedge-Conies* never Burrow in the Ground, but continually frequent the Woods and Thickets, and if you start one of them and pursue it, it generally runs up as far as it can into a hollow Tree, in which case the Hunters make a Fire and smoke the Tree, which brings it down, and most commonly smothers it; though I have frequently seen them pursued and taken by Dogs, yet I never observed any taken after that manner, but their Bladders were ready to burst, which the People in that Country would perswade me was a Distemper amongst them, whereof they frequently die. They hide their Young in some secret place from the discovery of the Bucks, as the *European Rabbets* do, and are

of

of the ſame Size and Colour. At certain Seaſons of the Year, great *Bots* or *Maggots* breed betwixt the Skin and the Fleſh, which turns into moſt beautiful *Butterflies*, like thoſe in the *Deer*. They eat much after the ſame manner as thoſe in *Europe* do, but I never obſerved any of them ſo fat. The Planters frequently fire the Marſhes and Thickets, by which means they kill abundance of them. The Fleſh of theſe nouriſhes more than that of the *Hare*.

Thoſe of the *European* Species of *Coneys* or *Rabbets* are very ſcarce in this Province, and are to be met with but in few places, ſo that it is thought that they are not natives of this Country, but that they have been brought from *Europe*, to theſe parts. They Burrow in the Ground (but in two places that I know of) like thoſe with us, Theſe as well as the former breed Maggots in their Teſticles and other parts of the Body, which become moſt beautiful *Butter-flies*; they eat after the ſame manner as thoſe with us, and their Furr is for the ſame uſes, and the parts of this Animal have the ſame virtues in Phyſick with the former.

The *Squirrels* whereof there are four ſorts in this Province, *viz.* The *Fox-Squirrel*, the *Gray-Squirrel*, the *Flying-Squirrel*, and the *Ground-Squirrel*.

The *Fox-Squirrel*, ſo call'd, from its being the largeſt, and ſmelling like a *Fox*. It is moſt commonly larger than a *Rabbet* and of a gray colour, yet I have ſeen ſeveral Pyed ones, and ſome white, red and Black. Their cheſeſt haunts are in Piney Lands where the *Almond-pine* grows. They feed on pine Nuts and all other ſorts of Nuts, and Fruits, of which they lay up a ſufficient ſtore in hollow Trees for the Winter, during which Seaſon they never appear abroad. They may be made tame, and are very plenty, and good Meat in this Province, but very

very distructive and pernicious in Corn Fields. The flesh is sweet and good like that of *Goats* or *Rabbets*.

The small *Gray-Squirrel* is much of the same nature and bigness with those in *England*, there being only some small difference in the colour. They feed like the former on Corn and Nuts, *&c.* and like the *Bear*, are never found with Young, neither are they to be met with in *Winter*, but lie in the hollow Trees during that Season: Their Flesh eats rather better than the former. The Fat of these *Squirrels* is *Emollient*, and good against Pains in the Ears, and the Teeth, are said to be used by *Magicians* in foretelling things to come.

The *Flying-Squirrel* is of a light dun Colour, or Gray, like the former, but much smaller than any of the other two. It has no Wings (like a *Bird* or *Bat*) only a fine thin Skin covered with Hair, as the rest of the Parts are. This is from the Fore-feet to the Hinder-feet, which they puff full of Wind at pleasure; and this buoys them up, that they will fly with incredible swiftness, and at greater Distances than any other kinds of *Squirrels* do, by their jumping or springing. They lay in a sufficient Store of Provisions for the *Winter*, which are generally Nuts, Corn, and several sorts of Fruits. They are a tender Creature, lie very warm in their Nests (which are made of fine Down) not appearing all the *Winter*, being unable to bear the Cold and severity of the Weather, and generally half a dozen or more lie together in one Nest, which is always in a hollow Tree, and have their Stores of Provisions near them, whereon they feed during the cold Weather. They are easily made tame, but Enemies to Corn-fields (as all the other *Squrirels* are) and only eat the germinating Eye or Bud of the Grain, which is very sweet. The Flesh of this *Squirrel* is as good as any of the former.

The

The *Ground Squirrel*, ſo called, becauſe they ſeldom delight in running up Trees, or leaping from Branch to Branch, as the other *Squirrels* do. They are the ſmalleſt of all *Squirrels*, being not much bigger than a large *Mouſe*, and their Tails are not ſo long or buſhy as the former, but more flattiſh. They are of a reddiſh colour, and finely ſtriped down each ſide with black Rows like the young *Fawns*, which make them very beautiful; they may be kept tame in a little Box with Cotton in it, becauſe theſe as well as the *Flying Squirrels* never ſtir or appear abroad in the *Winter*, being a very tender Animal, and not able to bear the Cold. Theſe have much the ſame Virtues and Uſes with the other ſorts of *Squirrels*.

The *Weeſel* is likewiſe to be met with here, but not ſo common as in ſome parts of *Europe*; I ſee no manner of difference between them in ſhape, colour, or bigneſs. It is very ſtrange what ſome Writers have ſaid of the Generation and Conception of this Animal, who confidently aſſure us, that they Ingender at the Ear, and bring forth their Young at the Mouth. *Pliny* reporteth, that when they encounter and fight with *Rats*, they uſe *Rue* as a preſervative againſt their Bite. The Parts of this Animal are good in Fevers, Gouts, and Pains of the Joints, Head-aches, Falling-ſickneſs, Epilepſies, and many other Diſorders.

There are four ſorts of *Rats* in this Province, *viz.* the *Musk*, the *Marſh*, the *Water*, and the *Houſe-Rat*.

The *Musk-Rat* is partly of the colour of a *Rabbet*, and is in all things ſhaped like our *Water-Rat*, only ſomething larger, and has Hair or Down upon it's Tail, longer than the former. It frequents the Marſhes near the Freſh-Water Streams (as the *Beavers* do) and no where elſe, and builds in the Marſhes, having three lodging Rooms, one higher than the other, very neat and

finely daubed within, where it lies dry and ſecure from the violence of the Weather. It has a Cod of Musk that is very valuable, ſo is it's fine Furr. It is the Opinion of many in theſe parts, that this Animal lives moſtly on Fiſh.

The *Marſh-Rat*, ſo called from its frequenting the Marſhes; it differs from the former, being leſs and of a darker colour, but is more Hairy and larger than the common *Houſe-Rat*. It is a very deſtructive and miſchievous Animal, eſpecially to Corn, and all manner of Fruits; of what uſe it may be in Phyſick, is uncertain.

The *Water-Rat* is found here the ſame as in *England*, and other parts of *Europe*, the *Water-Snakes* frequently devour theſe Rats, for I have killed ſeveral of theſe Snakes and found theſe Rats in their Bellies; they feed upon little ſmall Fiſh and Water-Inſects that they meet with in Rivers and Ponds of freſh Waters.

The *Houſe-Rats* are the ſame here as in *Europe*, and in great plenty all over this Province, and as miſchievous in theſe parts, as in any part of the World, deſtroying Corn, Fruit, and many other things. The Tail of this Animal is Poyſonous, and frequently kills Cats that eat it: The Urin falling upon the bare Skin, cauſeth the Fleſh to rot even to the Bones, if there be not good care taken to prevent it, by a ſpeedy Cure, yet the Fat is of excellent uſe againſt the Palſie.

The *Moles* in this Province are of the ſame ſort as thoſe to be met with in *England* and other Places, but are not plenty here, being deſtroyed by Snakes, and ſeveral other kinds of Vermine, which this Country produces in great abundance. Many are the Virtues aſcribed to this little Animal, ſuch as curing the King's-Evil, Gout, Leproſie, and Fiſtulas, the Aſhes being outwardly applied, and inwardly drank in Wine for ſeveral Days. The freſh

Blood

Blood put on bald places cauſeth the Hair to grow, and the Liver being applied, is ſaid to waſte away Wens, and the Powder of the Heart to cure Ruptures. They are moſt effectual in *May*.

The *Mice*, whereof there are four ſorts, *viz.* The *Houſe-mice*, the *Shrew-mice*, the *Dor-mice*, and the *Bat*, or *Rear-mouſe*.

The *Houſe-mice* are the ſame here as thoſe with us, and theſe and all other kinds of Mice are ſcarce here (except the *Rear-mouſe*) which may reaſonably be ſuppoſed from the great quantity of Vermine that continually deſtroy them, ſuch as *Hawks*, *Owls*, *Rattle-Snakes*, *Black-Snakes*, and the like. It is a ſhort-liv'd letcherous Creature, and breeds often in the Year. The Fleſh being applied, helps the biting of Serpents; the Fat is good againſt the *Scirrhus* and Baldneſs. The whole Mouſe being calcined, helps *Tetters*, *Ringworms*, *Piles*, *Epilepſies*, and many other Diſorders; the Gall with Vinegar, dropt into the Ears, bring out living Creatures got in; the Urine corrodeth after the ſame manner as the *Rat*.

The *Shrew-mouſe*, or *Poyſonous-mouſe*, ſo called, from poyſoning Cats after they have eat of them; it is very like the former, but is a Field-mouſe, for it never reſorts or comes near the dwelling Houſes. It is ſaid, if it go over the Back of any Beaſt he ſhall become lame in the Chine, and if it bite, he ſwelleth to the Heart and dieth. This Animal being burnt to Aſhes, and applied with Gooſe-greaſe, helps all Swellings in the Fundament, Felons and Tumors behind the Ears. Their biting is cured by the application of their own Fleſh bruiſed, as alſo, oxymel Cupping Glaſſes, Scarification, Wormwood, Vinegar, Garlick, Cummin Seed, Vervain, *&c.*

The *Dor-mouſe* is of the ſame kind here as in *Europe*; theſe Animals are but ſcarce in this Province, and it is

ſaid, they will ſleep a Month or two in *Winter*, and can hardly be revived 'till juſt the time of their going abroad. The Body being roaſted with Oil and Salt, and eaten, helps wonderfully Ulcers in the Lungs; the Fat dropt into the Ear, helps Deafneſs. The Body burnt to Aſhes, mixt with Honey, and eaten every Morning, clears the Eye-ſight; and with Oil, helps burnings.

The *Bat*, or *Rear-mouſe*, whereof there are two ſorts, *viz.* one a large ſort with long Ears, and particularly long ſtragling Hairs. The other is of the ſame kind here as with us in *Europe*, only ſomething larger, and is plentiful all over this Province, yet it never appears all the Winter. The *Bat* alone, of all Creatures that fly, brings forth it's young alive, and ſuckleth them with *Paps*, and giveth *Milk*; it likewiſe will convey or carry them from one place to another as it flies. I have put this Animal amongſt the Beaſts, tho' it partakes of both Natures, of the *Bird* and *Mouſe* kinds. The Fleſh is abominable Food, yet ſome eat it, and it is frequently Roaſted, and given to Children that eat Dirt (which is very common amongſt the *Chriſtians* and *Negroes* in this Province) and is held as an infallible Medicine for that purpoſe. The Blood cauſes the Hair to fall off, the *Gall* helps the biting of the *Shrew-mouſe*, and dimneſs of Sight.

Having thus given an Account of the *Terreſtrial*, or *Land-Animals*, which are to be met with in *Carolina*, and are already known to us; I ſhall in the next place proceed to deſcribe the *Reptiles* and *Inſects*. Not that I pretend to give an ample Account of all the different Species, (which would require a larger Volume than is here deſigned) they being very numerous; my Purpoſe is to diſcribe ſuch only as I can perfectly remember, and whoſe Qualities are beſt known; there being too great a diverſity of various kinds, many whereof are not yet throughly diſcovered,

discovered, and others have slipt my Memory; besides what the Mountainous parts of this Land may hereafter lay open to our View; for whoever consider what a small part of this large Province is inhabited at present, can't imagine but there will still be greater Discoveries made, by Time and Industry, when the back parts of this Country, and near the Mountains are once settled; for the farther we Travel *Westward*, we meet greater Differences in the Soil, Air, Weather, growth of Vegetables, and several Animals, which we at present are intire Strangers to; only what little Account we have from the *Indians*, so that no doubt every Age will make new Discoveries.

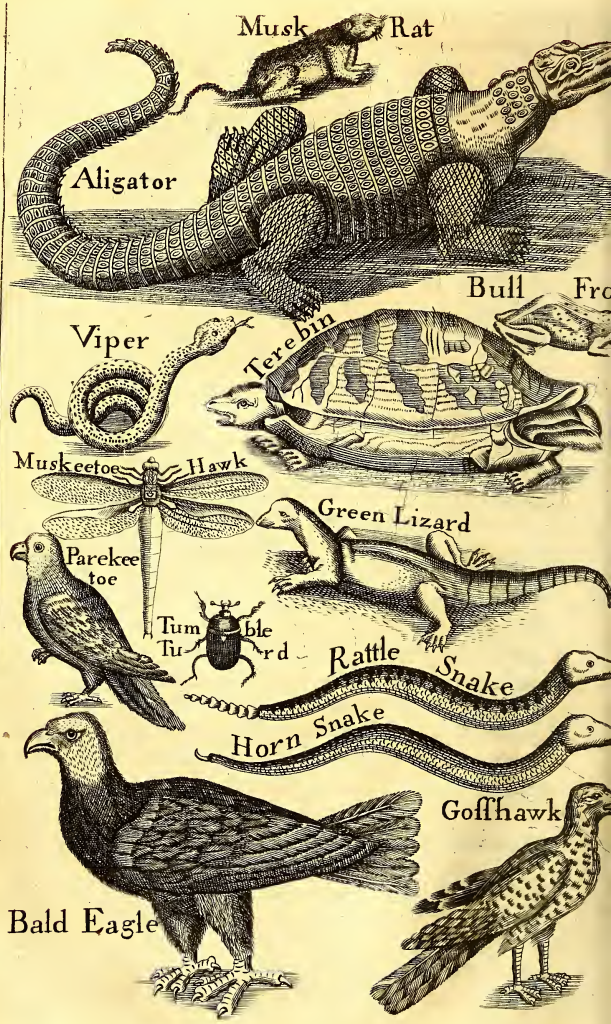
The *Alligators* are Amphibious Creatures, living both upon Land and Water, and by the best Description I can learn concerning the *Crocodile*, I see little or no difference between them, only in the Name; this being the receiv'd Opinion of the Naturalists, that it is no other than a *Crocodile* not arriv'd to it's full growth. They are a large Creature with four Feet, which are like a *Bears*, except that they are covered with *Scales*, instead of Hair, the Claws are sharp and the Tail long, with *Fins* upon it. They have a large broad Head and wide Mouth, the Snout is like a *Swines*, and the Teeth, which are exceeding sharp, meet within each other like the Edges of two *Saws*. The Tails of these Animals are near as long as the whole Body, and the same is very rough and armed with a hard Skin. Their haunts are chiefly between the Freshes and Salt Waters. They make their Dwellings in the Banks on the River-sides, a great way under Ground, the entrance whereof is generally two or three Foot under Water, which rises gradually as they burrow under Ground, 'till it rises considerably above the surface of the Water, where they lie dry all the Winter, at which Season they never appear abroad, but as it is supposed, sleep all that time

time without any manner of Proviſion, which ſome report to be the ſpace of threeſcore Days. In *Spring* they come forth from their Holes or Caves, and continually ſwim up and down the Rivers and Creeks in the Day time, but at Night they are to be met with in the Woods and Marſhy low Grounds. They always breed near the freſh Water ſtreams, or clear Fountains, yet ſeek their Prey in brackiſh and Salt-waters, not near the open Shoar, but in the Rivers and Creeks. They are never known to devour Men in *Carolina*, but on the contrary, always ſtrive to avoid them, as much as poſſibly they can. Yet they frequently kill Swine and Dogs, the former as they come to feed in the Marſhes and at the ſides of the Rivers and Creeks, and the latter as they are ſwiming over them.

The *Alligators* lay Eggs as Ducks do, only they are longer ſhap'd, and have a larger and thicker Shell than they have; but how long they are in Hatching their Eggs I never could be ſatisfied, or rightly informed, for the *Indians* with whom I converſed, ſay, it is moſt part of the *Summer*, and only by the heat of the Sun; but ſome of the Chriſtians aſſured me, this was performed in ſixty Days, or thereabouts: Their young ones are ſhaped exactly like a *Lizard*, *Asker*, or *Effit*, and they have ſhort flat and large Tongues. I ſaw one of the young ones taken and brought to a Planters Houſe who had a Pond of Water before his Door (out of which he dug Clay for Building) wherein he put the young *Alligator*, it remained there for half a Year, feeding on Guts of Fowl and other Fleſh-meat and *Frogs* that happend to come into the Pond. It grew ſo very domeſtick, that it would frequently come into the Dwelling Houſe, and return again to the Pond: But at length it ſtole away to the Creek before the Planters Dwelling Houſe, as was ſuppoſed, for it never could be ſeen or heard of afterwards. But to return to their Breed-

ing

of
ar
on
a-
d,
n-
m
he
an
d
ty
ty
ir
g
h
d
ly
e-
y
ce
he
at
a
e
y
d,
y
e,
ot
d
o
ir
er
a
at


Musk Rat
Aligator
Bull Fro
Viper
Terebin
Muskeetoe Hawk
Green Lizard
Parekeetoe
Tum ble
Tu rd
Rattle Snake
Horn Snake
Goshawk
Bald Eagle

ing their young ones. The old ones throw up Banks of Mold in the wet Swamps, in form of a Sugar-Loaf, near the ſides of the freſh Water-Rivers and Creeks, whereon they lay twenty or thirty Eggs, if not more, in the Seaſon, where they remain 'till ſuch time as they are Hatched, and then they tumble into the Waters, and ſend for themſelves in the like manner as the young *Frogs* do: I am perſwaded they are one of the largeſt Creatures in the World to be produced out of ſo ſmall a Beginning as an Egg not ſo large as a *Gooſe's*, for they ſometimes exceed eighteen Foot in length, they have Sixty Teeth, Sixty turning Joints, and are ſaid to live no longer than Sixty Years. They are very crafty and ſubtile in taking their Prey in Waters, whereon they float as if dead, or like a log of Wood, 'till they come within reach of their Prey, which they will moſt nimbly ſeize by leaping upon them, and then dive under Water with it, which they quickly devour. They are likewiſe very deſtructive and miſchievous to Wairs made for catching Fiſh, into which they come to prey on the Fiſh caught in them, from whence they cannot readily diſcharge themſelves, ſo break the Wairs in pieces, being a Creature very large, and of great Strength. It is almoſt impoſſible to kill them with a Gun, except you chance to hit them in or about the Eyes, or under the Belly, that part being ſofter than any part of the Body; the reſt of the Skin being ſo hard, that it will reſiſt a Bullet like Armour. They are very eaſily avoided upon Land, being a very ſlow Creature, by reaſon of the ſhortneſs of their Legs, and they cannot readily turn themſelves, for their Bodies are ſo ſtiff and hard, that they are obliged to go ſtreight forward, ſo that they may be avoided by the leaſt turning out of their way, but they are very nimble and active in leaping either upon Land or Water. Some of theſe Creatures afford a great

great deal of *Musk*, and when their Tails are cut off, they look very fair and white, ſeemingly like the beſt of Vail, and ſome People eat thereof, and ſay it is moſt delicious Meat, when they are not Musky. Their Teeth are as white as Ivory, whereof I have ſeen Chargers for Guns of ſeveral ſizes, Snuff-Boxes, and many other Toys made. The upper Jaw of this Monſter is moveable, and not the under, and it is doubtful whether they have any Paſſage for their Excrements, except the Mouth. After the Tail is cut off from the Body of this Creature, it will freely move for four or five Days, as if it had been alive, and ſtill joined with the other parts. I ſaw two of them killed during my ſtay in that Country, in the Bellies whereof (after they were opened) were found ſeveral ſorts of Snakes, knots of Light-wood, and particularly one of them with a large ſolid Stone, that weighed about four Pound weight.

Theſe Monſters roar and make a moſt hideous Noiſe againſt bad Weather, and before they come out of their Dens in the *Spring*. I was very much frighted by one of them in a Creek near *Bath-Town*, where theſe Animals are very plenty, which happened after this Manner: As I was walking near the Creek ſide one Evening, not long after my arrival in thoſe Parts, on a ſudden this Monſter began to roar after ſuch a dreadful manner, that the very Earth ſeemed to tremble where I ſtood. I am not able to expreſs the conſternation I was in; for I am ſatisfied it gave me the greateſt dread and ſurprize I was ever in, never having heard ſo terrifying a Noiſe before; it continued thus roaring for eight or ten times, like a *Bittern*, but if poſſible, a hundred times louder, which at firſt I imagined to be ſome diabolical Spirit breaking through the Bowels of the Earth, for in the fright I was in, I could think or imagine nothing elſe. I made all the haſte I could

could to a Planters Houſe, where I had lain the Night before, who ſoon undeceived me, and told me what it was, and that in a few Days I ſhould ſee the Creature that made that helliſh Noiſe in the Creek before his Door, which happened in a Day or two after. Their Fleſh if not Musky, is accounted good Meat, and helps thoſe that are afflicted with the Gout and Rhumatick Pains. The Blood clears the Eyes, and the Fat is prevalent againſt all manner of Pains, Aches, Ulcers, and Cancers, by Unction. The Gall is of excellent uſe in taking away the *Cataract* and *Web*, growing in the Eyes; the Teeth of the right Jaw bound about the Arm, are ſaid to provoke *Venery*. The Skin calcined, and mixed with *Lees* of *Oil*, is ſaid to ſtupifie the Parts ſo much, that they cannot feel, though cut. I have ranked the *Alligator* and the *Tortoiſe* among the *Inſects*, becauſe they lay Eggs.

The *Tortoiſe*, vulgarly called the *Turtle*, whereof there are three ſorts. The firſt is the *Green Tortoiſe*, which is not common, but is ſometime found on theſe Coaſts; it lives both on Land and Water, and has a large ſtrong Shell on it's Back, which defends it from it's Enemies. The Lean of this Tortoiſe looks and taſtes like *Veal*, without any fiſhy ſavour, and the Fat is as green as Graſs, yet very ſweet; ſome are ſo large, that they weigh four hundred Weight.

The ſecond is the *Hawks-Bill*, which is common here, the Fleſh of theſe two ſorts are incomparably good Food, being inferior to none, and is uſeful in ſeveral Diſorders, ſuch as tht *Gout*, *Hectick*s, *Epilepſy*, *ſore Eyes*, and is ſaid to be an Antidote againſt Poyſon.

The third is called the *Logger-Head*, which ſcarce any one covets to eat, except it be the *Negroes* and *Indians*, yet the Eggs of this and all the other ſorts (which are

covered with a Skin and not a Shell) are extraordinary good Food and nouriſh very much, yet none of theſe ſorts of Creatures Eggs will admit in boiling the White to be harder than a Jelly, notwithſtanding the Yolk with boiling becomes as hard as any other Egg. They make Holes in the dry Sandy-Land, and on the River ſides, where they lay above an hundred Eggs in the Seaſon as large as Pullet's, afterwards they cover them carefully with Mould, which they beat hard and ſmooth with their Breaſts, where they remain till they are Hatched, and they lay Eggs two or three times a Year, which cauſeth a prodigious Increaſe. The common way of taking theſe Turtles is, to turn them on their Backs, in which Poſture they cannot dive under the Water, ſo that thoſe that Fiſh for them tye a Rope about them, and hawl them into their Boats, or tow them to Land, and it is reported, that they will ſhed Tears when they are taken; and though they have large Lungs within their Scales, yet according to *Pliny*. they are without Blood. They are commonly found floating upon the Water, and ſometimes faſt aſleep, at which time they will ſnort very loud. They have neither Tongue nor Teeth, but a very ſharp Bill, which ſerves them inſtead of Teeth; they feed on *Cockles*, *Muſcles*, and other Sea-ſhel Fiſh, for their Bills are ſo hard and ſtrong that they will readily break thoſe Fiſhes and eat them.

The *Terebins*, whereof there are divers ſorts, which I ſhall comprehend under the diſtinction of Land and Water *Terebins*.

The Land *Terebins* are of ſeveral Sizes, but generally round mouthed, and not *Hawks-bill*, as ſome of the other ſorts are, they are exactly in ſhape like the *Turtles*, and move very ſlowly, and if any thing touches them, they readily draw their Head and Feet within their Shells; (being

(being ſpeckled with reddiſh ſpots, which are hard and ſtrong) that ſcarce any thing can hurt them. The *Indians* eat them, and moſt of them are good Food, except the very large ones, and thoſe that are Musky. Theſe, as well as the *Tortoiſes*, make Holes in the Sand-Banks above High-water-mark, where they lay vaſt quantities of Eggs in the Seaſon, which are hatched by the heat of the Sun, and the young Ones, as ſoon as they are out of the Shell, crawl back to the Water, where they ſeek their Living. They are mortal Enemys to the *Rattle-Snakes*, killing them wherever they meet, which they do by catching the *Snake* a little below the Neck, and ſo draw his Head into their Shell, which makes the *Snake* beat his Tail, and twiſt about with all the ſtrength and violence imaginable to get away, but the *Terebin* ſoon diſpatches him, by preſſing him to Death between his Shells, and there leaves him. In *Europe* they are called the *Land-tortois*, and are plenty up and down the Woods of *Carolina*; they feed on *Snails*, *Tadpools*, or young *Frogs*, *Graſs*, *Muſhrooms*, and Dew and ſlime of the Earth and Ponds. Their Eggs are very nouriſhing, and exceeding good Food. They never appear in Winter, but lie all that Seaſon in Holes in the Earth, without any manner of apparent Proviſion.

The *Water-Terebins* have a Shell on their Backs and another underneath, like the former; they are but ſmall, containing about as much Meat as a Pullet, and are extraordinary good Food in *May* and *June*, at which time they make Holes in the Earth, where they lay vaſt quantities of Eggs, which are hatched by the heat of the Sun and Sands, as the former are. They come out about the bigneſs of a ſmall *Cheſnut*, and ſeek their own living: It is incredible what quantities of Eggs, theſe as well as the others will lay in the Seaſon, but they have ſo many

Enemies that find them out (especially *Hogs*, *Racoons*, and *Crows*, *&c.*) that the hundredth part never come to perfection. For during the time they are laying, you will see the *Hogs* and *Racoons* hunting all along the Water sides till they find their Eggs, which they root out of the Earth, and so devour them; this is the reason they are not so plenty in this Province as formerly they were, though they are still numerous enough. I have frequently eat of them, which are as delicious a Morsel as ever I tasted, if well dress'd. Their Virtues and Uses are much the same with the *Tortoise*.

The *Frogs*, whereof there are several sorts, but none so remarkable as the *Bull-Frogs*, so called, from their bellowing like a Bull, which makes Strangers wonder (when by the side of a Marsh) what's the matter, for they hear the *Frogs* bellow, and can see no Cattle: They are the largest that are known in *America*, being generally as big as a *Rabbet*, I have known no Use made of them in Physick.

The *Green Frog*, so called from it's Colour, it is one of the smallest sort I ever met with; these climb up Trees, and sing or make a noise much like the *Grass-hopper*, but much louder. The *French* eat the hinder Quarters of them.

The common *Land-Frog* is like a *Toad*, only it leaps and is not poysonous. These *Frogs* are great devourers of *Ants*, and the *Snakes* devour them. These Animals baked and beat to Powder, are taken with *Orrice*-Root, to cure the Tympany, and many other Disorders.

There are several other coloured small *Frogs* in these parts; and what is worthy of Observation is, that they in general have such variety of Notes from the Spring to the Fall, that it is very strange to hear them, representing as it were all the Crys, Calls, and Notes of Beasts and Birds in these Parts.

The

The *Scorpion-Lizard*, but why ſo called I know not, for it is not like a *Scorpion* in any reſpect: It is of the *Lizard* kind, but much bigger than any I ever ſaw in *Europe*. It's Back is of a dark Copper-colour, and the Belly of an Orange. It is very nimble in running up Trees, or upon Land, and is accounted very Poyſonous. This Animal hath the moſt Sets of Teeth in the Mouth and Throat of any I have ſeen, but what they prey or feed upon, I am an intire ſtranger to, and likewiſe their Uſe in Phyſick.

The *Green-Lizards*, in this Province are as large as thoſe to be met with in *Europe*, and are very harmleſs and beautiful, they frequently reſort to the Walls of the dwelling Houſes (eſpecially in the *Summer* ſeaſon, for in *Winter* they are not to be ſeen) and ſtand gazing on the Inhabitants, without any dread or fear, being very tame: They are of a moſt beautiful Green colour and have a little Bladder under their Throat, which they fill with Wind, and evacuate at pleaſure.

There are ſeveral other ſorts of *Lizards* of various and changable Colours, but none ſo beautiful as the Green ones These *Lizards* are mortal Enemies to the *Spiders* and *Toads*, yet their Fleſh eaten is hurtful, cauſing Inflammations, Tumours, and Blindneſs; the Head being outwardly applied with Salt, draws out Darts, Thorns, and things ſticking in the Fleſh, it likewiſe waſteth Weas, and other hard Swellings. The Gall cauſeth the Hair to fall off, and their Eggs kill ſpeedily, except a ſudden Remedy be exhibited made of *Falcon's* Dung and Wine. If they bite, they leave their Teeth behind them, which cauſeth continual Pain, until they are taken out. The *Gray-Lizards* are very common, and the *Snakes* feed upon them; for I have taken ſeveral of them out of the Bellies of the Snakes.

In

In the Month of *June*, 1730, as I was travelling in the Woods together with other Company, we found an Inſect ſuning itſelf at the Root of a large Pine Tree, about the thickneſs of a Man's Finger, and three Inches long, it was beautifully ſtriped with Circles of Black and White. The Mouth was partly like the Mouth of a Frog, but not ſo large, it had four ſhort Feet, but no Tail; it was very ſoft, but the Skin exceeding tough, and it moved very ſlowly. Not one of the Company could give me an Account what it was, neither could I ever learn from any I converſed with, or ſhewed it to, having preſerved it a conſiderable time in Spirits; but I take it to be a Species of the *Lizards*, and have therefore ranked it amongſt them, not knowing by what other Name to diſtinguiſh it.

Having thus given an Account of the *Frogs* and *Lizards*, I ſhall in the next place proceed to give an Account of the SNAKES that this Country produces, beginning with the moſt poyſonous, and concluding with thoſe that have none. And firſt,

The *Ratte-Snake*, ſo called from the Rattles at the End of their Tails, which is a connexion of Joints (and ſeem as if decayed) with a thin covering of an excrementitious Matter, between the ſubſtance of a Nail and a Horn; Nature undoubtedly deſigning theſe on purpoſe to give Warning of ſuch an approaching Danger, as the venemous Bite of theſe Snakes are. Some of them grow very large, as ſix or ſeven foot in length, and about the thickneſs of the ſmall of a Man's Legg. They give Notice to ſuch as approach their Danger, by rattling their Tails, which may be heard at a great Diſtance; they are ſharp ſighted, and quickly diſcover any thing approaching

approaching them a great way off. Their Skins are all over full of thin tender Scales, with a Ridge through the middle of them, of an Orange-tawny, and blackiſh colour, beautifully mottled on their Backs, and their Bellys an Aſh colour, inclining to Lead. The Male is eaſily diſtinguiſhed from the Female, by a Spot on his Head of a black Velvet colour, and his Head is ſmaller ſhaped and longer. Their Bite is very venemous if not ſpeedily remedied, and eſpecially if it happens in a Vein, Nerve, Tendon, or Sinew, where it is difficult to be cured. The Wound grows black, or of a livid colour, cauſing a ſwelling in the Parts; dimneſs of the Eyes, paleneſs of the Face, Swooning, and Death, if a Cure be not applied in time. They are a majeſtick ſort of Creature, and will ſeldom or never bite (except they are provoked) which they cannnt do until they gather themſelves into a Quoil or Circle, and then will ſpring at a good diſtance to bite whatever provokes or injures them, otherwiſe they are moſt peaceable Creatures, and never attack or moleſt any one. The *Indians* pretend to charm them, ſo that they can take them up in their Hands, without any danger of being bit; but how far they may be expert in this kind of Practice, is ſtill a Secret among them, but this I am certain of, that they are famous in curing the Bite of theſe and moſt other ſorts of venemous Creatutes in theſe parts. They have of late communicated the Method how to cure the Bite of the *Rattle-Snake* to the *Chriſtians*, which almoſt every Planter is very well acquainted with. This Cure is perfected by chewing in the Mouth the Root of an Herb that beareth Tuffts or Buttons at the top like *Scabions*, but not of that Colour; this Root is as hot in the Mouth as *Ginger*, and about the ſame thickneſs, it is called the *Rattle-Snake-Root*, from it's curing

the

the venomous Bite of that Snake; there are three ſorts of it to be found almoſt every where, this (as I ſaid before) they chew in their Mouths, ſwallow ſome part of the Juice, and apply the reſt to the Wound, which perfectly cures thoſe that are bit in a few moments. It is ſurprizing to obſerve how theſe Snakes will allure and charm *Squirrels*, *Hedge-Conneys*, *Partridges*, and many other ſmall Beaſts and Birds to them, which they quickly devour. The Sympathy is ſo ſtrong between theſe, that you ſhall ſee the *Squirrel* or *Partridge* (after they have eſpied this Snake) leap or fly from Bough to Bough, until at laſt they run or leap directly into it's Mouth, not having power to avoid their Enemy, who never ſtirs out of the Poſture or Quoil until he obtains his Prey. It is reported, they have a Rattle for every Year they are old, which does not begin to grow until they are three Years old, which I am apt to believe, for the young ones have none, and I have ſeen and killed ſeveral of theſe Snakes, with thirteen, and fifteen, and one with thirty Rattles. They have ſeveral ſmall Teeth, of which I cannot ſee they make any Uſe, for they ſwallow every thing whole, but the Teeth which poyſon, are only four, two on each ſide of their upper Jaws; theſe are bent like a Sickle and hang looſe, as if by a Joint. Towards the ſetting on of theſe, there is in each Tooth a little Hole wherein you may juſt get in the point of a ſmall Needle; here it is that the Poyſon comes out (which is as green as Graſs) and follows the Wound made by the point of the Teeth. Their Bite is not always of the ſame force, but more or leſs venemous according to the Seaſon of the Year, for the hotter the Weather, the more poyſonous they are, eſpecially in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. In *Winter* they never appear, but lie hid in ſome ſecret Places in the Earth, as all the other Snakes do, not being able to endure

endure the cold Weather; for you ſhall ſee ſeveral ſorts of them lying dead, at the approach of the Winter, not being able to reach or crawl into their Holes. Neither can we ſuppoſe that they can renew their Poiſon as ſoon, or as often as they pleaſe, for we have known Inſtances to the contrary of two that were bit in the Leg by one *Rattle-Snake*, as they were travelling in the Woods. The firſt was very painful ſome Days, not having an opportunity to get the Rattle-Snake Root, in ſome Hours after he was bit. The other received no more harm by that Bite than if he had been bit by a *Mouſe*, or any other Creature not venemous; ſo that we may reaſonably conjecture from this Obſervation, that their Poyſon is not always of the ſame efficacy. I enquired of the firſt Perſon, what he felt when the Snake firſt bit him; he ſaid, it ſeemed as if a flaſh of Fire had run through his Body. The *Indians* frequently pull out their Teeth, ſo that they never afterwards can do any Miſchief by biting; this may be eaſily done, by tying a bit of red Woollen Cloth to the upper end of a long hollow Cane, and ſo provoking the *Rattle-ſnake* to bite, and ſuddenly pulling it away from him, by which means the Teeth ſtick faſt in the Cloath, which are plainly to be ſeen by thoſe preſent. They have two Noſtrils on each ſide of their Noſe, which is not common in many of the other ſorts of Snakes. They are ſo venemous that they frequently bite and poyſon themſelves: For, oftentimes when we have found out where they are (which is eaſily known by their continual Rattling with their Tails, which they ſhake and ſhiver with wonderful nimbleneſs when they are any way diſturbed) we cut down long Poles or Reeds and make the tops thereof ſharp, wherewith we tickle their ſides, and provoke them, that at length they become ſo enraged, they bite themſelves, and dye in a ſhort time.

I hope it will not be unpleaſing to the Reader to inſert the following Account in relation to a *Rattle-ſnake* and a Dog, as it happened during my reſidence there, *viz.* A Planter having taken a *Rattle-ſnake* in a Nooſe, put it into a Barrel, and brought it to *Edentown*, and told the Inhabitants, that if they would make him drink, he would ſhew them ſome Diverſion; that he had a living *Rattle-ſnake*, and a Dog that would fight it, who had killed ſeveral in his time; the propoſal was readily conſented to by all that were preſent. The Planter immediately turned out the Snake (which was very large) whilſt another held the Dog, as we generally do our Bull-Dogs. A large Ring was inſtantly made, and every one cry'd out for *fair Play, viz.* That the Snake ſhould have time to gather itſelf into a Quoil, or poſture of Defence, which it very quickly did, and immediately began to Rattle it's Tail: Every thing being ready, the Dog was let looſe, and attacked the Snake; his uſual way of killing them, was, to ſhake them at full length out of their Quoil, in which Poſture they can neither leap nor bite; but this Snake being ſo large, the Dog had not ſtrength enough to do it. In the firſt encounter he only bit it, which the Snake as readily returned, biting the Dog by the Ear, which made him cry and quit his hold, and ſeemed to be ſtun'd, or like one in a Megrim. But the Company encouraged the Dog, and ſet him on again: In the ſecond encounter it bit the Dog by the Lip, and immediately after bit itſelf, the Dog in a little time began to cry and reel about as if drunk or in a Megrim, grew regardleſs of his Maſter's calling him, and in half an Hour dyed, and the Snake in about a Quarter. I had not related this, had I not been an Eye-witneſs to the whole proceeding. The Poyſon both of Viper and Mad-dog (I conceive

ceive) kill, by thickning of the Blood after the manner that Runnet congeals Milk when they make Cheese.

These Snakes cast their Skins every Year, and commonly remain near the Place where the old Skin lies, these cast Skins are frequently pulverised, and given with good success in Fevers, so is the Gall mixed with Clay, made up in Pills, and given in pestilential Fevers and the Small Pox, for which it is accounted a noble Remedy, and a great Arcanum, which only some few pretend to know, and to have had the first Knowledge and Experience of for many Years; so are the Rattles good to expediate the Birth, and no doubt but it has all those excellent Virtues that the *Viper* is indued with.

The *Ground Rattle-snake*, but why so improperly called, I know no Reason for, because it has no Rattles, and only resembles the *Rattle-snake* a little in colour, but is darker, and not so large, seldom exceeding a Foot or sixteen Inches in length, and is reckoned one of the most poysonous and worst of Snakes, and is said to be the latest Snake we have that returns to it's Hole in the fall of the Leaf. It's Uses and Virtues are unknown to any in these Parts, except the *Indians*.

The *Horn-snakes*, so called, from a Horn growing in their Tail like a Cock's Spur, with which they strike and kill whatever they wound with it, except a speedy Remedy be applied. They are like the *Rattle-snake* in colour, but a little lighter. They hiss exactly like a Goose when any thing approaches them. This Horn in their Tail is all the Weapon they have with which they strike and destroy their Enemy, for they never bite as the *Rattle-snake* and other Snakes do. They give warning to such as approach their Danger by Hissing. They are a very venemous Snake, hardly admitting of a cure from the *Indians*; yet the most effectual Method to per-

fect this Cure is by the *Rattle-ſnake* Root, cupping Glaſſes and Scarification, or cutting off the Fleſh to the Bone, and laſtly by Amputation of the Parts. Theſe Snakes are near as long as the *Rattle-ſnake*, but are not plenty in this Province, and I have been credibly informed by ſeveral of the Planters, that they have ſeen them ſtrike their Horns into Trees, and particularly into the *Pine* and *Locuſt*, which in a few Hours decayed and died, though before that it was in it's full Bloom. But be that as it will, I am certain of this, that it is a dangerous Snake, and it's Wounds very difficult and tedious to be cured.

The *Water-ſnakes*, whereof there are four ſorts. The firſt is of the Horn-ſnake Colour, but not ſo large, and is as poyſonous as any of the other ſorts. The ſecond is a long Snake, and differs from the other in colour, being more dark. Theſe Snakes will frequently ſwim over large Rivers, and often hang upon the Boughs of Birch, and ſeveral other Trees by the Water ſide, and ſometimes drop into the Cannoes as they are paſſing by, they are alſo very poyſonous. The third is of an *Engliſh Adder* colour, but always frequents the Salts, and lies generally under the drift Sea-weed, where they are in abundance, and are accounted very miſchievous when they bite. The fourth is of a ſooty black Colour, and frequents Ponds and Ditches, and is as Poyſonous as any of the former. When theſe Snakes bite (if a Remedy be not ſpeedily applied) there enſueth great Pain, Inflammation, blackneſs in the Wound, the Vertigo, and Death within three Days; for the Poyſon is ſo malignant, that it forthwith diſperſes through the whole Body, which when it comes to the Heart, the Creature immediately falls down dead. Theſe and all the other Snakes lay Eggs, except the *Viper*. The Cure for the bite of

theſe

these, is much the same with that of the Horn-snake, and their Virtues and Uses the same with the *Viper*.

The *Swamp-snakes*, whereof there are three sorts, and are very like the Water-snakes, and may properly be ranked amongst them. The first is of a dirt Brown colour on his Back, and the Belly is of a Carnation or Pink colour, and is large, but not venemous. The second is large, and the back is of the colour of the former, but the Belly is of a tawny and light Copper colour, beautifully mottled; these always abide in Swamps and Marshes, and are poysonous. The third is mottled, with a dark brown Colour on the Back, and the Belly of a livid and Orange colour. They are very poysonous, and remain likewise in Swamps and Ponds, and have prodigious wide Mouths, they are commonly as thick as the Calf of a Man's Leg, though they are not very long, they feed on Water-rats, Mice, and several sorts of Insects. The cure of these is much the same with the former, and may indifferently be used after the same manner.

The *Red-back Snakes* (so called from their Red-backs) are long slender Snakes, they are rare to be met with, and are very poysonous; it is reported that the *Indians* themselves cannot cure the venemous bite of them: I never knew any one bit by them, and I saw but one during my abode in those Parts.

The *Vipers* whereof there are two sorts. The first is of a grayish colour like the *Italian Viper*, the other black and short. Both these sorts are venemous, and spread their Heads flat when they are provoked. They lie hid in the Ground all the Winter Season, and are generally about a Foot and a half, or two Feet in Length. Their Heads are very broad compared with the Body, and the Neck much narrower than the Head. Their tails are small

ſmall ſharp, and curled at the end. The Teeth upon the upper Chop are very long and crooked like a *Sickle*, and upon either ſide it hath four; thoſe upon the lower Chop, are ſo ſmall that they can ſcarce be obſerved by the naked Eye, neither can the length of the Teeth be ſeen except you take away the little Bladder in which they lie concealed, in this Bladder it carries Poyſon, which it infuſeth into the Wounds it makes with its Teeth. The Scales of a *Viper* are more ſharp than a *Snake's*; it lies for the moſt part Quoiled up like a *Rattle-Snake*. In the *Viper* there is nothing venemous but the Head and Gall, which are caſt away as uſeleſs. It is a ſharp ſighted, crafty, and venemous Creature, biting thoſe that ſuddenly paſs by it. The *Viper* is ſaid to conceive Eggs within her, which ſhe does not lay after the manner of other Serpents; but in her Body they are hatched into living *Vipers*. For as *Pliny* reporteth, that of all Creatures that want Hair, the *Viper* and the *Dolphin* only bring forth their Young with Life. It is likewiſe reported, that after they have ingendered, the Female deſtroys the Male, and feeds on him; and that the Young Ones eat their way out of their Female's Belly, when ſhe is ready to bring them forth, and feed on her 'till they are able to fend for themſelves. But how true this may be, I will not take upon me to determine; but this I am certain of, that I have killed ſeveral of them and after having opened them, have found fifteen or more young ones alive in the Female's Belly. The biting of the *Viper* is mortal, and kills within three Days at tartheſt, if not ſpeedily cured; the Poyſon is univerſal, as if the Body were ſet on Fire with violent Convulſions, Weakneſs, cold Sweats, Vomiting, and then Death. At firſt the Poyſon may be ſucked out by applying the *Anus* of a Hen to the part after Scarification, or elſe a Plaſter

of

of *Garlick*, *Onions*, and *Venice-Treacle*, drinking *French Wine*, *Garlick Broth*, with *Mithridate*, *Bazoar-mineral*, *Myrrh*, and the *Rattle-ſnake* Root. The Virtues of the *Vipers* are ſo well known, that it would be needleſs to trouble the Reader with them, only that they are more valuable than any of the other Snakes.

The *Red-belly-ſnakes*, theſe frequent the Land, and are ſo called, from their Red-bellies, which inclines to an Orange colour: They are not very venemous, for I have known ſeveral Perſons bit by them, ſome whereof were not much hurt, and others have ſuffered much by them. But I am perſwaded that there are two different ſorts of theſe Snakes, but ſo like each other, that there has been no difference made between them at preſent; otherwiſe their bites would not produce ſuch contrary effects, as they are known to do.

The *Chicken-ſnake*, or *Egg-ſnake*, ſo called, from it's frequenting about Hen-yards, and devouring Eggs and Chickens. They are commonly of a dusky ſoot colour, though I have ſeen ſome of them dark, yellow, and mottled. They are about four Foot long, and the thickneſs of a Man's Wriſt, they frequently climb up large Pine Trees, will rowl themſelves round, and ſtick to the ſide of it, where there ſeems to be no manner of hold, above twenty or thirty Feet high; there ſun themſelves, and ſleep in the heat of the Day. I cannot find that they are venemous, but are miſchievous about Houſes, and will imitate exactly the call and cry of Chickens, and allure and decoy them, which they will quickly ſeize and ſwallow.

The *Brimſtone-ſnake*, ſo called, from it's being almoſt of that colour. They might as well hvae called it, the Glaſs, or brittle-Snake, for it is as brittle as Glaſs, or a Tobacco-Pipe, for give it the leaſt touch with a ſmall Twig,

Twig it immediately breaks, or rather disjoynts into ſeveral pieces; and ſeveral in theſe parts confidently affirm, that if they remain in the ſame place untouch'd, they will joyn together again. What harm there may be in this brittle-ware, I cannot tell, for I never knew any Perſon hurt by them.

The *King-ſnake* is the longeſt of all other Snakes in theſe parts, but are not common; the *Indians* make Girdles and Saſhes of their Skins, and it is reported by them, that they are not very venemous, and that no other Snake will meddle with them, which I ſuppoſe is the Reaſon that they are ſo fond of wearing their Skins about their Bodies as they do.

The *Corn-ſnake*, ſo called, from it's being met with in Corn-fields, and ſcarce any where elſe. They are not venemous, neither do they gather themſelves into a Quoil like the Viper or Rattle-ſnake. They are near a Yard long, and of a Brown colour, mixt with Tawny.

The *Green-ſnakes* are very ſmall, and are ſo called, from their beautiful green Colour (if any Beauty may be allowed to Snakes) the Planters make themſelves very familiar with them, and will frequently put them in their Boſoms, without any dread or fear, becauſe there is no manner of harm in them.

The *Black-truncheon-ſnake* might have very well been numbered amongſt the Water-ſnakes: they are ſo called, from their ſhape, being the thickeſt and ſhorteſt kind of Snakes I ever ſaw; they lie on the Banks, and at the Roots of Trees by the Water ſides, and when any thing diſturbs them, they dart themſelves into the Salt-water like an Arrow out of a Bow. What good or harm there is in them I know not, ſome of theſe Water-ſnakes will ſwallow a black-land Snake, half as long again as themſelves, as I obſerved in one of them that I ſhot.

The

The long *Black-ſnake* is very common, and generally ſix Feet in length, it frequents the Land altogether, and is the nimbleſt Creature living, it has no manner of Venom in it's bite, but the part ſometimes ſwells and turns to a running Sore. Theſe Snakes are the beſt Mouſers that can be, for wherever they frequent, they deſtroy *Lizards*, *Frogs*, *Rats* and *Mice*, leaving not one of thoſe Vermine alive, They are very miſchievous about Dairies and amongſt Eggs, skimming the Cream of the former, and ſwallowing the latter. They will ſometimes ſwallow all the Eggs from under the Hen that ſits, and Quoil themſelves under her in the Neſt, where they are often found by the Houſe-wife: They kill the *Rattle-ſnake* where-ever they find him, by twiſting their Head about his Neck, and ſo whip him to death with their Tails; and notwithſtanding the Agility of this Snake, yet it is ſo brittle, that when it is purſued, and gets it's Head into the hole of a Tree or Wall, if any one gets hold of it at the other end, it will twiſt it ſelf in pieces. One of theſe Snakes, whoſe Neck ſeems to be no thicker than a Woman's little Finger, will ſwallow a *Squirrel* or *Rat*, which I have taken out of their Bellies; ſo much does that part ſtretch in all thoſe Creatures. It likewiſe feeds on ſmall Inſects and Flies, taking them betwixt the forks of its Tongue.

The *Eel-ſnake*, though improperly ſo called, becauſe it is nothing but a kind of *Leech* that ſucks and cannot bite, as other Snakes do, but is very large, being commonly eighteen or ninteen Inches long, and has all the Properties that other *Leeches* have, and lives in Ponds as they do. There is likewiſe a *Leech* in this Province, of the ſame bigneſs of thoſe with us in *Europe*.

Having given as large an Account as is yet known of the *Snakes* in theſe Parts; I will in the next Place proceed

ceed to treat of ſome of the ſmaller Reptiles or Inſects that are moſt remarkable, and to be met with in this Country; but to give a large Deſcription of all the different Species that this Country produces, would require too large a Volum, which is not my intention at preſent. Beſides the *Indians* give us many ſtrange and uncouth Names for various kinds of Beaſts, Birds, Fiſhes, Snakes, and Inſects, that we are intire Strangers to; for the greateſt part of this ſpacious and large Country lies waſte at preſent, and undoubtedly there will be many curious and conſiderable Diſcoveries made, when once this Country is well ſettled and inhabited by the Chriſtians, for the Indians whilſt they remain in their Idolatrous Practices, never will be brought over to cultivate this rich and noble Country, or even to make Diſcoveries of what they know of it already. But to proceed to the *Reptiles* and *Inſects*.

The *Bees* are in great Plenty, not only in Hives, in the Planter's Gardens, but are likewiſe to be met with in ſeveral parts of the Woods in hollow Trees, wherein are frequently found vaſt quantities of Honey, and Wax. The Uſes and Profits of theſe noble Inſects, are ſo well kuown amongs us in *Europe*, that it would be needleſs to trouble the Reader about them. Their *Bee-hives* are generally made of ſome piece of hollow Tree, and eſpecially the ſweet Gum Tree, which they cut at proper lengths for that purpoſe, with a Board at the top for a Covering; theſe are all the ſorts of *Bee-hives* made uſe of in this Country, ſome whereof are larger than our Barrel. The *Humble-bees* are of the ſame ſort in this Province as thoſe with us in *Ireland*, and other parts of *Europe*.

The

The *Silk-worms*: In ſeveral of our Journies in this Province, we found great numbers of them, with quantities of Silk as large as our ordinary *Wall-nut*. And no doubt theſe profitable *Inſects* might be brought to great Perfection in *Carolina*. as in any part of *Europe*, if the ſame Care were taken there as is in *France*, *Spain*, and many other Places, ſince this Country doth naturally produces them. In proceſs of time, they leave off Spinning, and receive Wings like *Butter-flies*, and after three or four Days Copulation, the Male preſently dies, and the Female having lay'd many Eggs, dies alſo. The whole Worms dried, powder'd, and laid to the Crown of the Head, are good in *Megrims*, *Virtigoes* and *Convulſions*, and the Aſhes of the Silk cleanſeth Wounds, *&c.*

The *Butter-flies* are produced from ſmall Eggs as the *Silk-worms* are, and are very plenty all over this Province, and of ſeveral ſorts: ſome large, and others ſmall, and moſt beautifully Mottled with variety of fine Colours. They generate in *May*, *June*, and *July*, and lay vaſt quantities of Eggs in the Seaſon, from whence they are produced. There are ſome of them larger in this Province than any I have met with in *Europe*, for you ſhall frequently ſee them chace the *Humming-birds* away from the Flowers on which they feed. It is a long lived Inſect, after the Head is off; for I pulled off the Head from one of them in the middle of *Summer*, that lived above thirty five Days, and could flie all that time. This any one that pleaſes may try and prove the Truth of it. The Powder of theſe Inſects taken inwardly, provokes Urine, and have much the ſame Virtues with the *Silk-worm*.

The *Graſs-hoppers* are very plenty. whereof there are two Sorts; the firſt are of a much larger ſize than

any I have met with in *Europe*. The ſecond are much of the ſame bigneſs as thoſe with us. Both theſe ſorts ſeem to be more lazy and dull Inſects than thoſe in *Europe*, for they are ſeldom heard ſinging, but commonly are groveling in the Duſt. They are likewiſe bad ſighted, for they will ſcarce ſtir 'till you almoſt tread upon them. Of all Creatures that are known to live, the *Graſs-hoppers* alone have no Mouth, only a ſharp Pipe in their Breaſts, wherewith they ſuck in the Dew, on which they live. Their Breaſts are full of ſmall ſharp Pipes, with which they make that ringing Noiſe we hear, and their Bellies, for the moſt part, are found empty. They engender with their Bellies upward, and have a roughneſs on their Backs, which is ſharp, and it is with this that they make Holes in the Earth, where they lay their Eggs, and breed. When theſe Eggs are hatched (which is by the heat of the Sun) there appear firſt little Worms or Maggots, which in proceſs of time become *Graſs-hoppers*. The Males are only ſaid to ſing, and the Females to be always ſilent. They are never to be met in theſe parts in the *Winter* Seaſon. The Powder of them dried and given with Pepper, helps the Cholick, difficulty of Urine, and the Aſhes with *Rheniſh* Wine the Gravel.

Sows, or *Hog-lice*, breed in moſt places, eſpecially under Stones and rotten Wood, whereof there are two ſorts in this Province, but not ſo plenty as with us, by reaſon that the *Wood-peckers*, and ſeveral other Birds and Creatures continually devour them. When they are touched, they gather themſelves up as round as a Pea. The whole Inſect is thin, and of volatile Parts, digeſting, cleanſing, opening, and a great diſolver of all tartarous Matter, therefore good in all Obſtructions, Jaundice, Cholick, King's Evil, old ſordid and rebellious Ulcers, Convulſions,

Convulſions, Stone and Gravel, Rickets in Children, dimneſs of Sight, *French* Pox, and many other ſtubborn and lingring Diſorders.

The *Fire-fly*. (I would not have the Readers be miſtaken, and take theſe Inſects for the *Pyrales* or *Fire-flies* that are repreſented by *Pliny* in his *Natural Hiſtory*, as bred and living in the Fire.) Theſe live in the open Air, and are ſo called, from their appearing at Night like ſo many ſhining Sparks of Fire. They are as long as the Drones amongſt the *Bees*, but much thicker, and are of a browniſh colour. Their Light is under their Wings, which appears frightful to Strangers at firſt ſight, although they have no manner of harm in them. I have frequently taken them and broke off their Wings, that they could not fly away, and placed them on a Book in a dark Room, and whatever way they went, I could plainly ſee and diſtinguiſh each Letter. They appear in *May*, and remain moſt part of the *Summer*, and are at ſometimes in ſuch plenty, that the Woods ſeem to be altogether Sparks of Fire; they are never to be ſeen in the Day, but fly all the Night. What Virtues they may be indued with, are uncertain; for I never knew any uſe made of them in this Country.

The *Crickets* are winged Inſects like the *Locuſts*, or *Graſs-hoppers*, and are plentifully to be met with in this Province. They ſeldom frequent the dwelling Houſes as thoſe with us in *Ireland* do, but are often heard and ſeen in the Woods and Corn-fields (eſpecially in the *Summer*) where they Sing almoſt continually, in *Winter* they approach near the Houſes and other warm places, they are very miſchievous, for they frequently cut large holes in Linnen and Woollen, and are likewiſe great devourers of Corn and all kinds of grain. The Powder of them is ſaid to provoke *Urine*, and ſtrengthen the

the Sight, their Juice has the same effect, and their Ashes excellent against *Fluxes* and the *Gravel.*

The *Lady Bird* is a beautiful small Insect (with red Wings and black spots thereon) which the Children in *Ireland* frequently play with; it is to be met with in *Carolina* in the *Summer* time, and is a wonderful Cordial, curing all Fevers how poysonous or malignant soever, by its sudorifick quality. The Powder of its Body is of a deep Purple colour, and emits its Tincture into Water and Spirits of Wine, being not inferior to Saffron.

The *Cantharides* or *Spanish-flies*, are here likewise to be met with in the *Summer* time. These Insects are produced from small Worms like the *Catter-pliar* in *Fig*-Trees *Pear*-Trees, Wild-*Pines* or *Pitch*-Trees and the Eglantine-*Brier*: Their uses and virtues are so well known, that it wou'd be needless to trouble the reader about them.

The *Pismire* or *Ant*, is a small, but industrious and wise insect, gathering its food in the *Summer* in the full Moons and resting in the new ones: They are like a common wealth, and gather Corn for their Winter provisions, which they dry and bite at both ends that it may not grow: They wear away Stones by their assiduity and make beaten Road ways; they help one another in drawing their Burthens; dam out Water and bury their Dead. The greater lead the way, and lesser drag the Corn; and when dirty, they cleanse themselves before they enter into their habitations: They teach their young to Labour, but expel the Idle, and when they carry their grain, it is said to be a sign of fowl Weather. They cast up the Earth over the Mouths of their Caves (that the Water may not enter in) wherein they have three Cells; in the one they live, in another they breed and bury their Dead, and in the third they keep their Corn. They generate in *Winter*, and bring forth Eggs, which

which in Spring are *Ants*; when old they grow winged, then ſuddenly after die. The *Ants* are of a hot and dry Nature, excite luſt, and wonderfully refreſh the Spirits, their Eggs help deafneſs, and many other excellent virtues are atributed to them.

The *Spider* is a poyſonous Inſect, which hurts by ſtinging. There are divers ſorts of theſe Inſects in *America*, but the moſt remarkable is the *Mountain-Spider*, ſo called, for its being found commonly in the Woods near the Mountains, and ſcarce any where elſe. It is the moſt poyſonous and largeſt of all *Spiders* that are yet known in *America*. Several ſorts of theſe *Spiders* make their Webs or nets ſo ſtrong that they often take ſmall Birds in them. Thoſe that have the Misfortune to be ſtung by theſe inſects, are afflicted with different diſorders, according to the Nature of the Spiders, which have communicated the poyſon. For you ſhall ſometime find them afflicted with violent pains at the heart, ſhortneſs of Breath, heats and colds all over the Body, tumors, Inflammations, tremblings, cold ſweats, vomiting, ſinging, laughing, talking, ſleeping, ſtarting, and ſometimes fear, frenzy, and madneſs, with many other griveous ſymptoms, which often end in Death, without a ſpeedy remedy be applied. The cure is done by bathing with decoction of ſtinking Trefoil and Oil; fomenting the part with Spunges dipt in Vinegar, by application of the mullet, lees of Wine and Juice of Ivy; giving inwardly an electuary made of *Tamarisk*, *Mithridate*, and ſometimes *Muſick*. The Indians cure it by ſucking the part with their Mouths, and continually ſpitting out the venom. Theſe Inſects being made into a Plaſter and applied to the wriſts and Temples, cure Agues.

The *Ear-wig* is to be met with in this Province in the *Summer* time, and is the ſame as in *Europe*; theſe Inſects being

being boiled in Oil and applied to the Arteries of the Temples and Wrists, are said to cure Convulsions, by causing a Fever. Their Powder mixt with Hare's piss, and so put into the Ears Evening and Morning, cure Deafeness.

The common *Small-black-flies* are plenty in these parts, and are more troublesome here than in *France* or *Spain*, especially about the Legs, and no where else, for they will pierce through a pair of Stockings, and bite like the *Clegs* or *Gad-flies* in *Ireland*

The large *Black-mackrel-flies* are also plenty, especially in the *Summer* time, and are the same as those with us in *Europe*. The powder of these Insects and their Juice cures Baldness.

The *Ox*, or *Gad-flies*, are so called, from their tormenting the Cattle in the *Summer* time; they are of various colours, but mostly yellow and green, and are plenty in this Province in the Months of *July* and *August*, at which time they are troublesome to Horses, especially about the Ears and head, and no where else; for which reason you shall see those that ride in the Woods, fix green boughs on the Horses heads, to defend them from these mischievous Insects.

The *Moth* is there likewise, and differs in nothing from those in *Europe*, being as mischievous and destructive to Woollen Cloths and Books as those with us. An Oil made of them is said to cure Deafness, Warts, and the Leprosy, and being mixed with Tar, to be good in all sorts of rebellious Ulcers, Botches, Scabs, Whittles, *&c.*

The *Weevil*, is a little small Worm, not much bigger than a *Mite*, and is very distructive to Trees, but more especially to Corn, for I have seen Barrels full of *Indian* Wheat or *Maiz* intirely ruined by these Insects, when there has not proper care been taken, to prevent their doing

doing miſchief. They never meddle with any grain (expoſed in the weather) but when it is put up in cloſe places, ſuch as barrels and the like, yet this may be eaſily remedied by ſhaking a little Salt at the bottom and top of thoſe veſſels the Corn is in.

The *Chinch Wall-louſe*, or *Buggs*; theſe are flat, red, and in ſhape and bigneſs like the *Sheep-louſe*, they have an offenſive ſmell when they are killed, they haunt Beds, ſuck Men's Blood very greedily, eſpecially about the Neck and Face, which in many appeareth for a Day or two, as if ſtung with Nettles, and are as numerous in this Province as in *France* or *Spain*. *Pliny* ſaith, they are good againſt all Poyſons and biting of *Serpents*. *Marcellus* ſaith, that the Powder of them cures all Fevers, their Scent, the Fits of the Mother, and that they are ſucceſsful to force away the Birth, and After-birth.

The *Cock-roch*, is a kind of *Beetle*, ſomething larger than a *Cricket*, and of a dark brown Colour; they frequent the Houſes, and are very miſchievous among Books and Linnen, by eating innumerable Holes in them, if there be not care taken to ſweep and keep thoſe places clean where thoſe things are laid up. When they are killed, they ſtink like *Buggs*; their Uſes in Phyſick are uncertain.

The *Tumble-turds*, are a Species of the *Beetles*, and ſo called, from their conſtant rowling the Horſe-dung (whereon they feed) from one place to another, 'till it is no bigger than a ſmall Bullet. They are one of the ſtrongeſt Inſects, of the ſame Size I have ever ſeen; they frequently fly into Houſes, and I have ſeen one of them move a Braſs Candleſtick from one place to another upon a Table, which ſeem'd very ſtrange to me at firſt; for not long after my arrival, being one Night at a Planter's Houſe, who had ſecretly conveyed two of

Insects under two different Candle-sticks; amongst other Discourses, he told me, he would make the Candle-sticks move about the Table by a certain Spell, as he pretended: He had all this time kept the Candle-sticks in his Hands on the Table. I was very desirous to see this performance; he immediately takes his Hands from the Candle-sticks, and struck three times under the Table, and seemed to mutter some few Words (as Juglers are known to do) which he had no sooner ended, but the Candlesticks began to move backwards and forwards, to my great surprize, for I could imagine nothing else but that it had been some secret Charm he had got from the *Indians*, who are great Conjurers. After the Company had sufficiently diverted themselves at my surprize, and how desirous I was to have this Charm communicated to me, one of the Company takes up the Candlesticks, and discovers these Insects, which are of the same Shape, but something larger than the common *Beetles*, that are to be met with in *Ireland*, which feed on the Cow-dung, and make Holes in the Ground. There are several other different Species of *Beetles* here, but none so remarkable as these, or so beautiful, with variety of Colours, such as Red, Green, Black, Yellow, *&c.* (except the *Horned-Beetle*, *Bull-Fly*, or *Flying-stag*.) These *Beetles* seem to be infected with little small Insects of a light brownish Colour, which are commonly called the Lice of the *Beetles*. Their Powder is used against the falling out of the Fundament, to expel Urine, and cure the bite of a Mad-dog. The Juice cures Wounds, and in Plasters Buboes, and pestilential Carbuncles.

The *Muskeetoes* (in the *Indian* Language called *Toquani*) whereof there are two sorts. The first is small, but pernicious and troublesome, of a dark colour, and are so mischievous, and plentiful in some places on this Continent

Continent (and especially on the Marshes and low Grounds) that scarce any one can live there, except the *Indians*, whom they do not bite or molest; this I am perswaded is owing in a great measure to their so frequently anointing themselves with *Bear's-grease*, and many other Ointments, which they make and daub their Bodies with.

The second sort are exactly the same in shape and size with the former, but are of a whitish Colour; these are not troublesome to the Inhabitants, neither do they bite like the former, they are generally brought here by Southerly Winds in *July* and *August*, in such vast quantities, that it is strange to behold them, they either die suddenly, or are carried away with the Winds, shifting from the South. What Virtues they may be indued with is uncertain.

The *Muskeetoe-Hawks*, are Insects, so called, from their continually hunting after *Muskeetoes*, and killing and eating them; they are a large Flie, with a long Body, great Head, and Wings, resembling the *Dragon-flie*, whereof they are a Species. They are very plenty all over this Province, especially in the latter end of *Summer*. They seldom appear in the Day-time, but hunt the *Muskeetoes* all night long. I know no other use they are good for than in destroying those Insects, so pernicious and mischievous to Mankind; so that the Planters seldom kill them.

The *Horned Beetle*, *Bull-flie*, or *Stag*, are to be met with in several parts of *Carolina*. These Insects have no Stings, but a large pair of Horns on their Head, exactly resembling the Horns of a *Deer*, for which reason they are called the *Flying-stag*, these Horns they can at pleasure bring together and bite withal. These *Beetles* are hung as an *Amulet* about Children's Necks for several Disorders.

The *Sand flie*, ſo called, from their breeding, and always being found in the Sand-banks, and near the Rivers, they are very ſmall, not much larger than a *Gnat*, and are almoſt as pernicious and troubleſom as the *Muskeetoes*, eſpecially about the Face and no where elſe.

The *Waſps* are very plenty in this Province, they build their Neſts in Trees, the ſubſtance whereof ſeems like Cob-webs, or a kind of brown Paper, and it is ſaid they ingender in *Autumn*, but never in the *Spring*, and are bred out of the ſofter parts of Horſe-fleſh, they live upon Fleſh, and ſeveral ſorts of Inſects, which they hunt after and kill for their Proviſions. The *Waſps*, like many other Inſects, are not to be ſeen all the *Winter*, but lie in Holes or hollow Trees all that Seaſon, and they live not above two Years. They ſeldom are miſchievous, or do any harm, except you provoke them, or approach too near their Neſts, which the Planters frequently ſet fire to, by ſhooting at them with Gun-powder. (This is commonly done late in the Evening, or early in the Morning) and then they run away as faſt as poſſibly they can, to avoid being ſtung, for when they are provoked, they will purſue in great Numbers thoſe that have moleſted them. Their Sting is worſe than that of the *Bees*, and is cured by application of *Cow-dung* mixed with *Barly-meal*, or *Leaven* mixed with *Oil* and *Vinegar*. The Powder of them is good to open Obſtructions of the Reins and Bladder, ſome uſe them in all Caſes where *Sows* or *Hog-lice* are uſed, and with the ſame ſucceſs.

The *Hornets* are in great plenty in this Province; they build their Neſts in Caves and Holes in the Earth, much like the former, and are ſaid to be produced out of the harder parts of Horſe-fleſh, as the other is out of the ſofter. Their Decoction, or diſtilled Water, if touched on the Skin, makes the place ſwell as if there was a *Dropſie*,

ſie, or the Parts had been poyſoned, yet without pain. The Cure for this, and their Sting is *Venice-treacle* taken inwardly, and applying outwardly *Cow-dung*, *faſting Spittle*, *Barley-meal*, *Oil* and *Vinegar*, &c.

The *Labourers*, are a Specie of *Hornets*, and are ſo called, from the pains and labour which they take in building their Neſts with a kind of yellow Clay, they make Rooms or Cells wherein they breed their young, which is wrought ſo cloſe, and after ſuch a manner, that it is hard to break it when dry, to get the young ones out. They are near as large as a *Hornet*, and of the ſame ſhape and colour, they have long Legs, and always breed their young ones in the *Summer* time. They are more mild than the *Hornets*, and ſeldom or never ſting; I have often obſerved theſe Flies to ſcrape the Sand by the River ſides and moiſt places, where they make deep Holes and are buried under Ground before they can come at the yellow Clay. Some of them have Stings, yet they do little harm, only they are very troubleſome in the Houſes by fixing the Clay to the Cieling, if there is not proper Care taken to prevent them. Their uſes in Phyſick are unknown.

The *Fleas* are very plenty in ſome parts of this Province, eſpecially in thoſe places where the *Indians* dreſs their Deer Skins, they have no Phyſical Virtues yet known, but are certainly moſt troubleſome Gueſts. They are generated by Duſt, as alſo of putrified Sweat, and are deſtroyed by Decoctions made of *Coloquintida*.

The *Louſe* is not plenty in this Province. They are eaten by Ruſticks for the *Jaundice*, and *Conſumption*, and to provoke *Urine*.

The *Tick* is a filthy Creature, or kind of *Louſe* that troubles *Oxen*, *Horſes*, *Deer*, *Goats*, *Sheep*, *Dogs*, and ſometimes Men. Theſe Vermine are plenty in this Country, whereof

whereof there are two Sorts, *viz.* the *Dog*, or *large Tick*, and the *ſmall* or *Sea Tick*.

The large or *Dog tick*, is the ſame as with us in *Ireland*, only it has a brown Spot on the Back, which diſappears as it grows large. It's Food is the Blood of ſeveral Animals, which it moſt greedily ſucks, yet it hath no paſſage to void the excrements by, and generally ſucks till it falls of, being ſo full, and in proceſs of time burſts and dies. The juice of the *Dog-tick* is a Depilatory, kills Ring-Worms, the Eryſipelas, and Itch. Theſe vermine are deſtroy'd by the Powder or decoction of *Coloquintida*.

The Sea *Ticks* are ſo call'd from their being ſo plentiful in the marſhes on the water ſides, they are ſo ſmall that they are ſcarce as large as a ſmall pins head, and are very troubleſome to thoſe that travel in the Woods and near the ſides of the Rivers, for they ſtick ſo faſt in the Skin, that it is impoſſible to pluck them out, and are apt to occaſion Inflammations, Fevers, or inveterate Sores, by ſcratching the part: And notwithſtanding they are ſo troubleſome, yet they are eaſily deſtroyed by waſhing the parts in the Rivers, or by a decoction of the leaves of *Tobacco* or *Coloquintida*. Thoſe that travel the Woods in their Boots are never peſter'd with theſe vermine, or if they anoint their limbs with Bears-greaſe, as the *Indians* do, who are never troubled with them. They ſeldom appear till the Month of *May*, and continue till *Auguſt*; and are ſuppoſed to be the ſpawn of the former, which I am apt to believe, for I have frequently found the large *Ticks* (after they have burſted) with vaſt quantites of young ones in them.

The *Locuſt*, is an Inſect or fly with a head like a Horſe, ſix Legs and as many Wings, and are of divers colours. They lay Eggs in *Autumn*, which lie all *Winter* in the Ground,

Ground, but in the latter end of *Spring* they are hatched, and in *Summer* become *Locuſts*. Theſe Inſects burn Corn, Graſs, and moſt kind of plants by touching, and devour the reſidue; and it is reported that in *India*, there be of them three Foot in length, which the People of that Country do eat and uſe their Legs and thighs for Saws when they are throughly dry: St. *John* the *Baptiſt* fed upon them in the Wilderneſs. They are often carried over great Seas, and continue their flight for ſeveral Days together, in ſuch vaſt Numbers that they are ſaid to darken the very *Sun* as they flie, and to be certain prognoſtications of a Plague or famine, in whatever Country they ſettle, and burn and deſtroy every thing before them, and 'tis likewiſe ſaid, that they will kill *Serpents*; yet theſe pernicious and diſtructive Inſects are not very common in *Carolina*. Their Eggs given in *Rheniſh* Wine, help the Dropſie, and the fume of the fly helps ſtoppage of Urine in Women.

The *Caterpillar*, *Palmer* or *Canker-worm*, is the ſame in *Carolina* as is to be met with in *Ireland*, and many other parts of *Europe*. Theſe Inſects are very deſtructive to Herbs and Corn, if there be not care taken to prevent them, which is done by the fume of Brimſtone. They change like *Silk-worms*, and in proceſs of time become *Butter-flies*. Their Aſhes put into the Noſtrils, ſtop Bleeding. A powder made of them is ſaid to be good in the Epilepſy, and their Web is ſaid to ſtop the Flux of Women's courſes.

The *Gally-worm* is a ſhort kind of *Scolopender*, exceeding in Number of Feet all other Inſects. Some of them are ſmooth, others hairy all over, they are about the thickneſs of a Man's little Finger, and near two Inches long. They are not plenty in this Province, having ſeveral enemies that deſtroy them. Their Aſhes wonderfully

fully provoke Urine, the Blood with the Juice of *Hog-lice*, take away white Spots in the Eye.

The *Tobacco-worm*; I am not certain whether it is call'd by any other Name, but I have call'd it so from its feeding on the Tobacco-Leaves, it is exactly shaped like the *Gally-worm*, but is something larger, and not hairy, and has two sharp horns on its Head, the Body is white and Black, with as many Feet as the former. This Insect I take to be another Species of the *Scolopenders* and is destructive and pernicious in the *Tobacco* Plantations, if there be not care taken to Search for and kill them, which is a business that the Negroes are very much employed in during the Tobacco Season. I don't find that they are any way Poysonous, for I have known some of the Planters make their Negroes eat them by way of punishment, when they have been negligent in their Tobacco Fields, and have not carefully gathered them from amongst the Tobacco Leaves: what physical virtues they may be indued with is uncertain.

The *Glow-worm* has Wings, and it shines in the dark like Fire; their light is under their Wings, and they are generated of Dew, they are most commonly to be met with in Swamps, and wet low Grounds, where they are plenty they shine at a great distance like a Fire, which has deceiv'd many in the dark Nights. They are *Anodyne*, and are given with good Success in the Gravel, being made into Troches, with *Gum Tragacanth*, and Oil of *Almonds*.

The *Land-wood-worms* are of a shining Copper colour, and never exceed four or five Inches in length, and scarce as thick as a Man's little Finger. They are so called from being found in old rotten Trees, and accounted venemous in case they bite; yet I have never known any one hurt by them.

There

There are many other different ſorts of Worms found, not only in rotten Trees, but likewiſe in ſeveral Trees in their Bloom, and eſpecially the Apple Trees, which I have already made mention of.

The *Teredines* or *Water-wood-worms*, ſo call'd from their breeding in Ships and other Timber lying in the Salt-Waters. They have ſmall ſoft white Bodies and large, hard Black-heads; I have frequently ſeen ſome of them no thicker than a Horſe-hair, and others the ſize of a Childs finger. Theſe vermine are only miſchievous in the extreme heat of the *Summer*, and the freſh Water is an utter Enemy to them, wherein they periſh and die. They are very deſtructive to Ships and Timber eſpecially if they lie in the Mud or Sands, but whilſt they float they never come to any damage by them. I have ſeen ſeveral planks taken out of Ships and Boats, that have been eaten by theſe Worms like a Honey-comb in ſix Weeks time, by the negligence of the Maſters to whom they belonged, that ſuffered them to lie in the Mud and Sands all that time, and notwithſtanding they eat ſuch large Holes within ſide of the Plank, yet the Holes on the out ſide are ſcarce to be ſeen, and no larger than for the point of a ſmall Needle to enter. The Aſhes mix'd with an equal weight of Anniſeeds, and a little Oil, are good againſt all ſorts of Ulcers and Cankers.

The *Earth-worms*, whereof there are ſeveral ſorts, and are the ſame here as with us in *Ireland*. This Inſect is a great Duiretick, Sudorifick, and Anodyne; it diſcuſſes, mollifies, increaſes Milk, opens obſtructions, and cures Wounds, principally of the Sinews and Ligaments and many other diſorders, being both externally and internally made uſe of.

The *Snails* are here likewiſe, but not ſo plenty as with us in *Europe*; having many Enemies that continually

deſtroy them, ſuch as Birds, Snakes, Frogs, *&c.* The fleſh cools, thickens, conſolidates, is pectoral, and Strengthens the Nerves, cures Coughs, Aſthma's, ſpitting of Blood, and Conſumptions. Outwardly they Ripen Tumors, Impoſthumes, and Carbuncles, eſpecially if mix'd with Ox-gall, they heal wounds of the Nerves and Ulcers of the Legs, cure Ruptures and ſtop Bleeding at the Noſe, and many other Diſorders too tedious to Name.

Having thus given an Account of ſome of the moſt remarkable *INSECTS* that are to be met with here, I ſhall in the next place proceed to give a Deſcription of the BIRDS, and FOWLS that this Country produces, many whereof are not known, or to be met with in *EUROPE.*

Wild Turkey
Woodpe
Mocking B
Red Bird
A Jay
East India Bat
Humming Bird
Cormorant
Pelican
The Shag

OF THE

BIRDS.

THE *EAGLES* being accounted the King of the Birds, I ſhall therefore begin with them. Of theſe there are three Sorts, *viz.* the *Bald*, the *Black*, and the *Gray Eagle*. The *Bald Eagle* is the largeſt, and is ſo called, becauſe his Head to the middle of the Neck is covered with a white ſort of downy Feathers, whereby it looks very bald, and the Tail is as white as Snow, the reſt of the Body being of a dark brown colour. Theſe Birds are very great breeders moſt part of the Year, and always build their Neſts in old decay'd *Cyprus*, or *Pine-trees* near the River's ſide, where they generally lay two Eggs, and ſometimes three, but they ſeldom have four; as ſoon as they are hatched, and the young *Eagles* have down on them, with white woolly Feathers, the *Hen Eagles* lay again, which Eggs are hatched by the warmth of the young ones in the Neſt, ſo that the flight of one makes

room for the others that are juſt hatched; thus they continue breeding moſt part of the Year. They not only prey upon Birds, Beaſts, and Fiſhes, but upon any thing they are able to deſtroy. They are very deſtructive to Poultry, Lambs, young Fawns, and Pigs, which they frequently carry Squalling into the Air, and ſo bring them with eaſe to their young ones. They can fly from Morning till Night, and that very high, notwithſtanding they are heavy of flight, and cannot get their food by ſwiftneſs, to help which, there is a *Fiſhing-Hawk*, that catches Fiſh, which it ſuffers the *Eagle* to take from it, notwithſtanding it is a large and ſwift Fowl, and can make far better way than the *Eagle* can, and it is very pleaſant to behold the flight of theſe two Birds, which ſometimes continues for above half an Hour, at length it lets fall the Fiſh which the *Eagle* frequently catches before it touches the Earth or Water. Theſe *Bald Eagles* will likewiſe attend the Hunts-men, in the *Winter time* for ſeveral Hours together (but at a great diſtance) till they ſhoot ſome game, which they frequently flie away with, dead or wounded. Their Neſts are made of Twigs, Sticks, and ſeveral kinds of Rubbiſh, and generally ſo large that it is enough to fill a handſome Cart's Body, and commonly ſo full of naſty Bones and Carcaſſes that it ſmells moſt offenſively. It is the opinion of moſt People in thoſe parts that theſe *Eagles* are not Bald till they are two or three Years old. They are the ſtrongeſt Birds of prey that are yet known in theſe parts of *America*.

The *Black-Eagles* are much the ſame ſort as are to be met with in *Ireland*, but not altogether ſo large as the former, yet in all other reſpects as miſchievous, and build Neſts after the ſame manner in old Trees naked of Boughs, and nigh the River ſide from whence as I ſuppoſe, they may have a proſpect of the *Fiſhing-Hawks*, for when

when they ſee the *Fiſhing-Hawk* ſtrike a Fiſh, immediately they take Wing and purſue Her. The *Fiſhing-Hawk* as ſoon as ſhe perceives herſelf purſued, will Scream and make a moſt terrible Noiſe, till at length ſhe lets fall the Fiſh, to make her own eſcape.

The *Gray Eagle*, is much of the colour of our *Kite* or *Glead*, it is not quite as large as the former, but Builds and preys after the ſame manner, and is frequently to be met with all over this Province. All theſe ſorts of *Eagles* are very ſharp ſighted, view their prey at great diſtances, and have the beſt ſmell of all living Creatures. They are very bold Thieves, and live to be very old, and die not for Age nor any Sickneſs, but of meer hunger, by reaſon that the upper Beak of their Bill is ſo far over grown, and turneth inward ſo much, that they are not able to open it to feed themſelves. They ſeldom ſeek their prey in the Forenoon, for they are found ſitting Idle and perched upon Trees all the Morning. It is reported that the Quills or Feathers of *Eagles* laid amongſt thoſe of other Fowls, will rot and conſume them, which I have not faith to believe. The Fleſh, tho' ſcarce fit to be eaten, is medicinal againſt the Gout; the Bones of the Skull, in powder, are good againſt the Megrim; the Brain drank in Wine, helps the Jaundice, and the Gall is of excellent uſe in moſt diſorders of the Eyes, and applied helps the bitings of Serpents and Scorpions, *&c.* The Dung opens obſtructions, and applied outwardly, ripens Tumors and peſtilential Buboes.

The *Fiſhing-Hawks*, are ſo called, from their continual catching of Fiſhes on which they live. They may likewiſe be called the *Eagles Jack-all*; for commonly after they have taken their prey (as I have already obſerv'd,) they will flie at a great height in the Air, and cry and make a noiſe till ſuch time as the *Eagle* comes, and then they

they will let the Fiſh fall from them, which the *Eagle* immediately carries off. They are a large and ſtrong Bird, being above two thirds as big as the *Eagle*, they build their Neſts after the ſame manner as the *Eagles* do, and that generally by the ſides of Rivers and Creeks, and the *Eagles* and theſe Birds are ſeldom or never known to ſit upon any living Tree. They are of a Gray Pyed colour, and the moſt dexterous Fowl in Nature at catching of Fiſh, for they never eat any Fleſh-meat. They are a quick and ſharp ſighted Fowl, will fly at a good height, hover above in the Air, and watch their prey, which as ſoon as they have diſcovered, they will dart themſelves like an Arrow out of a Bow into the Waters, and breaking the force thereof with their Breaſts, quickly catch up the Fiſh and flie away. But it ſometimes happens that they ſtrike their *Talons* ſo faſt in a large Fiſh which they are not able to carry, that the fiſh ſuddenly takes them under the Water (before they can diſcharge themſelves) and ſo drowns them. This I have been Eye-witneſs to, and in an Hour after it happened, got both the Fiſh (which was a large *Drum*) and the *Fiſhing-Hawk*. Their virtues and uſes are much the ſame with the *Eagles*.

The *Turkey-Buzzard*, is a kind of ſmall Vulture, which lives on all manner of dead Carcaſſes. Their Head and red Gills reſemble very much thoſe of a *Turkey*, from whence it has it's Name. They are near as big as an *Eagle*, and their Feathers are of a ſooty brown Colour. They are in great plenty here, and in the Northern Provinces, and have the moſt offenſive and naſty Smell of any Fowl I have ever met with. They are a clear and ſharp ſighted Bird, and their Flight is like that of our *Kites*; they ſoar at a great height in the Air, for Hours together over the Carrion, 'till ſuch time as they find an Opportunity to prey on it. They ſmell at vaſt Diſtances, and

and will very readily find out where the Carrion or Prey is, if it be even under the Leaves, or Boughs of Trees, or ſlightly buried in the Earth by wild Beaſts or Dogs. They are ſaid to be utter Enemies to all manner of Snakes, killing all they meet with, for which reaſon the Planters ſeldom or never deſtroy them or their Eggs. They do no manner of Harm, feeding for the moſt part on dead Carcaſſes, which I ſuppoſe is the cauſe that they are the ſtinkingeſt of any Birds in theſe Parts. The Fat of this Fowl made into an Oil, is recommended againſt old Aches, and Sciatica Pains.

The *Kites* are much the ſame here as thoſe with us in *Ireland*, but not commonly ſo large. Theſe Birds moſt commonly frequent the Northern parts of the Country, there being but few to be met with in this Province; and in *South Carolina* they are ſeldom to be ſeen. It is ſaid that they are mortal Enemies to the *Snakes*, for which reaſon the Planters ſeldom kill them, or deſtroy their Eggs. Their Fleſh, though it be of groſs Nouriſhment, yet it is eaten by the poorer ſort of People in ſeveral parts of *Europe*. They are a very bold Bird, and a great deſtroyer of young Poultry, and it is remarkable when they ſee a young Duck, Chicken, *&c.* far from ſhelter, and lying expoſed, how they will fly round it for ſeveral times, marking it, then of a ſudden they dart down as ſwift as Lightning, and catch it up before it is aware. A Powder made of them eaſes the Gout, and helps the Epilepſy; the Greaſe is Effectual to the ſame Intention, and the Gall is an excellent Remedy in moſt Diſorders of the Eyes.

The *Snake-Hawk*, or *Herringtailed-Hawk*, ſo called, from it's beautiful forked Tail (like a *Swallow*) and it's killing and feeding on *Snakes*, which it will do with the the largeſt in theſe parts, with a great deal of dexterity and

and eaſe. It is about the bigneſs of a *Falcon*, but a much longer Bird. They are a beautiful Fowl, of a delicate *Aurora* Colour, the Pinions of their Wings, and ends of their Tails, are of a jet Black. They never appear abroad in this Province but in *Summer*, and what becomes of them in *Winter* is unknown. They are in the greateſt Requeſt amongſt the Planters (who will not ſuffer them to be killed) by Reaſon of their deſtroying thoſe pernicious Inſects, ſo hurtful to Mankind. They are a tame and familiar Fowl, will fly near one, and take their Prey, which is both diverting and pleaſing to the *Europeans* eſpecially; as for the *Indians* they do not regard them. It is ſtrange to ſee how they are brought to thoſe places where the Snakes are, about which they will flie for Hours together, 'till they have an Opportunity of killing ſome of them; and it is always a certain ſign of Snakes being near thoſe places where ever you meet them thus flying. I have obſerved, when they take a Snake, that they always ſeize it in their Tallons near the Head, and flie or drag it ſome diſtance before they prey upon it, which they do by tearing it in pieces. It's Virtues and Uſes are unknown to any in thoſe Parts.

The *Goſs-Hawks* are very plenty here, but do not appear to be as large as thoſe from the *Northern* parts of *Europe*, yet ſeem to be a very bold, ſwift and active Bird in purſuing and taking their Prey, which is Geeſe, Ducks, Cranes, Hares, Rabbets, and the like. The Fleſh is fat and ſweet, may be uſed as Food and hath much the ſame Virtues with that of the *Kite*. The Dung is exceeding hot, and being drank faſting in Wine, is ſaid to cauſe Conception.

The *Falcons* are much the ſame as in *Europe*, but ſeem to be not altogether ſo large, yet they are brave, briſk, and

and quick-ſighted Birds; I have frequently ſeen them kill *Partridges*, *Parakeetoes*, and the like. Theſe *Hawks* are moſt commonly to be ſeen in Evenings, flying to the *Weſtward*, having, as it is ſuppoſed, their abode and Neſts in or near the Mountains, where we may reaſonably expect to find them, and ſeveral other Species that we are intire Strangers to at preſent.

The *Merlin*, is a ſmall Bird in *Europe*, but much ſmaller in *America*; yet it, as well as the other Species of Hawks, is a bold, ravenous, and quick-ſighted Bird, and nimbly kills ſeveral ſorts of ſmall Fowl, and ſometimes Partridges. It is a moſt beautiful Bird, and would be a great Rarity, if it could be caught alive, or their Young ones found, but they never breed near the Settlements, but as is ſuppoſed in the Mountains.

The *Sparrow-Hawk* is not as big as a *Fieldfear*, it ſometimes flies at, and kills ſmall Birds; but it's chiefeſt Food is Reptiles, ſuch as Graſs-hoppers, Butter-flies, Beetles, and ſuch like ſmall Inſects. This Hawk is exactly the ſame Colour of the Sparrow-Hawk in *Ireland*, only it has a Black-hood by it's Eyes.

The *Hobbies*, are a Species of the Hawks, ſomething leſs than the *European* Sparrow-Hawks, and much of the ſame ſize and colour with them; yet there are but few of theſe kinds of Hawks to be met with in theſe Parts of *America*.

The *Ringtailed-Hawk*, ſo called, from it's round Tail, is another ſmall Species of Hawks, with very ſhort Wings. They are frequently to be met with in ſeveral parts of the Woods: they prey chiefly on Mice, Rats, and ſuch like Vermine, that are to be met with in the Marſhes near Rivers and Creek's ſide.

The *Owls*, whereof there are three ſorts, *viz.* the *White*, the *Brown*, the *Barn*, and the ſmall *Screech-Owl*.

The firſt is the great large *Owl*, which is as big as a middling Gooſe, and has a prodigious large Head: It is a delicate Feathered Bird, all the Feathers upon the Back and Breaſt being Snow-white, and tiped with a punctal of Jet-black. They are a bold and ravenous Bird, eſpecially in the Night, at which time they make ſuch a fearful howling, like a Man, that they have often deceived Strangers, and made them looſe their way in the Woods, as I have been credibly informed by many in thoſe Parts.

The ſecond is of a *Brown*, or dark *Aſh* Colour, and is as large as the former. Theſe two build their Neſts in hollow Trees, where they lie concealed all the Day, but at Night flie up and down the Woods, where they ſeek their Prey; yet they ſometimes approach near the Planter's Dwelling Houſes, and kill Hens, and other Poultry.

The third is the common *Barn-Owl*, about the bigneſs of a *Pigeon*. This Bird has a beautiful Circle or Wreath of white, ſoft, downy Feathers, encompaſſed with yellow ones, paſſing round the Eyes, and under the Chin, ſo that the Eyes appear ſunk in the Head. The Breaſt, Belly, and inſide of the Wings are white, marked with a few dark Spots; being the moſt elegantly coloured of all Night-birds.

The fourth is the ſmall *Screech-Owl*, and is the ſame as thoſe in *Europe*. Theſe *Owls* and the former, are frequently attacked by other Birds, when they find them abroad in the Day-time; and when they find themſelves overpowered, it is pleaſant to ſee how they will place themſelves on their Backs, where ſcarce any thing is to be ſeen but their Beaks and Tallons, in which poſture they will fight, and defend themſelves. The Fleſh of theſe Birds is eaten by the *Indians* and *Negroes*. It is accounted

accounted good in Palſies and Melancholly. The Greaſe and Gall is good againſt Spots in the Eyes, and to ſtrengthen the Eye-ſight. The whole Bird, not plucked, calcined, and taken into the Throat, opens the Impoſthums of the Quinſie to a wonder, and the Brain, eaten, helps the Head-ach.

The *Parakeetoes*, are for the moſt part of a fine Green colour, only their Head, and part of their Wings, are of a beautiful Orange colour. They have thick Beaks or Bills, exactly like thoſe of the Hawks. They are a Species of the *Parrots*, and generally about the bigneſs of a ſmall Pigeon. In *April* they feed on the *Birch buds*, and ſeldom come down amongſt the Planters until the *Mullberries* are ripe, which they eat, and are extreamly fond of. They are likewiſe very miſchievous to Orchards, and peck the Apples to eat the Kernels, ſo that the Fruit quickly rots and periſhes. They build their Neſts in hollow Trees, in low ſwampy Grounds. They lie hidden in the *Winter*, when the Weather is extream hard and froſty, and never appear all that time. There are none of theſe Birds or *Alligators* to be met with to the Northward of this Province, by the beſt Information I could learn, during my Reſidence in thoſe parts. They are often taken alive with Traps, Bird-lime, *&c.* and will become tame and familiar in two or three Days time; yet they are not ſo docile or apt to learn to ſpeak as *Parrots* generally are. They are moſt commonly very fat in the *Mullberry* and Fruit time, and are excellent good Food, preferable to any *Pigeon*.

The *Cuckow* of *Carolina* is a Bird of the ſame bigneſs and Feather with theſe in *Europe*, and ſucks the ſmall Birds Eggs as they do, yet it is never known to cry or ſing *Cuckow* in the *Summer* time like the former, neither are theſe Birds to be ſeen in the *Winter*, at which time

they hide themſelves in hollow Trees, and their Feathers come off, and they are Scabby, they uſually lay but one Egg, and that in the Neſt of the Hedge Sparrow; like thoſe in *Europe*. Their Fleſh is ſweet and good Food, and eaten by many in theſe Parts. Their Aſhes are good againſt the Stone and Epilepſy. The Dung given in Canary is good againſt the biting of a Mad Dog.

The *Rail*, *Jackdaw*, and *Magpy*, are not to be met with in *Carolina* or any of the other Neighbouring Provinces as far as I cou'd be informed.

The *Ravens* are very ſcarce to be met with in theſe Parts, yet they are the ſame ſort as thoſe with us in *Ireland*, and other parts of *Europe*, they are ſaid to live to a great Age, and lay about five or ſix Eggs (before they begin to Sit) which are of a Pale Greeniſh Blew colour, and full of Black Spots. The Fleſh is unwholſom, becauſe they feed upon dead Bodies, yet the Aſhes given for two or three Days together, cures the Epilepſy and Gout. The Brain performs the ſame thing, the Greaſe, Blood and Eggs, make the Hair Black. The Eggs help the Spleen, but cauſe Abortion.

The *Rooks* are leſs in *Carolina* than in *Europe*. They are good Food when Young (becauſe they never feed on Carrion) but their Skins are tough, Black and bitter. They are very great Enemies to Corn Fields, if there be not care taken to prevent them. They build their Neſts after the ſame manner as the *Rooks* with us do, but differ much in their Cry or Notes, which are more like the barking of a Dog, than that of Rooks. And it is ſaid that when Rooks build, one of the Pair always ſit to watch the Neſt until it be finiſhed; otherwiſe if both go abroad, and leave the unfiniſhed Neſt, the other Rooks rob it, and carry the Sticks away to their own; hence perhaps the Word *Rooking* is uſed for *Cheating*

The

The *Black ſmall-Crows*, whereof there are two ſorts. The firſt is bigger than our Black-bird, and exactly of that Colour, but different in it's Notes. Theſe Crows are the moſt hurtful and pernicious Vermine (eſpecially to Corn) in all *America*. They flie ſometimes in ſuch vaſt Flocks, that they deſtroy every thing before them. Their Fleſh is white and excellent Food.

The ſecond are bigger than the former, and that part of the Head next the Bill and the Pinions of their Wings, are of an Orange and moſt beautiful Crimſon Colour; and the reſt of the Body Black. Theſe are as good Meat as the former, though very few trouble themſelves to kill or dreſs them, where large Fowl are ſo plenty. Both theſe kinds continue here all the Year, are generally fat, and excellent good Meat, and I have frequently eat of them. They build their Neſt in hollow Trees as the *Parakeetoes* do; I look on them to be a ſort of *Sterling*, for they cry ſomething like them, but do not ſing, and are about the ſame bigneſs.

The *Turkeys* are here wild, in great plenty, and exceeding large; I have ſhot ſome of them which weighed forty pounds, and I have been credibly informed, that ſome of them weighed ſixty. You ſhall ſee five hundred or more of them in a Flock together; ſometimes the wild Breed with the tame, which they account makes them very hardy. I am ſatisfied it does, for the *Indians* frequently find their Neſts, and bring their Eggs to the *Chriſtians*, which are hatched under Hens, Ducks, tame Turkies, *&c.* As ſoon as they are out of the Shell, they will ſend for themſelves, and are more eaſily brought up than a Chicken with us. Notwithſtanding they are thus hatched, and familiarly bred up, yet they ſtill retain a wild Nature, and commonly, when they are a Year and a half old, and grown large, run wild into the Woods, and

and can never be brought into the Houſe to Rooſt, but perch on ſome high Tree near it, and are always obſerved to ſeperate themſelves from the tame ſort, although (at the ſame time) they Tred and breed together. There is no manner or difference that I can ſee between the wild Turkeys and the tame, either in their Shape, Gobling, Call, or Notes, only the Feathers of the wild are always of a blackiſh ſhining dark Gray, that in the Sun, ſhine like a Duck's Neck, very ſpecious, and they have thicker and larger Legs. They are a ſharp ſighted Fowl, and excelent good Food. They feed on *Acorns*, *Huckle-berries*, and ſeveral other Berries and Fruits that the Country produces, which makes them exceeding fat. I have been credibly informed, that if one take theſe wild Turkey Eggs, juſt when on the point of being hatched, and dip them (for ſome ſmall time) in a Bowl of Milk, or warm Water, that it will take off their wild Nature, and make them as tame and domeſtick as the others. But how true this may be, I know not, never having made an Experiment that way; neither can I ſee any Reaſon to believe it; yet I thought fit to inſert it, that others may try. The *Indians* have frequently theſe wild Breed hatched at home, to be a Decoy to bring thoſe that are wild near their Houſes, by which means they ſhoot many. They are ſeldom to be met with but in the Morning and Evening, for at Sun-riſe they go off to feed, and at Sun-ſet they return and perch on high Trees, and ſo continue all Night. At any other time of the Day you ſhall ſcarce find one, except it be when they are Breeding, or in Snowy Weather, and then they are to be ſeen in great Flocks together. They are a wary Fowl, and ſeldom ſhot but whilſt they are perching on the Trees. They may be heard call or gobble, at a great diſtance (Morning and Evening, but at no other time)

time) which brings the Huntſmen to thoſe places where they are. They are a heavy Fowl, and cannot flie far, but will run exceeding faſt, for if you ſhould chance to break one of their Wings in Shooting, without a Dog, you ſeldom catch them. Their Uſes in Phyſick are the ſame with the tame Turkey.

The *Pheaſants* are ſomething leſs, and differ ſome ſmall matter in their Feathers from thoſe in *Ireland*, but are no ways inferior in delicacy, but rather better and finer Meat. They are very plenty, but their chiefeſt Haunts are backwards in the Woods, and near the Mountains; for they are ſeldome to be found near the Inhabitants. The *Pheaſant* is accounted better Meat than almoſt all other Fowl, becauſe it is of a moſt delicate Taſte, and yields ſuch excellent Nouriſhment. They feed on Acorns, Berries, Grain, and ſeveral ſorts of Seeds of Plants. Their Fleſh is good in hectick Fevers, the Gall ſharpens the Sight, and the Blood reſiſts Poyſon.

The *Wood-cocks* are not near as large in theſe parts of *America*, as thoſe in *Europe*; they differ nothing in ſhape and Feather, only their Breaſts are of a Carnation colour, and they make a Noiſe (when on the Wing) like the Bells about a Hawk's Legs. They breed and continue here all the Year, and though they are not as plenty here as they are in the Northern parts of Europe, yet they are as fine and delicate Meat as any of that kind in the World. They are to be met with in moſt parts of this Country, but eſpecially in the low Grounds, Springs, Swamps, and Percoarſons. Their Fleſh is beſt in *Winter*, being then fatteſt. It and all it's Parts have the Virtues of *Partridges*.

The *Snipes* are plenty in ſeveral parts of this Province, and are the only wild Bird that are not different from the ſame Species in *Europe*. They frequent the ſame Places as

tho

thoſe with us do, *viz.* Springs, Wet Ground, *&c.* Their Fleſh is tender, ſweet, and of excellent Nouriſhment.

The *Tut-cocks*, are a Species of *Snipes* in theſe parts, and are almoſt like the former in Size and Feather; they are plenty in ſeveral Places of this Province, and nothing inferior to the former in the delicacy of their Meat; but theſe, as well as moſt other ſmall Birds, are little regarded or made uſe of at preſent, where large Fowl are ſo numerous.

The *Curliew*, whereof there are three ſorts, and vaſt Numbers of each: They have all long Bills, and differ neither in Colour or ſhape, only in ſize, from thoſe in *Europe*. The largeſt being as big as a good Hen, and the ſmalleſt as large as a ſmall *Wood-cock*, and thoſe ſorts are excellent Meat, and nouriſh very much.

The *Sea-Pie*, or *Gray Curliew*. This Bird is about the bigneſs of a large *Wood-cock*, and has a long Bill as the other *Curliews* have, which is of a yellowiſh colour, and ſo are it's Legs. It frequents the Sand-banks on the Sea-ſide. When killed, is inferior to no Fowl I have ſeen or eat of; It's Fleſh being tender, well reliſhed, and nouriſhing.

The *Will-Whillet*, is a Bird ſo called, from it's Cry, for it exactly repeats, or calls *Will-willet*, as it flies. The Bill is like a *Curliews* or *Wood-cocks*, and has much ſuch a Body as the other, but not ſo tall; it is good Meat, being nouriſhing and well taſted. They are plenty along the Shore, and the ſides of Rivers, and are much of the ſame Nature and Virtues with the *Curliews*

The *Lapwing* or *Green-Plover*: Theſe Fowl are very plenty in ſeveral parts of this Province, eſpecially in the Savannas, and near the Mountains. Their Cry is pretty much like thoſe with us, they differ little or nothing in the Feathers, but are not near ſo large, yet not inferior

to

to any of that Species, in the delicacy and goodneſs of their Meat. Their Aſhes drank in Wine, is good againſt the Cholick, and a Cataplaſm thereof, helps the biting of Mad Dogs.

The *Grey*, or *Whiſtling-Plover*. Theſe Fowl are very ſcarce, and ſeldom to be met with near the Settlements, but there are great Numbers of them in the Vallies and Savannas near the Mountains, and Heads of Rivers, where they are to be met with in great Flocks. They differ little from ours, either in Feather or Size, as far as I could diſcern, and eat as well as any of the ſame ſort in *Europe*; the Fleſh is pleaſant, and much better Nouriſhment than the *Green-Plover*.

The *Partridges* are not as large as thoſe in *Ireland*, being not much bigger than our *Quail*. They frequently perch upon Trees, and have a kind of Whiſtle or Call quite different from thoſe with us; but the ſame Feathers, only the Cock has a half Circle over each Eye, inſtead of the Horſe-ſhoe. They are a beautiful Bird, but great deſtroyers of Peaſe, Wheat, and *Indian* Corn, in the Plantations, where the Boys ſet Traps and catch vaſt numbers of them; I have frequently bought a Dozen of them for leſs than a twelve penny Bill. They are generally exceeding fat, and are a far more delicious Morſel than ours. *Sed de guſtibus non eſt diſputandum.* They might be eaſily tranſported from one Place to another, becauſe they take to feeding immediately after they are caught. The *Rattle-Snake* frequently deſtroys them, however they are in great Plenty in this Province, and reſort in Covies as ours do. It is a very libidinous Bird, for they will ſeem to couple with their own Image in a Glaſs: they lay ten or fifteen Eggs, and ſit twice in a Year, and are ſaid to live about fifteen or ſixteen Years. The Blood helps the Eyes, wounded or Blood-

ſhot, and the Gall is one of the moſt eminent things in the World for defects in the Eyes.

The *Turtle-Doves* are very plenty in theſe parts of *America*, and breed and remain here all the Year; they are ſomething leſs than a common *Pigeon*, the head and back are of a duskiſh blue, or aſh Colour; they have a more melancholly Tone or Note, than any of the other Species of *Doves*, that are to be heard up and down in the Woods, as you travel through them. They live eight Years, are deſtructive to Corn-fields and Peaſe, for which reaſon the Planters make Traps, and catch great Numbers of them. I have frequently eat of them, and they are a moſt delicious Morſel. Their Fleſh has the ſame Virtues with the *Pigeon*, but is peculiarly good againſt the Bloody Flux.

The *Wild Pigeons* are like the *Wood-queſt*, or *Stock-dove*, only they have longer Tails. They ſeldom or never appear amongſt the Planters, or near their Settlements, but in the *Winter* (as *Wood-cocks* do with us) they come down in large Flocks, that it is ſurprizing to behold them. After Sun-riſe I have ſeen them fly, one Flock after another, for above a quarter of an Hour together. They come at this Seaſon of the Year in queſt of a ſmall ſort of *Acorn*, that is called the *Turky-Acorn*, which groweth on the *Turky-Oak*, whereof I have already made mention. It is comm on in theſe Parts, and thereon theſe *Wild-Pigeons* feed in that Seaſon, and are very fat. It is obſervable, that wherever they ſettle, or rooſt at Night, they frequently break large limbs of Trees, in ſeveral places in the Woods. When they come in theſe numerous Flocks, they generally clear all before them, ſcarce leaving one *Acorn* on the Ground. It is ſaid they breed in the Mountains (and I am perſuaded, conſiderably to the *Northward* of us, becauſe they never appear here but in the extremity

extremity of the *Winter*, when it is hard Frosty or Snowy Weather) but whether they make their Nests in the Rocks, or in Trees, is not known, by any that ever I converſed with. I ſhould rather think they made them in Trees, becauſe of their frequent ſitting and roosting on them at Night. Their Dung will lie above half a Foot thick about thoſe Trees, which kills Shrubs, Graſs, and every thing that grows near where it falls. Notwithſtanding theſe Flocks are ſo numerous, yet they are not to be mentioned in compariſon with the great and infinite number of thoſe Fowls that are to be met with to the Weſtward of thoſe Places, where the *Chriſtians* at preſent live (eſpecially on this and the other ſide of the Mountains) many of which Species we are little acquainted with, becauſe they ſeldom appear or come where we are already ſettled. The Fleſh is very nutritive and excellent Food. The Blood helps diſorders in the Eyes, the Coats of the Stomach in Powder, cures bloody Fluxes. The Dung is the hotteſt of all Fowls, and is wonderful attractive, yet accompanied with an *Anodyne* force, and helps the Head-ach, Megrim, pain in the Side and Stomach, Pleuriſy, Cholick, Apoplexy, Lethargy, and many other Diſorders.

The *Moor-hen.* I never ſaw any in this Country, yet I am credibly informed, that they are to be met with in the Mountains, and high Country, for they never appear in any part of the Settlements.

The *Wood-pecker*, whereof we have five ſorts, if not more. The firſt is as big as a large *Pigeon*, of a dark brown Colour, with a white Croſs on the Back, and a white Circle round the Eyes, and on it's Head ſtands a Tuft of beautiful Scarlet Feathers. Their Cry is to be heard at a great Diſtance, and they fly from one rotten Tree to another to get *Grubs* and *Worms*, which is what they live on

The ſecond ſort are of an Olive colour, ſtriped with Yellow. They are about the bigneſs of thoſe in *England*. They feed after the ſame manner with the former, on *Grubs* and *Worms*.

The third ſort is about the ſame bigneſs with the ſecond, and is pied or mottled, with black and white, and it's Head is of a beautiful Vermilion colour, but hath no Topping on it; they are deſtructive to Corn and Fruit, eſpecially Apples. They likewiſe open the Covering of the young Corn, ſo that the Rain gets in and rots it.

The fourth ſort are finely ſpeckled or mottled, with beautiful white and black Feathers, the fineſt I ever ſaw. The Cock has a beautiful red Head, but not near as big as the former. Their Food is *Grubs* and other creeping Inſects, and Corn. They are not wild, for they will let one come near them, but then they hop and ſhift themſelves on the other ſide of the Tree from your ſight, and this they will do for a conſiderable time; yet it is very difficult to ſhoot one of them by their ſhifting ſo often from you, notwithſtanding they will ſcarce leave the Tree. Theſe are about the bigneſs of our *Lark*.

The fifth ſort is about the bigneſs of a *Jay*. The top of the Head is of a Crimſon or Vermilion Colour, ſpotted with Black, round each Eye is a circle of Black, and on each ſide is a Vermilion ſpot. The Throat, Breaſt, Belly, and Wings, are of a Pale Green, the Rump of pale Yellow, or Straw Colour. Its Tongue is of a great length, with which it ſtrikes *Ants* and other *Inſects*. The Bills of all theſe ſorts are ſo ſharp, hard, and ſtrong, that you ſhall hear the ſtroke of them ſound like a Chizzel againſt a Tree. They are well aquainted in what Trees Worms are bred in by the Sound. They climb Trees upright, after the manner that *Cats* do, and bend their Head and look backwards on thoſe that approach near them

them. They make Holes in Trees where they build their Nests, and it is reported that if these Holes were stopt up ever so secure with a Wedge or Pin of Wood, that they will soon take it out again, so dextrous are they to work in Wood with their Bills. The Flesh of these Birds is not good for Meat, being harsh and hard of Digestion, outwardly it helps Inflammations, and the Gall with Honey and Juice of Rue is used in disorders of the Eyes. There is a Tradition amongst them, that the Tongue of one of these *Wood-Peckers* dryed, will make the Teeth drop out if pricked therewith, and cure the Tooth-ach (though I believe little of it, but look on it as ridiculous) yet I thought fit to hint it, that others may try the Experiment; for sometimes such odd Stories refer to some particular Virtues, though all that is said of them be not true.

The *Cat-Birds* so called, from their crying or making a Noise exactly like the young *Cats*, for I never could discover or hear any other Note amongst them. They have a blackish Head, and an Ash-coloured Body. They are about the bigness of our Lark, will fight a *Crow*, and many other Birds much larger than themselves. They are pretty good eating, but what Physical Virtues they may be endued with, are unknown.

The *Mocking-Birds*, so called, from their mocking all other Birds in their singing, for they have such diversity of Notes, that there is scarce a Bird in these parts, that they hear, but what they will imitate; and they certainly are one of the finest singing Birds in the World. There are two sorts of these Birds. The first has Feathers much of the Colour of our *Green-Plover*, with White in the Wings, like a *Magpye's*. This has a more melodious and soft Note than the latter, and is generally about the bigness of our *Thrush*. They are held to be the Choristers

Choriſters amongſt the Birds of *America*, as indeed they are, for they will ſing with the greateſt diverſity of Notes that is poſſible for any Bird to change. They are fond of our Dwellings, and frequently reſort thither; being bold and brisk Birds, yet ſeem to be of an extraordinary tender Conſtitution; for they neither ſing in the *Winter*, nor in the midſt of *Summer*, and it is with great difficulty that any of them that are brought over, will live in *England* or *Ireland*. They may be bred up tame, and will ſing in Cages; yet the Planters ſeldom take them of their Young ones (except it be to ſell to thoſe trading to *Europe*) notwithſtanding they make their Neſts, and breed moſt commonly in the Orchards, and other places near the Dwelling Houſes, becauſe they have their Company as much as if in Cages, for they frequently ſit on their Houſes in the *Summer*, and ſing all the Evening, and moſt part of the Night. They feed on *Mulberries*, and ſeveral other Berries and Fruit, eſpecially the *Mechoacan berry* which grows plentifully in theſe Parts.

The ſecond ſort is called the *Ground-mocking-Bird*, and is of a light Cinnamon colour, about the ſame bigneſs of the former. This Bird ſings excellently well, but is not ſo common amongſt us as the other, neither does it frequent or reſort our dwellings, but delights to live amongſt the *Myrtle* Trees (being of a wilder Nature than the firſt) where it breeds it's young Ones; and like the the former, is never known to ſing in *Winter*. Both theſe ſorts of Birds continue here all the Year and are in great requeſt amongſt the Planters.

The *Red-birds*, ſo called from their beautiful Red colour, whereof there are two ſorts, the Cocks of both ſorts are of a pure Scarlet, and the Hens of a duskiſh Red. I diſtinguiſh them into two ſorts; for the one has a fine Tuft or Topping of Scarlet Feathers on the Head, and the other

other is ſmooth Feathered. I never ſaw a Tufted Cock with a ſmooth-headed Hen; they generally reſort Cock and Hen together, and always play in or near a Thicket, where the Boys ſet their Traps and catch, and ſell them to Perſons trading to *Europe*. They have ſtrong and thick Bills, and are near as big as our *Black-Birds* in *Europe*. They are very hardy, and continue here all the Year. They Whiſtle and Sing like a Thruſh, but are more melodious. They are good for turning Cages with Bells, and if taught like the *Bull-Finch*, and other Birds, I do not doubt would prove very docile; 'tis pleaſant to behold this Bird ſeeing it's own Image in a Looking-Glaſs, becauſe it hath ſo many diverting and ſtrange Geſticulations, either making a hiſſing Noiſe, or lowring it's Creſt, ſetting up it's Tail, ſhaking it's Wings, ſtriking at the Glaſs with it's Bill, with many more too tedious to Name. If they are taken at any time they will feed and become tame; yet it has been obſerved, that when they are ſhut up in Cages for ſome Years, they become Milk-white, and ſo ſtupid that they ſcarce know how to feed themſelves, which is never known to happen whilſt they are in the Woods and free from Confinement. They feed on *Indian* Corn and ſeveral ſorts of Berries and Seeds, produced in this Country. Theſe Birds and the former, eat much like our Thruſhes.

The *Field-fair*, is much like thoſe with us in *Ireland*, but are never to be ſeen in this Province but in *Winter*, they are then very fat, and excellent Food.

The *Thruſhes* are the ſame in thoſe parts of *America*, as with us, only they are Red under their Wings. They never appear amongſt the Planters but in hard froſty Weather, and quickly leave us again; 'tis ſuppoſed they go to the Northward where they breed. They are fat in that Seaſon, and the Fleſh is of good Nouriſhment.

The

The *Throſtles* are of the ſame bigneſs and Feather with thoſe in *Europe*, but are not to be admired for their warbling Notes, as ours are, for I have ſeldom heard them ſing. Theſe Birds are very fat in the *Winter*, and are good eating. Being roaſted with *Myrtle-berries*, they help moſt ſorts of Fluxes. The *Throſtle* is called in Latin, *Berbiacenſis*, from *Berbiacum*, a Village near *Verona* in *Italy*, being there firſt ſeen at the Battle between *Otho* and *Vitellus*, where the former was overcome.

The *Whipoo-will*, is a Bird ſo called, from it's frequent and exact repeating thoſe Notes or Words. Theſe Birds are about the bigneſs of a *Thruſh*, and are hard to be ſeen, although they be heard never ſo plain, for they conſtantly run under Thickets and Buſhes where they hide themſelves, and call their Notes. They are ſcarce in this Province, and ſeldom to be met with to the South-ward of it; but in *Virginia* and other Provinces to the Northward, they are very plenty in moſt of the Plantations, and are tolerable good eating.

The *Jays* are here very common, but more beautiful and finer Feathered than thoſe in *Europe*, for theſe are Blue, where ours are Brown, and not above half as large, but have the ſame Cry, and ſudden jetting Motion. They are miſchievous in devouring the Fruits of the Country; and commonly ſpoil more than they eat. The Fleſh of theſe Birds are much better Nouriſhment than any of the ſame ſort in *Europe*, where they are commonly eaten by the poorer ſort of People, and eſpecially in *France*, but are ſeldom made uſe of in theſe parts of *America*, where large Fowl are ſo plenty.

The *Kill-Deer*, is a Bird in theſe parts, ſo called, from it's frequent repeating thoſe Words. It is about the bigneſs of our *Redſhank*, and of the ſame colour, and frequents the Banks and River ſides, as the former. Theſe Birds

continue

continue here all the Year, are generally fat, excellent good Meat, and eaſily ſhot; but being a ſmall Bird, are little regarded, or made uſe of.

The *Sand-Birds*, ſo called, from their being always on the Sand-banks, and ſcarce any where elſe. They are about the bigneſs of a *Lark*, and of a gray and brown Colour. They are generally fat, and numerous in theſe Parts; they are a moſt delicious Morſel to eat, yet few ſpend their Time or Amunition to kill them.

The *Runners*, are Birds ſo called, from their continual running and feeding along the Sands. They will ſuffer one to run after them a long time, and even to throw a Stick at them, before they will get up or fly away; ſo that they are often driven together in great Numbers, and ſhot. They are about the bigneſs of a ſmall *Snipe*, partly of that colour, andexcellent good to eat.

The *Lark* is heeled, and coloured as thoſe with us are, but the Breaſt is of a glittering fine Lemon colour, in ſhape like a Half Moon. Theſe Birds frequent the Savannas, or natural Meads, and green Marſhes, and are as large as a *Fieldfare*, and they have a ſoft Note. They breed twice a year, and are ſaid to be troubled with the Epilepſy. They nouriſh very much, and are excellent good Meat. The Blood drank freſh, with Vinegar, helps the Stone in the Bladder.

The *Bunting-Larks*, whereof there are two ſorts, though the Heels of theſe Birds are not ſo long as thoſe in *Europe*. The firſt have an Orange colour on the tops of their Wings, and are good Meat. They frequently accompany the *Black-bird*, and ſing as the *Bunting-Larks* do in *Europe*, differing very little in their Notes, and have much the ſame Virtues with them.

The ſecond Sort is ſomething leſs than the former, of a lighter colour, and differ nothing in Feathers or bigneſs

neſs from thoſe with the Tuft or Creſt on their Heads, that are commonly to be met with in *Ireland*, and many other parts of *Europe*, and their Fleſh is good to eat.

The *Blue-Bird*, ſo called, from it's being all of a beautiful fine Blue-colour, except the Breaſt of the Cock, which is Red like the *Robin Red-breſt*. They have an odd kind of Cry, or Whiſtle, very different from the former. Theſe Birds hide themſelves in the *Winter*, ſo that they are not to be ſeen all that Seaſon, but are plenty in the *Summer*. They are but a ſmall Bird, not ſo large as our *Buntings*, but are excellent good Meat.

The *Bull finches* in theſe parts of *America*, are of the ſame ſize and bigneſs of thoſe with us, but differ ſome ſmall matter in their Feathers, from thoſe in *Europe*; thoſe in *Carolina* being more beautiful But whether they are ſo docil as thoſe with us, I cannot tell, never having ſeen any of them bred up in Cages. The Fleſh of theſe are much the ſame with that of the *Sparrow*.

The *Nightingals* differ ſomething in their Feathers from thoſe in *Europe* but have much the ſame Notes: They are as big as a *Goldfinch*, and always frequent low Grounds, eſpecially amongſt the Myrtle-berries, where they generally ſing very prettily all Night; but in the *Winter* (like the *Swallow*) are neither to be heard or ſeen. They breed in *May*, and generally lay about four or five Eggs in a Neſt, near which they ſeldom ſing, for fear of being diſcovered. The Fleſh is ſweet and good Food, helping the *Cachexia*, and ſtrengthning the Brain. The Gall mixed with Honey, helps Diſorders in the Eyes.

The *Sparrows* differ in Feather from thoſe in *Europe*, and are never known to reſort or build their Neſts in the Eaves of Houſes, as ours do. There are ſeveral ſorts of Birds called *Sparrows*, from their being ſo plenty all over this Province; one kind of theſe *Sparrows* exactly reſembles

bles the Bird we call the *Corinthian Sparrow*. All the Species of *Sparrows* are extraordinary good Meat, and the Boys catch great numbers of them in Traps, eſpecially in *Winter*.

The *Hedge-Sparrows* are here, though there are few Hedges, but what are made of Timber. They differ little in either Plume or Bigneſs; yet I never heard them Whiſtle as thoſe in *Europe* do, and eſpecially after Rain. Theſe and the other *Sparrows* are nouriſhing, and prevalent in the decay of Nature.

The *Red-Sparrow*, ſo called, from the great reſemblance it has to a *Sparrow* in it's Size and Bill, and being one of the moſt common ſmall Birds in theſe Parts. They are ſtriped with a brown, red, and Cinamon colour, and the Tail and Wings incline to black.

The *Titmouſe*, or *Tom-tit*, is the very ſame as with us in *Europe*, differing in neither ſhape, ſize, or feather. Theſe ſmall Birds are in plenty oll over this Province. They are found for the moſt part about Trees, and live chiefly upon Inſects which they find there.

The *Snow-Birds*, (I take to be ſame with our *Hedge-Sparrow*) are ſo called, from the vaſt numbers of them that come into thoſe Parts in hard Weather, and eſpecially when there is any Snow, but are ſeldom or never to be met with at any other time. For the Weather no ſooner changes, than they are gone to the more Northerly parts of *America*, where they are moſt numerous. They are a ſmall Bird, about the bigneſs of the *Wheatear*. The Boys catch great quantities of them in Traps, during their abode in theſe patts. They are fat, nouriſhing, and good eating.

The *Yellow-wings* are ſmall Birds, ſo called, from their beautiful yellow Wings. They are of the colour of a *Linnet* on the Back and Breaſt, but in ſize leſs, with

Wings yellow as Gold. They frequent high up the freſh Water Rivers and Creek ſides, where they breed. They hide themſelves in the thick Buſhes, and are very difficult to be ſeen in the Spring, but in Summer they appear and ſing all the Seaſon. What other properties they may be indued with, is uncertain.

The *Weet* Birds are about the bigneſs of a *Sparrow*, and of a greyiſh Colour, and are ſo called, from their *Weeting* or cry before Rain. Theſe Birds frequent near the ſides of Rivers and Ponds of freſh Water, where they Breed: What phyſical Uſes they may have is not known.

The *Goldfinches.* There are a ſorr of Birds like theſe to be met with here, variegated with *Orange* and *Yellow* Feathers, very ſpecious and beautiful to behold; yet I never heard them ſing, as thoſe in *Europe* are known to do.

The *Baltimore* Birds, ſo called from my Lord *Baltimore*, being Proprietor of all *Mary-Land*; in which Province they are very plenty. They are about the bigneſs of a *Linnet*, with yellow Wings, and variety of other beautifull Colours. They appear moſt commonly in this Province in the Winter Seaſon, at which time they are fat and good eating.

The *Eaſt India Bats*, or *Muskeetoe Hawks*, are ſo called from their killing and feeding on *Muskeetoes*, and becauſe the ſame ſort of Birds are found in the *Eaſt Indies*: They are as large as a *Cuckow*, and much of the ſame Colour, but have ſhort Legs, not diſcernable when they flie. They appear here only in the heat of the *Summer*, and at the approach of cold Weather, leave us again. They are never ſeen in the Day time, but are ſcudding all Night, like our *Night Raven*, in purſuit of *Muskeetoes*, *Gnats*, and other Inſects, on which they feed. And though it

is

is called a *Bat*, I see no reason for it, because it bears no manner of Resemblance to the *European Bat*, the *East-India Bat* being a Fowl with Feathers, and the other bodied like a *Mouse*, with Leather Wings. I never knew any use made of these Birds, for the Planters never kill them; because they destroy those pernicious Insects the *Muskeetoes*.

The *Bats*, whereof there are two sorts, which I have already given a Description of amongst the Beasts, it bearing the greatest resemblance to that Species; for though it flies, yet it hath no Affinity to Birds, not so much as a flying Serpent, and notwithstanding it be not properly a *Quadruped*, it hath Claws in the Wings, which answer to fore Legs. These *Bats* are plenty in this Province, and differ only in being larger than those in *Europe*.

The *Swallows* are very plenty in the *Summer*, and differ nothing from those in *Europe*. The flesh of these Birds is no good Nourishment, yet often eaten, is said to help Dimness of sight, the falling-sickness, and many other Disorders. The Nest outwardly applied, is of excellent use in Quinsies, redness of the Eyes, *&c.* These Birds feed on Flies, Worms, and many other kinds of small Insects.

The *Swift*, or *Diveling*, has a great Head and Wide Mouth, but a small Bill. The colour of the Feathers of the whole Body is black, only under the Chin is a Spot of white or Ash-colour; the Legs are short, but thick, and the Feet small. These Birds feed as the Swallows do, and have much the same Virtues.

The *Martin*, or *Martinet*, whereof there are two sorts. The first is exactly the same as with us in feather and size, and have the same uses and virtue; but what becomes of these and some other Birds in the *Winter*, whether they flie into other Countries, or sleep in hollow Trees, Rocks,

Rocks, or other ſecret Places, *Natural Hiſtorians* are not agreed, nor can they certainly determine. They conſtantly come to theſe parts in the beginning of *March*, and one or two are generally ſeen hovering in the Air for a Day or two before any large Flocks of them appear.

The ſecond ſort is near as large as our *Black-bird*, they have white Throats and Breaſts, black Beaks and Wings. The Planters are very fond of preſerving them, and frequently tye a number of *Gourds* on long ſtanding Poles near their Dwellings, on purpoſe for them to breed in, becauſe they are a warlike Bird, and beat the *Crows*, and many other kind of Birds much larger than themſelves from their Plantations. One Morning, very early, I eſpied a Snake crawling up one of theſe Poles, with a deſign to deſtroy the Young ones or Eggs in theſe *Gourds*, and it was ſurprizing to ſee with what eagerneſs the *Martins* fought with the Snake, which ſtill approached nearer the *Gourds*. Seeing the Birds in this Diſtracted manner endeavouring to preſerve their Species, I had the Curioſity to come near the Pole, where I obſerved the approaches the Snake ſtill made to procure it's Prey. I immediately got a long hollow *Reed* and killed the Snake (which was one of the *Chicken-Snakes*, whereof I have already made mention) and placed it near the Pole, which the *Martins* ſtill attacked, and would not be pacified 'till it was conveyed from the Place.

The *Wren* is ſcarce, and ſeldom to be met with, but is the ſame in ſize, Feathers and Notes, as in *Europe*. This ſmall Bird builds it's Neſt in the Moſs on Trees, it lays Nine or Ten, and ſometimes more Eggs at a ſitting: It is wonderful ſtrange, that a Bird with ſo ſmall a Body, ſhould cover ſuch a Number of Eggs, or that it ſhould feed ſo many Young, and not miſs one of them. The Fleſh is ſaid to help the ſtoppage of *Urine*, and to have the ſame Virtues with the *Sparrow*.

The

The *Humming Bird* is the leaſt of all Birds, yet well known in the World, and may properly be ſaid to be the miracle of all Winged Animals, for it is Feather'd like a Bird and gets its living as the Bee does, by ſucking the Honey from each Flower. They are of different Colours, but the Cocks are more beautiful than the Hens, with vae riety of Colours, ſuch as Red, Green, Aurora, and ſeveral other beautiful Colours, which being expoſed to the Sun Beams ſhines admirably. They have long Bills and Tails, conſidering their bigneſs, which is ſcarce equal to a *Spaniſh Olive*. In ſome of the larger ſort of Flowers they very often bury themſelves, ſo that they are quite covered, to ſuck the bottom of them, by which means the Children commonly catch them whilſt they are thus feeding; and I have ſeen of them nouriſhed and kept alive in Cages for ſix Weeks, on Honey. They fly very nimbly (but more like Inſects than Birds) from Flower to Flower, to ſeek their Food and make a humming noiſe like a *Hornet* or *Bee*, hence it took it's Name in *Engliſh* of *Humming-bird*. They remain and breed here during the heat of the *Summer*, but what becomes of them in the *Winter* is not known, for they never appear at that time, *viz.* from *October* 'till *April*. They are ſo very ſmall that I have frequently ſeen the *Butter-flies* chace them away from the Flowers. Their Neſts are a great Curioſity, and may properly be ſaid to be one of the greateſt pieces of Workmanſhip the whole ſpecies of winged Animals can ſhew, for it commonly hangs on a ſingle Bryer moſt artificially Woven like a round Ball, with a ſmall Hole to go in and out, where it lays and Hatches its Eggs, which are very White, of an Oval figure, and for the moſt part but two in Number which are no bigger than a ſmall Pea. What virtues theſe ſmall Birds may be indued with, is unknown.

The

The *Blue-Peters*, or *Water-Hens*, are very plenty, and differ from ours neither in ſize or Feathers, but are ſeldom or never eaten (except it be by the *Indians* and *Negroes*) being very hard of Digeſting and ill taſted.

The *Marſh-Hen* is much the ſame as with us in *Europe* in ſize and Feathers, but has a more different and ſhrill Note. Their Fleſh is ſeldom made uſe of except it be by the *Indians* and *Negroes*, being Black and ill taſted.

The *Bitterns*, whereof there are three ſorts. The firſt is the very ſame as with us in its ſize, Feathers, and Notes.

The ſecond ſort is of a dark brown Colour, with a Yellowiſh white Throat and Breaſt, with a large Creſt or Topping of Feathers on its Head, but is not quite ſo large as the former.

The third ſort is no bigger than a *Wood-cock*, of the ſame Colour with the firſt, and is accounted by many to be fine eating, yet the Fleſh of the former is of the nature of the Stork and *Heron*, of no good nutriment. The Skin and Feathers calcin'd, ſtop Bleeding. The Greaſe eaſes pains of the Gout, helps Deafneſs, clears the ſight, and is excellent bait to catch Fiſh with.

The *Herons*, of theſe there are three ſorts. The firſt or common *Heron* is from the tip of the Bill to the end of the Claws four Feet long to the end of the Tail about thirty eight Inches. It hath a black Creſt on the Head four Inches high, and is in ſize, Colour, and all other reſpects, exactly the ſame as is to be met with in *Ireland*,

The ſecond is larger than the former and is Feather'd much like the *Spaniſh-Gooſe*.

The third is not near as large as any of the former, but is of the ſame ſhape, and of a moſt beautiful white Colour, with red Legs. Theſe Birds are only to be met with in *Summer*, and are the fineſt of that kind I have ever

ſeen

ſeen, and many in theſe Parts would perſwade me, that they become the ſame Colour with the common *Heron*, when they are a Year old, which I am not apt to believe, but look upon them as a diſtinct Species from any of the former. All theſe ſorts are plenty in theſe parts of *America*, and have the ſame ſlow flight as thoſe with us. They feed on Fiſh, Frogs, *&c*, and like the *Rooks*, build their Neſts in high Trees, and generally many together. Their Fleſh is better than that of the *Crane*, but beſt when young, and eaten by many. The Bill in Powder, cauſeth Sleep, the Greaſe is Anodyne, eaſes Pains, and has much the ſame Properties with the *Bitterns*.

The *Crane* is a large bodied Fowl, weighing ſometimes above ten Pounds. It's Neck and Legs are long, being five Foot high when extended. The Head is black, with a fine crimſon Spot on the Crown of it, the reſt of the Body is of a Cream colour; they frequent the Savannas, Marſhes, and low Grounds, and though they are Water-fowl, yet it is thought that they do not feed on Fiſh, but only on Herbs, Grain, and ſeveral ſorts of Seeds and Inſects. They are eaſily bred up tame, and are good in Gardens to deſtroy Frogs, Worms, and other Vermine. The Inhabitants boil their Fleſh, which is tough and hard of Digeſtion, but makes good Broath. Their Quills make good Pens, and the Feathers ſerve for other uſes. The *Indians* eat their Eggs, which have a ſtrong ſmell, are hard of Digeſtion, and of an unpleaſant taſte. The Gall is good againſt Palſies, Conſumptions, Blindneſs and Deafneſs. The Fat or Greaſe helps all hardneſs, being of the Nature of Gooſe-greaſe. They flie with the Wind, make a great Noiſe, run faſt, and are ſaid to live about forty Years.

The *Storkes* are a larger Fowl than the former, and of the ſame Shape, only their Necks are thicker and ſhorter,

and are of a dark grey Colour. They are frequently to be met with amongſt the *Cranes*, they make a clattering Noiſe with their Bills, by the quick and frequent ſtriking one Chap againſt the other. It is reported by ſeveral Perſons whom I have converſed with, that they are to be found in no part of *America* but in this Province. They feed on *Frogs*, *Snails*, and many other ſorts of Inſects. The Fleſh nouriſhes as that of the *Herons* and *Bitterns*, and the other Parts of this Fowl have the ſame Virtues with them.

The *Swans*, whereof there are two ſorts. The firſt are called the *Trumpeters*, from a trumpeting ſort of noiſe they make, and are the largeſt ſort of *Swans* in theſe parts. They come here in the *Winter*, and remain with us 'till *February*, in ſuch great Flocks, that I never ſaw more of any Water-fowl in all my Travels than of them, for at that Seaſon, they are in ſuch vaſt Numbers on each ſide of the freſh Water Rivers and Creeks, that at a diſtance it ſeems to be Land covered with Snow. About Chriſtmas they are frequently ſo fat, that ſome of them are ſcarce able to fly. In *Spring* they go to the *Northern* Lakes to breed. I have ſeveral times eat of them, and do prefer them before any *Gooſe*, for the goodneſs and delicacy of their Meat, and eſpecially a *Cygnet*, or laſt years *Swan*. Theſe *Swans* are larger than any I have ſeen in *Europe*. Their Quills and Feathers are in great requeſt amongſt the Planters. As to their Fleſh and Parts, they have the ſame Virtues with that of the *Geeſe*.

The *Hoopers* are a ſecond ſort of *Swans*, and are ſo called, from a hooping Noiſe they make. This ſort are as numerous as the former, and come to theſe parts, and go at the ſame time that they do; yet the latter

abide

abide more in the Salt Water than the former, are not so large, but their Flesh and Feathers are as valuable. And it is observable, that neither these nor the other have the black piece of horny Flesh down the Head and Bill as those in *Europe* have. The Grease or Fat cleanses the Face from *Morphew*, and other Vices, and their Oil helps the *Gout*.

The *Wild Geese*, whereof there are three Sorts, but differ very little from each other, only in their Size, having black Heads and Necks. They are plenty here all the *Winter*, come and go with the *Swans*, and commonly feed with them; they eat as well as those in *Europe*, being nourishing, though hard of digestion, and are apt to breed Agues in cold weakly Constitutions; The Oil or Grease is exceeding hot, and of thin Parts, piercing and dissolving. It cures Baldness, helps Deafness, pain and noise in the Ears, is good against Palsies, Lameness, Numbness, Cramps, pains and contractions of the Sinews, and many other Disorders. The Dung is used with success in the Jaundice, Scurvy, Dropsy, and Gout. The green Dung gathered in the *Spring*, and gently dried, is best.

The *Grey Barnets*, or *Barnacles*, are in shape like the *Wild Geese*, of an Ash and dark grey colour, something less than the common Goose, with which they agree in Nature and Virtues. They are very plenty in this Province all the *Winter*, at which time they are fat and eat extraordinary well; there is no difference between them and the *Barnacles* in *Europe*. Some Writers assure us, that they breed unnaturally of the Leaves or Apples of certain Trees in the Islands in *Scotland*; others, on the contrary affirm, that they are produced from Eggs, hatched after the same manner as Geese Eggs are,

which we are intire Strangers to here, becauſe they are never to be ſeen in theſe Parts of *America* but in the *Winter* time, for they generally come and go with the Swans and Geeſe.

The *White Brants*, are ſomething larger than the former, with which they agree in Nature and Virtues, and are very plenty in the *Winter* Seaſon. Theſe Birds are as white as Snow, except the tips of their Wings, which are Black. They feed on the Roots of Sedge and Graſs in the Savannas and Marſhes, which they tear and root up like Hogs. The Planters frequently ſet Fire to theſe Savannas and Marſhes, and as ſoon as the Graſs is burnt off, theſe Fowl will come in great Flocks to eat the Roots, by which means they ſhoot vaſt Numbers of them. They are as good Meat as the other, but their Feathers are ſtubbed and good for nothing.

The great *Grey-Gulls* are as large as a *Duck*, and very plenty in theſe parts, and accounted good Food. They lay Eggs as large as a Houſe-Hen, which are found in great Quantities in the Months of *June* and *July*, on the Iſlands, in the Sounds, and near the Shoar. Theſe and the Young ones, which are call'd *Squabs*, are good Food, and prove relief to Travellers by Water, that have ſpent their Proviſions. The Greaſe of theſe, and the other *Gulls*, is good againſt the Gout, and hard ſwellings, ſtrengthens the Nerves, and eaſes Pains in ſeveral parts of the Body.

The great *Pied-Gulls*, are alſo plenty here; they are a large Fowl with black and white Feathers, and their Heads beautifully adorned with a black-hood. They lay large Eggs, which are good to eat, ſo are their *Squabs* or Young ones in the Seaſon; they are of the ſame Nature and Virtues with the former.

The

The little *Grey-Gulls* are likewiſe numerous near the Sea Shoar. They are of a curious grey Colour, about the bigneſs of a grey or *Whiſtling Plover*, and good Food, being nouriſhing and well taſted. Their Nature and Virtues are much the ſame with the former.

The *Old-wives*, but why ſo called, I know not, for they are a black and white pyed *Gull*, with extraordinary long Wings, their Feet and Bill of a fine Golden Colour. They make a ſtrange and diſmal Noiſe as they flie, and are frequently dipping their Bills in the Salt-Water, and are larger than the former, but ſeldom eaten, only by the *Indians* and *Negroes*, their Fleſh being black, hard of digeſtion, and taſtes Fiſhy.

The *Sea-Cock*, ſo called, from it's Crowing at break of Day, and in the Morning, exactly like a *Dunghill-Cock*; it is another ſort of *Gull*, of a light grey and white Colour. They are to be met with in great Numbers near the Sea-Shoar, and are larger than the former: Their Cry being ſo Domeſtick, hath deceived many, ſuppoſing ſome Inhabitants to be near them; yet it is very pleaſant, eſpecially to *Europeans*, in thoſe wild and uninhabited places. Their Fleſh is not good, therefore ſeldom or never made uſe of, except it be by the *Negroes* and *Indians*.

The *Gull*, or *Sea-mew* (this Bird is alſo called *Sea-cob*) is the ſame as in *Europe*. This Fowl is little regarded, becauſe the Fleſh is of an ill ſcent, and odious to be eaten; yet it is ſaid to help the falling ſickneſs; and the Aſhes of the whole Bird, the Gravel in the Bladder and Kidnys.

The *Tropick Bird*, ſo called, being in great plenty under the Tropicks and thereabouts, but are ſcarce any where

where elſe. They are a white *Mew*, with a forked Tail. They are a ſwift Fowl, and continually flying like the *Swallow*. What uſes or virtues they may be indued with, is uncertain, becauſe they are ſeldom or never taken.

The *Duck* and *Mallard* are exactly of the ſame ſize and Feather with thoſe in *Europe*, they are very numerous, eſpecially in *Winter*, but their Meat is not to be compared to our tame *Ducks* for goodneſs, and are accounted one of the courſeſt ſort of Water-fowl in all this Province, ſo that they are little regarded and ſeldom made uſe of except by the *Indians* and *Negroes*.

The *Black-Duck*, ſo called, from it's black colour, is full as large as the former, and is good Meat. It ſtays here all the *Summer*, and breeds. They are pretty numerous, and the Planters take their Eggs, and have them hatched at their dwelling Houſes, and they prove extraordinary good domeſtick Fowl.

The *Summer-Ducks*, ſo called, from their continuing here all that Seaſon. They have a large Creſt or Topping of Feathers on their Head, are of a beautiful pied white and black Colour, and are very plenty in theſe Parts. They generally build their Neſts contrary to moſt web-footed Fowl, in the Holes that *Wood peckers* make in large Trees, very often ſixty or ſeventy Foot from the Ground, where they hatch their Eggs; they are an extraordinary good Fowl, and eat well.

The *Whiſtling Duck*, ſo called, from it's Whiſtling when it flies and feeds.. They are of a pretty white and black Colour, but not ſo large as our Wild Duck. They are to be met with in great Flocks in ſeveral places of this Country, and eſpecially near the Mountains, and Hilly parts thereof, where 'tis thought they breed; they are good Fowl, and excellent eating.

The

The *Whiſtlers*, are another Species of *Ducks*, and are ſo called, from the Whiſtling Noiſe they make as they fly. They are leſs than our wild Ducks, and very different in their Feathers from the *Whiſtling-Ducks*, and have a greater variety of beautiful Colours than the former. They are likewiſe good to eat.

The *Scarlet Eyed Duck*, ſo called, from their red Eyes, and a red Circle of Fleſh for their Eye-lids. They are of various beautiful Colours, and are to be met with in ſeveral Places, but eſpecially near the Mountains, and the Heads of Rivers. They are alſo good Meat.

The *Shell-Drakes*, are the ſame as in *Europe*, in Feather and Size. They are in great plenty here, and are very good Meat.

The *Bull-Necks*, ſo called from their thick Necks. They are a Species of Ducks, but as large as *Barnacles*, of a whitiſh Colour; and have the thickeſt Necks of any Fowl I have ever ſeen, of the ſame bigneſs. They come here about *Chriſtmas* in great Flocks to the Creeks and Rivers. They are good Meat, but hard to kill, being a very wary Fowl; will dive as ſoon as you can ſhoot, and endure a great deal of Shot before they are kill'd.

The *Water Pheaſant*; but for what reaſon ſo improperly call'd, I know not, for it has no manner of Reſemblance of that Bird. It is a Species of Ducks, having a Creſt or Topping of pretty Feathers on it's Head, which is very Ornamental. They are about the ſize of our *Wild Ducks*, of a light brown colour, they are in great Plenty, and fine eating.

The *Shovellers*, are another kind of Ducks, ſo called, from their broad and flat Bills. They are Grey, with black Heads, and ſomething larger than our Wild Ducks. They are plenty in ſeveral parts, and are good Meat.

The

The *Blue-Wings*, are another Species of Ducks, and are ſo called, from their beautiful Blue-Wings. They are leſs than a Wild Duck, but excellent good Meat. Theſe are the firſt Fowl that appear to us in the fall of the Leaf, at which time they come in large Flocks, as is ſuppoſed from *Canada*, and other great Lakes that lie to the *Northward* of us.

The *Red-heads*, are another Species of Ducks, ſo called from their Red-heads, and are leſs than the Bull-necks. They are very plenty in the Rivers and Creeks, are ſweet Food, and very nouriſhing.

The *Swaddle-Bills*, are another Species of Ducks, of an Aſh colour, and are ſo called, from their extraordinary broad Bills. They are excellent good Meat, but not ſo plenty in theſe parts, as the other Species of Ducks are.

The *Fiſhermen*, ſo called, from their Dexterity in Fiſhing. They are like a Duck, only they have narrow Bills, with ſets of Teeth. They feed on ſmall Fiſh and Fry, which they catch as they ſwim. They eat Fiſhy, therefore not in much requeſt amongſt the Planters. The beſt way in ordering them is, to take out their Fat and Guts, then bury them under Ground for five or ſix Hours, which will make them eat well, and take away their ſtrong and fiſhy taſte; as I have been credibly informed by many in theſe Parts.

The *Raft-Fowl*, includes ſeveral ſorts of Ducks, *viz.* *Divers*, *Teals*, *Wigeons*, and various other Kinds, that go in *Rafts*, or great Flocks along the Shoar, which we know no Names for at preſent.

The *Divers*, whereof there are two ſorts. The firſt are of a Grey Colour, the other Pied, White, and Black. They are both good Fowl, and eat well, but hard to ſhoot,

ſhoot, becauſe of their dexterity in diving under Water, which they will do as quick as any one can ſhoot.

The *Wigeons* are the ſame as in *Europe*, and in great plenty in the Winter Seaſon. They eat exceedingly well.

The *Teal*, whereof there are two ſorts. The firſt is exactly the ſame as in *Europe*, and as good Eating, being more delicious than either *Divers* or *Wigeon*.

The ſecond ſort frequent the freſh Waters, and are always obſerved to be nodding their Heads when they are in the Water. Theſe ſorts are ſmaller than the former, but finer and more delicious. They are both very plenty here in the Winter Seaſon.

The *Dipper*, or *Fiſher*; theſe are ſmall Birds about the bigneſs of a *Teal*, and much the ſame as thoſe that are to be met with in the Iſlands of *Scilly*, and many other Iſlands in *Europe*. They are of a black and white Colour, and are ſo called, from their dexterity in Fiſhing and catching ſmall Fiſh, on which they feed. They eat fiſhy, for which reaſon they are not in much Requeſt amongſt the Planters.

The *Black Fluſterers*; ſome call theſe *Old Wives*; they are jet black, only the Cocks have white Faces, like the *Bald-Coots*. They always remain in the middle of the Rivers, and feed on Drift, Graſs, Carvels, or Sea Nettle. They are the fatteſt Fowl in theſe Parts, and are ſometimes ſo heavy that they cannot riſe out of the Water. They make an odd ſort of a Noiſe when they fly, and are ſomething larger than a Duck; ſome call them the great *Bald Coot*. Their Fleſh is not much admired, being of a ſtrong and fiſhy taſte, and hard of Digeſtion, but their Eggs (which are as large as thoſe of Hens) are good Nouriſhment.

The *Bald-Faces*, or *White-Faces*, are almoſt as big as a Duck, and are an extraordinary Fowl and eat well. Theſe Birds cannot Dive, and therefore are eaſy to be Shot.

The *Water-Witch*, or *Ware-Coots*, are a very ſtrange Fowl, having all over them Down, and no Feathers, and neither fly nor go, but are ſo dexterous in Diving, that ſcarce any Fowler can hit or ſhoot them They often get into the Fiſh-Wares, and are taken, becauſe they cannot fly or get over the Rods or Poles, whereof the Fiſh-Wares are made. They are not much covered or eſteemed, by reaſon they eat fiſhy and are hard of Digeſtion.

The *King's-Fiſher*, whereof there are two Sorts. The firſt is ſomethiug larger than a *Jay*, with a long Bill, and large Crop, much of the ſhape and colour of the latter, though not altogether ſo curiouſly Feathered: Theſe Birds moſt commonly frequent the Rivers, prey on ſmall Fiſh, and build their Neſts on the Shoar.

The ſecond is much the ſame as with us in *Europe*; being a fine Bird, with red Feet, long Bill, and about the bigneſs of our *Bunting*. The Chin is white with a certain mixture of Red, and the upper part of the Belly is of the ſame Colour. The lower Belly under the Tail is of a deep red, ſo are the ſides and Feathers under the Wings. The Breaſt is red, the utmoſt Borders of the Feathers being of a beautiful bleuiſh Green: From the Neck through the middle of the Back to the Tail is of a moſt lovely bright Purple or pale Blue, which by its ſplendour is apt to hurt the Eyes of thoſe that look long and ſtedfaſtly upon it. Theſe Birds, like the former, frequent the Rivers, and build their Neſts on the Shoar. The Fleſh roaſted and eaten, is good in Convulſions and Epileſies,

Epileſies, the Heart is ſometimes dryed and hung about the Neck of Children for the ſame Diſorders.

The *Pelican* in *Carolina* is a large Water-Fowl, being five Feet in length, from the point of the Bill to the end of the Tail, and almoſt equal in bigneſs to a *Swan*. It has a long thick Neck and Beak, and a great natural Wen or Pouch under the Throat, in which it keeps it's Prey of Fiſh, which it lives upon. This Pouch it will ſometimes contract and draw up to the Bill, that it is ſcarce to be ſeen. It is a Web-footed Fowl, like a Gooſe, but ſhaped more like a Duck, and of a light grey Colour. The Fleſh is ſeldom eaten, having a ſtrong fiſhy taſte, and hard of digeſtion; but being well boiled, maketh good Broth, and the Planters make handſom Tobacco-Pouches of it's Maw. They are plentifully to be met with in the *Winter* Seaſon, eſpecially near the Sounds and Sea Shoars. In *Spring* they go into the Woods to breed, and return again in *Autumn*. They have an odd kind of Note, much like the Braying of an *Aſs*, and are reported to live to a great Age, *viz.* ſixty Years or upwards. They are ſaid to be white in *Guinea*, and St. *Jerom* ſaith, that there are two ſorts of them in *Egypt*, *viz.* the Land and Water *Pelican*. The Gall of this Bird cleanſes Silver.

The *Cormorants* are the ſame as in *Europe*, only thoſe of this Province are larger. They are as numerous all over theſe Parts of *America*, as in any part of the World, eſpecially at the run of the *Herrings*, which is in *March* and *April*; at which time they are ſeen ſitting upon the Sand Banks, or Logs of Wood in the Rivers, and catch vaſt quantities of Fiſh, which is their only Food, and whereof they are very ravenous and greedy. They lay their Eggs in the beginning of the Spring, in the Iſlands,

in

in the Sound, and near the Sea Shoar in the Banks, and ſometimes on high Trees, as the *Shags* do; they are very ſtrengthning to the Stomach, and cure the Bloody Flux. The Fleſh is black, and hard of digeſtion, therefore ſeldom made uſe of.

The *Shag* is ſomewhat like the *Cormorant*, but much leſs; it differs in the colour of the Belly, which in this is blackiſh, in the other white. It ſwims in the Sea with its Head erect, and it's Body almoſt covered in the Water. It is ſo dextrous in diving, that when a Gun is diſcharged at it, as ſoon as is ſees the Fire flaſh, immediately it pops under Water, ſo that it is a hard matter to ſhoot them. I have never known or heard of any Webb-footed Birds but this, and the *Summer*-Ducks that ſit upon Trees, and build their Neſts in them. The Fleſh is black, ill-taſted, and hard of digeſtion, being much of the ſame Nature with the *Cormorant*.

The *Gannet* is a very large white Fowl, having one part of it's Wings black. It lives on Fiſh, as the *Pelican* and *Cormorant* do; it is reported, that their Fat or Greaſe (which is as yellow as Saffron) is the beſt thing known to preſerve Fire-Arms from Ruſt. The Fleſh is of a bad Taſte, and ſcarcely good for Food or Phyſick.

The *Shear-Water*, is a longer Fowl than a *Duck*, but has a much ſmaller Body. They are of a browniſh Colour, and for the moſt part upon the Wing, like the *Swallow*: There are vaſt Quantities of them on ſeveral parts of theſe Sea Coaſts (whilſt others range the Seas all over) for they are ſometimes met with five hundred Leagues from Land. I have frequently obſerved them to ſtrike down upon a Sea-rack, or Weed that grows in the Gulf of *Florida*, which is plentifully to be met with in theſe Seas. It hath many winding Stalks, which appear like

Coral,

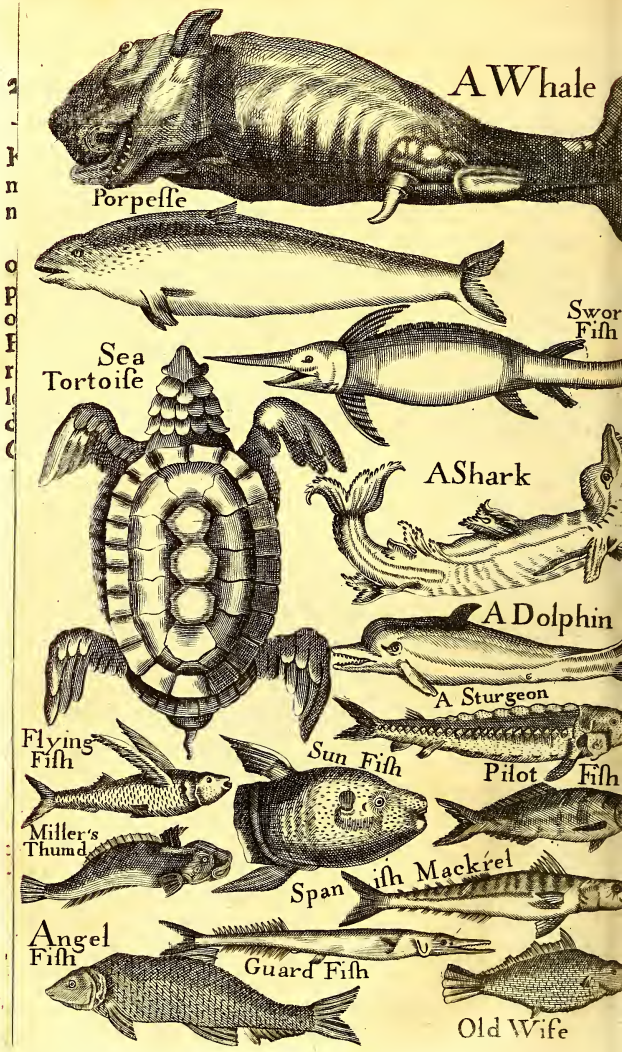
Coral, whereon grow ſhort Branches, ſet thick with narrow Leaves, amongſt which are many round Berries, without either Seeds or Grains in them. I have often taken up of this Sea-wreck (which is a kind of narrow leaf'd Sea-lentil) wherein I found ſeveral ſorts of ſmall Shell-fiſh, which I am perſuaded theſe Birds catch, and live upon. And it is the Opinion of many in theſe Parts, that theſe Birds never drink any Freſh Water, becauſe they are never ſeen any where near the Freſhes, or Rivers. Their Fleſh is of an ill Scent, therefore not good to be eaten.

Thus have I finiſhed the moſt exact Account that is yet known of the BIRDS that are to be met with in *North Carolina*; though doubtleſs there are many more different Species of them, that we are entire Strangers to at preſent, which is chiefly owing to the want of Encouragement to a ſelect number of travelling Gentlemen, whoſe Obſervations might tend to the Improvement of *Natural Knowledge*. For want of this, we are rendered incapable of being ſo well acquainted with this part of the World as the *French* and *Spaniards* are with theirs, who generally ſend abroad in Company with the *Miſſionaries* ſome of their young Gentlemen, with handſome Penſions for their ſupport, who ſoon become acquainted with the Savages of *America*, and their Languages. Theſe Gentlemen are likewiſe obliged to keep a ſtrict Journal of all their Paſſages, whereby many conſiderable Diſcoveries have been made in a few Years. Such laudable Encouragements as theſe, would undoubtedly breed an honorable Emulation amongſt the Gentlemen of our own Nation, to outdo one another even in all manner of Fatigues and Dangers, to be ſervicable to their King

King and Country. That Attempts of this Nature may always be encouraged, I ſincerely wiſh, for the Honour and Grandure of the *Britiſh* Throne.

I ſhall in the next place proceed to give an Account of the Inhabitants of the watry Elements, which at preſent can be but very imperfectly treated of, for want of Fiſhermen, and the fiſhing Trade going on in theſe Parts to perfection. Yet I am willing to ſatisfie the Curious with the beſt Account that is in my power, and leave the reſt to Time (which perfects all Things) to diſcover. The Fiſhes in the ſalt and freſh Waters of *Carolina*, are as follows.

Biblioteca


A Whale
Porpeſſe
Sea Tortoiſe
A Shark
A Dolphin
A Sturgeon
Flying Fiſh
Sun Fiſh
Pilot Fiſh
Miller's Thumb
Span iſh Mackrel
Angel Fiſh
Guard Fiſh
Old Wife

OF THE

FISH

OF

North-Carolina.

THE *Whales* differ from the *Fin-Fiſh* in their Fins. The *Fin-Fiſh* having a large Fin on the Back, where the *Whale* has none, but he has two behind his Eyes, covered with a thick black Skin, finely Marbled, with white Stroaks, and the repreſentation of Houſes, Trees, *&c.* With theſe two Fins and his Tail he ſwims and ſteers himſelf like a Boat with Oars. The Head of this Monſter is ſomewhat flat, and ſlopes downwards like the Ridge of a Houſe to the under Lip, which is broader than any part of his Body, and broadeſt in the middle behind the Bump, for between that and the

the Fins are his Eyes, which are not much bigger than those of a Bullock, with Eye-lids and Hair like Men's. The Chrystal of the Eye is not much bigger than a Pea, which in some is clear and transparent, and in others of a white or yellowish Colour. The Eyes lie low, almost at the end of the upper Lip. The Head is the third part of the Fish, and in some more. Their Lips are plain, somewhat bending like an S. and underneath the Eyes, before the two Fins, they are smooth, jet black, and round like the quarter of a Circle, but when they draw them together, they lock in one another. Within the uppermost Lip is contained the *Whalebone*, (and not in the Fins, as some have imagined) which is of a brownish black and yellow Colour, with streaks of several other Colours, but the *Whalebone* of the young ones, is generally Blue. The *Whalebone* hangs down on both sides within the Mouth, all hairy like a Horses Tail, and in some it is bended like a *Scymeter*, and in others like a half Moon. In one side, in a Row, there are generally *Two hundred and fifty* Pieces of *Whalebone*, and as many on the other, besides the small Bone, which is not regarded, because they cannot well come at it to cut it out. The middlemost is the greatest, and is sometimes eighteen or ninteen Foot long. It lies in a flat row, one Piece by another, and is broadest at the top, where it sticks to the upper Lip, towards the Root it is covered with white Sinews, which when boiled, smell pleasantly, There grows small *Whalebone* at the Root of the greater, whereof they make Boxes, Handles for Knives, walking Sticks, and the like.

The Tongue lies amongst the *Whalebone*, and is close fixed to the upper Chop, which is very large and white, with black Spots at the edges. It has a soft spungy Fat, and cannot be easily cut, so that it is generally flung away, though

though it would yield ſeven or eight Barrels of train Oil. Upon his Head there is a Bump, and before his Eyes and Fins at the top of this Bump on each ſide, there is a ſpout hole, bended like an S. out of which he blows the Water ſo fiercely, that it roars like a great Wind. Juſt before in the under Lip, there is a Cavity or Hole, which fits the upper as exactly as a ſheath does a Knife, and through this hole he draws the Water he ſpouts out; when he is wounded, his blowing reſembles the roaring of the Sea in a great Storm. Neither does he hear when he ſpouts the Water, and is eaſieſt ſtruck at that time. The Belly and Back are quite Red in ſome, but under the Belly they are ſometimes White, and ſome of them Coal Black. They look very beautiful when the Sun ſhines on them, and the ſmall clear Waves over them, glitter like Silver. The outward Skin is thin like Parchment, and eaſily pulled off when the Fiſh grows hot, which they frequently do by ſwiming, and then they ſtink.

The Yard is a ſtrong Sinew, and from ſix to eight Feet long, and where the Yard is fixed, the Skin is doubled, ſo that it lies like a Knife in a Sheath. The *Pudenda* of the Female is ſhaped like that of a large four footed Beaſt. They have Breaſts, with Nipples at the ſides of it, like thoſe of a Cow. When they couple together, they ſtand upright, with their Heads out of the Water, but how long they carry their Young, is uncertain. Neither are they ever obſerved to have more than two young ones at a time. When they are brought forth, they are as big as an Hogſhead; they ſuck their Dams, whoſe Milk is very white and ſweet, but taſtes Fiſhy. The *Sperm*, when freſh, ſmells like wheaten Flower boild in Water, and may be drawn out in Threads like hot Sealing Wax or Glew; when cold, it turns to a Muſk colour, ſmells ſtrong, and is to be kept ſweet

by no means. At certain Seaſons there may be whole Pails full of it taken out of the Water, for it ſwims upon the Sea like Fat, as does that of the *Sea-Horſes* and *Seals*, the Sailors frequently make twiſted Whips of the Sinews of the Yard. The Bones are hard like thoſe of a great four-footed Beaſt, but porous like a Spunge, and filled with Marrow, but when that is conſumed, the Holes are as large as thoſe of a Honey-Comb, They have two large ſtrong Bones which hold up the under Lip, and they lie oppoſite to each other in form of an half Moon, ſome of which are twenty Feet long of a ſide. The Fleſh is courſe and hard, like that of a Bull, mixed with many Sinews, and is very dry and lean when boiled, becauſe their Fat lies wholy betwixt the Fleſh and the Skin. When the Sailors have a mind to eat of it, they cut great pieces off before the Tail, which is tendereſt, and boil it. Others report the Tongue to be good Food, and whenever they kill any of them eat part of it; ſome of the Fleſh looks green and blue like powdered Beef. The Fat is mixed with Sinews, which hold the Oil, as a Spunge does Water: The other ſtrong Sinews are chiefly about the Tail, with which he turns and winds himſelf, as a Rudder does a Ship. He ſwims as ſwift as a Bird flies, and makes a track in the Sea like a large Ship under ſail. Their Tails do not ſtand up as the Tails of moſt other Fiſhes do, but lie horizontally as thoſe of the *Dolphin*, and are from three to four Fathom broad.

The middling *Whales* are about fifty or ſixty Feet long, and commonly yield ſeventy, eighty, or ninty Barrels of Fat or Oil. Beſides the uppermoſt thin Skin, there is likewiſe another about an Inch thick, and of the ſame colour with the other, but both are ſo brittle, when dry, that they are of no value; and the ſoftneſs of the Skin is reckoned to be the cauſe why the *Whale*, though the

the ſtrongeſt and biggeſt of Fiſhes in the Water, cannot make much uſe of his ſtrength. The Guts are of a fleſh Colour, and the Dung within them yellow: Their Food is chiefly *Sea-Snails*, *Herrings*, and other ſmall Fiſh; when they ſee a Man or a Long Boat, they dive and run away; but if they are wounded, or in danger, they value a Man no more than a Straw, and frequently beat the Long-Boat in pieces, but great Ships are too many for them, for when they ſtrike againſt them with their Tails, they generally receive more Damage than they give. They ſometimes run away with ſome thouſand fathom of Rope-line (after they are ſtruck with the *Harpoon* or *Sharp-Iron*, that is fixed to a Stick, and reſembles a Dart) a great deal ſwifter than a Ship can ſail, or a Bird flie, by which means the Lines are ſometimes ſet on fire, when there is not proper Care taken to prevent them, by conſtantly throwing Water on them as they run out. They ſhift their Quarters, as is ſuppoſed, according to the Seaſons. They have Ailments as well as other Beaſts, and are ſtrangely afflicted with Lice; they will ſometimes leap out of the Water, as if they were in an Agony. Before a Tempeſt they beat the Water about with their Tails like Duſt. They are obſerved to have the greateſt Strength when they ſtrike ſide-ways. If they eſcape, their Wounds are quickly healed up, becauſe of their Fat; but the Wound always leaves a white Scar behind it.

Theſe Monſters are very numerous on the Coaſts of *North-Carolina*, and the Bone and Oil would be a great Advantage to the Inhabitants that live on the Sand-Banks along the Ocean, if they were as dexterous and induſtrious in Fiſhing for them as they are Northwards; but as I obſerved before, the People in theſe parts are not very much given to Induſtry, but wait upon Providence to

throw thoſe dead Monſters on Shoar, which frequently happens to their great advantage and Profit. For which Reaſon abundance of Inhabitants dwell upon the Banks near the Sea for that Intent, and the benefit of Wrecks of Veſſels which are ſometimes driven in upon theſe Coaſts. Not many Years ago there were two Boats that came from the Northward to *Ocacock* Iſland, to fiſh, and carried away that Seaſon Three Hudred and Forty Barrels of Oil, beſide the Bone, but theſe Fiſhermen going away without paying the Tenths to the Governor, they never appeared to fiſh on theſe Coaſts afterwards, or any other that I ever could hear of. I only mention this to ſhew with what Advantage the Fiſhing for *Whales* might be carried on here, when only one Tryal carried off ſo rich and valuable a Cargoe.

There are four ſorts of *Whales* in theſe parts: The firſt is the *Sperma-Ceti Whale*, from whence the *Sperma-Ceti* is taken, and is the moſt choice for its rich and valuable Commodities. Theſe ſort are ſometimes found on this Coaſt, and are a rich Prize to thoſe that are ſo fortunate as to find them. The other ſorts are of a prodigious large ſize, and it is of theſe the Bone and Oil are made, the Oil being only the Blubber or Oily Fleſh or Fat of this Fiſh boiled. Theſe differ not only in Colour, ſome being all White, others pied, and others not, but likewiſe very much in Shape, one being called the *Bottle-Noſe*, and the other the *Shovel-Noſe*, which is as different as a *Salmon* from a *Sturgeon*.

Theſe Fiſh are never found dead or floating to the Shoar with their Tongues in their Heads, for it is the Opinion of many in theſe parts, that the *Thraſhers* and *Sword-Fiſh*, (which are mortal Enemies to the *Whales* where ever they meet them) eat the Tongue out of their Head,

Head, as ſoon as they have killed him; but whether this is done by the Fiſh abovementioned, or by others of the ſame voracious Nature, I will not take upon me to determine, but leave it to the determination of every judicious Reader.

There is another ſort of theſe *Whales*, or great Fiſhes, though not commonly found on theſe Coaſts, and are contrary to all the others in ſhape, that were ever found in theſe Parts, being about Sixty Feet in length, and not above four Feet and a half Diameter; I never ſaw but one of them. It is reported that ſome *Indians* in *America* will go out to Sea and get on the *Whale's* Back, and peg, and plug up his Spouts, and ſo kill him, which I can ſcarce believe, except they have ſome ſecret Spell to make them ſtupid, to treat them after that manner. It is very ſtrange to ſee how they will throw up the Water with their Spouts, by which means they are ſeen or diſcovered at great diſtances. They cannot abide long under Water for want of Air, which is common to moſt large Fiſhes; ſo that they are frequently ſeen to riſe with their Heads and Backs above the ſurface of the Water, and ſpouting it in the Air, after which it is ſaid, they draw in a ſufficient quantity of Air neceſſary for their ſupporting of Life.

The *Crampois*, is another large Fiſh, about twenty five or thirty Feet long, and is accounted by many to be a young *Whale*, by reaſon it has Spouts as the *Whale* has and produces as good Oil as the former.

The *Bottle-Noſes*, are another Species of large Fiſhes, between the *Crampois* and the *Porpoiſe*. They are to be met with for the moſt part near the Soundings, and are never obſerved to Swim leiſurely, as ſometimes other Fiſhes do, but are continually in purſuit of their Prey, in great Shoals, like wild Horſes, leaping now and then above

above the Water. Some make uſe of them, and eſpecially the *French*, who eſteem them good Food, and eat them both freſh and ſalt. Theſe as well as the *Porpoiſe*, are often heard to puff and blow very ſtrong, as they are Swimming.

I hope it will not be unpleaſing to the Reader, to give an Account what I ſaw done by theſe Fiſhes, *viz.* In our Paſſage through *Pamticoe* Sound, we had very good Diverſion with them, which were in great Numbers about the Ship; one of our Company ſhot amongſt them, with a Brace of Balls, and happened to wound one of them, which we could plainly diſcover from ſome of it's Blood in the Water, the Weather being very calm; which was no ſooner done, but all the reſt left us in purſuit of the one that was wounded, and we could often ſee it leaping above the Water, for near half an Hour, ſtill ſtriving to avoid the reſt, 'till at laſt it was quite ſpent, (as we ſuppoſed) for we could not perceive it any longer leaping out of the Water. The Maſter of the Veſſel aſſured me, that the reſt devoured it, which they always do with thoſe wounded, ſtill purſuing the Blood, like a Pack of Dogs after a Deer. They are very fat and produce good Oil.

The *Porpoiſe*, or *Sea-Hog*, is large, being above four Feet long and two and a half thick, the Figure is ſomewhat long and round, continually tapering towards the Tail. It is covered with a ſlender thin Skin, of a blackiſh colour, and has only three Fins like the *Dolphin*, It has a large Head, ſmall Eyes, and a forked Tail. They are frequently to be met with all over the Ocean and Rivers that are ſalt. We have a freſh-water Lake in the great Sound of *North Carolina*, that has *Porpoiſes* in it, with ſeveral other ſorts of unknown Fiſh (as the *Indians* report) that we are intire Strangers to. As to the *Porpoiſes*,

poiſes, thy are generally very fat, and make good Oil. They prey on other Fiſh, ſuch as *Drums* and *Mullets*, yet are ſeldom or never known to take the Bait, ſo as to be catched with a Hook. Some call theſe *Herring Hogs*, from their feeding on thoſe Fiſh, and their Fleſh being ſo very fat, like Pork. They are much fatter than a *Dolphin*, but not ſo good; the Gentry bake it as Veniſon, but it is not pleaſant Food. They are always approaching the Shoars in great Numbers before Storms.

The *Thraſhers* are likewiſe large, as I have been informed, and one of the mortal Enemies that purſue and kill the *Whale*, as I ſaid before. They make good Oil, but are ſeldom found in theſe Parts.

The *Sword-Fiſh*, or *Saw-Fiſh*, has a long broad Bone fixed to his Noſe, with ſharp Teeth like a Saw, on each ſide of it. It has two Fins on the Back, that next the Tail is hollow like a Sickle. He has four underneath his Belly, *viz.* two on each ſide. The Tail is like a piece of Board, painted behind and underneath, but not divided, his Shape from Top to Tail, is like a Man's Arm. His Eyes ſtand high out of his Head; his Noſtrils are oblong, and his Mouth is directly under his Eyes. They are from twelve to twenty Feet long, and are generally very fat on the Back, almoſt like a Hog. They are mortal Enemies to the *Whale*, about which they gather in great Numbers, and when they kill him, only eat out his Tongue, as is ſuppoſed, and then the *Whale* floats to Shoar, which is an extraordinary Prize to thoſe that find him. They likewiſe joyn with the *Thraſhers*, to kill them, and it is reported that they will ſingly attack a Whale. In calm Weather, the Fiſhers lye by till they kill the *Whale*, and upon the approach of the Boats, the *Sword-Fiſh* being frighted, retires. The

Fleſh

Flesh is dry and solid, but it is said to nourish much, and as good as a Sturgeon.

The *Devil-Fish*, so called, from the large pair of Horns it has upon its Head, and as near as I could be informed; it is shaped like a *Scate* or *Stingray*. It is of a monstrous large Size and Strength, for it hath been known to weigh a Sloop's Anchor, and run away with the Vessel for a League or two, and to bring her back again almost to the same Place, against the Tide. This I have been informed of by several of the most credible and substantial Planters in these parts; and that this strange and wonderful Adventure has happened more than once. They are in most of our Inlets, but I never heard of any of them being killed or taken, therefore cannot inform the Reader what Uses they are of, but doubtless they would make good Oil as well as other large Fishes, if they they could be taken to make the Experiment.

The *Shark*, whereof there are two sorts. The first is called the *Paracoda-Noses*, the other the *Shovel-Noses*: Both these are very large, bold, voracious and dangerous Fishes, especially to those that that have the misfortune to fall over board. It is reported, that they will follow Ships for Hours together, and if either Man or Dog, or any other living Animal happen to fall into the Water, they immediately seize and snap in two, having exceeding sharp, and several Rows of Teeth in their Heads: Some of them are so large, that they are said to weigh about four thousand Weight. They are easily caught with a Bait, but can never take their Prey 'till they turn themselves on their Backs, wherefore some *Negroes* and others that can swim and dive well, go naked into the Waters with a Knife in their Hands, and fight them, and commonly kill, or wound him, so that he turns Tail and runs away. Their Flesh is eaten in time of scarcity, but

but is not very palatable, having a ſtrong fiſhy taſte. Their Liver makes good Oil to dreſs Leather with, and the Bones found in their Head, are ſaid to haſten the Birth, and eaſe the Stone, by bringing it away. Their Back-bone is of one entire thickneſs, having many Joints in it, whereof I have known Buttons made by the Sailors and others that live in thoſe remote Places. *Gillius* ſays, that the People of *Marſeilles* told him, that they had caught one of them, in which they found a Man armed with a Coat of Mail.

The following Relation, will in ſome meaſure corroborate the former Account of the *Negroes* killing them: *Auguſt* 1730, a Sloop ſailed from *North Carolina*, bound to the Iſlands in the *Weſt Indies*, and after four Days ſailing from the Bar, was moſt unfortunately overſet, and all the Crew, except the Maſter, two Sailors, and one *Negroe*, were drowned, theſe being upon Deck at the time when this misfortune happened, and had the good providence to get upon the Keel of the Veſſel, where they remained twenty one Days, and then were taken up by a Veſſel trading to *Europe*; having neither Water or any other Neceſſaries to ſupport Nature, but by Gods Providence, the *Negroe* killed a *Shark*, whereon they lived, and was the only ſupport they had during the ſaid time, which was confirmed by the Maſter in his Letter from *London*, to his Friends in *North Carolina*

The *Pilot Fiſh* is of a deep Blue, and the Belly of a lighter Colour than the Back or Sides. The Scales are ſmooth like a *Tench*. It's Back is ſpeckled like a *Seal-skin*. When it is ſwimming, it appears much like a *Mackarel*, and looks as if it were painted Blue and White, like a *Barber's Pole*. It is reported, that the *Shark* is always attended by one or two of theſe Fiſhes, which he will

not devour, though never ſo hungry, becauſe they find out the Prey for him. They are reckoned exceeding good to eat.

The *Dolphin*, is a large Fiſh, not much unlike a *Porpoiſe*. It has two ſtrong Fins, which like the Arms of a Man, are joined to the Shoulder-blades, and is ſaid to be of that ſwiftneſs, that it will eaſily overtake a Ship in full ſail before the Wind. They generate like rational Animals, bringing forth their Young alive, not from Spawn but Seed, and have but one or two at a time. They go with young ten Months, breed only in the *Summer*, and are ſaid to live two or three hundred Years. They ſometimes ſwim in Shoals, and at other times only the Male and Female together. It is reported that when they are taken, they are obſerved to deplore their Condition by Groans, Lamentations, and a flood of Tears. It is alſo ſaid to be a certain ſign of a Storm ſhortly to follow, when they are ſeen ſporting, and frequently moving their Bodies in the Water. They have a groaning Voice, ſharp Sight, and are ſaid to be lovers of Muſick and Men. There are great numbers of them to be met with in theſe Seas, and are ſaid to live out of the Water for two or three Days. They are much deceived who imagine *Dolphins* to be of the Figure they are uſually repreſented on Signs; that Error being more owing to Painters, than any ſuch thing in Fact, for they are ſtraight and not crooked. Their Fleſh is eaten by the *Dutch*, and is of good Account amongſt the *French*; though according to the Accounts of ſome, it yields no very grateful Taſte. The Liver is of a tender Subſtance, and very nouriſhing, ſo is the Tongue. The Bowels ſmell and taſte like *Violets*, and help the Spleen. The Aſhes of the whole Fiſh applied with Water, is good againſt the *Tetters*, *Ring-worms*, *Scruff* and *Leproſie*.

The

The *Flying-fiſh* is ſlender and long, the Eyes large, and the Tail forked. The Body is in ſhape like a Seal's, and in colour like one of our Mullets. It has two large Fins near the Head, which reſemble a pair of Wings, one on the Back, and two underneath the Belly, with theſe Fins, it flies near a Gun-ſhot before it touches the Water, and when it hath wet it's Wings it will mount up again. They are conſtantly chaſed by the *Dolphins*, which ſwim ſo faſt, that they are often catched by them as they drop into the Water. There are vaſt Shoals of them in theſe Seas, and when they riſe out of the Water, at a diſtance, appear like a large flock of ſmall Birds.

The *Dog-fiſh*, is a ſmall ſort of the *Shark* kind, but ſeldom exceeds twenty Pounds. They are frequently caught with the Hook and Line when they fiſh for *Drum*. They have a long tapering Body without Scales, but covered with a ſharp hard Skin, that is made uſe of to poliſh fine Wood. Their Snout is a little long and round at the point, the Fleſh is white, of eaſy concoction, but of no pleaſant Taſte, and is therefore beſt eaten with Muſtard or ſome ſharp Sauce. They are very numerous in theſe Parts, but little regarded or made uſe of, where there are ſo many delicate ſorts to be had in ſuch plenty. The Fat of theſe Fiſh, and the *Shark*, have much the ſame Virtues with the *Alligator*.

The *Spaniſh Mackarel*, they are in ſhape and colour like the common *Mackarel*, only theſe are much thicker, and generally about two Feet long; there are vaſt numbers of them in theſe Seas. They are caught with Hook and Line in the Inlets, and ſometimes a ſmall diſtance out at Sea, being a voracious Fiſh, greedily ſwallowing either Beat or Fiſh that comes in their way. They are a very fine hard Fiſh, and of good Taſte. The Liver eaten, helps Obſtruction of the Liver and Jaundice.

The *Cavallies* are about the bigneſs of a *Mackarel*, the Fins and Tail are partly like a *Dolphins*. They have large Eyes, and are of a browniſh colour on their Backs, and their Bellies white; they have exceeding ſmall Scales, and a very thick Skin. They are taken in the ſame places with the *Spaniſh-Mackarel*, and are one of the firmeſt Fiſhes known in theſe parts, and will therefore keep ſweet (in the extremity of the hot Weather) two or three Days without Salt, when others will Stink in half a Day, if not Salted. Thoſe that catch them, immediately take off their Scales, otherwiſe you muſt pull off the Skin and Scales when boiled; the Skin being the choiceſt part of the Fiſh. Their Meat is exceeding White, and very reliſhing when it is well Dreſt.

The *Boneto's* are very fine and palatable Fiſhes, and generally about a Yard long. They moſt commonly frequent the Inlets and Waters near the Ocean, and are kill'd with the *Harpoon* and *Fiſh-gig*, but ſeldom or never with the Hook and Line, though they are very plenty in ſeveral places on this Coaſt.

The *Blue-Fiſh*, ſo call'd, from their being of that colour, they are accounted one of the beſt ſort of Fiſhes in theſe parts, being very fat. They have a forked Tail, and are partly ſhaped like a *Dolphin*. They are as large and as long as a Salmon, and as good. They come to theſe Coaſts in the fall of the Year, and after there has been one black Froſt, in great Shoals, ſo that the *Indians* and others who wade into the Waters ſtrike and kill vaſt Numbers of them with their *Fiſh-gigs*. Sometimes many Cart loads of them are found dead and left dry on the Sea Shore; which is occaſioned for the moſt part by their eager purſuit after the ſmall Fiſh; by which means they and ſeveral other Fiſhes run themſelves on Shoar, and the Tides leaving them on the dry Sands they cannot

recover

recover the Water again and ſo dye; wherefore thoſe that are diſpoſed to get up early before the Fowl come to prey, may get what quantities they pleaſe of ſeveral ſorts of Fiſhes all along theſe coaſts. And notwithſtanding theſe Blue-fiſh are accounted ſo extraordinary good, yet they ſometimes occaſion Sickneſs after eating them, *viz.* violent heats all over the Body with Shiverings, Head-ach, and the like, which is chiefly owing to the Gall being broke in ſome of them, which is very hurtful, as I found by giving it to a Dog.

The *Drum fiſh*, whereof there are two ſorts, *viz.* the Red and the Black. The Red is a large ſcaly Fiſh, much bigger than the *Blue-fiſh*, ſome of them being above four Feet long; the Body is excellent firm Meat, and extraordinary good nouriſhment; their Heads exceed in goodneſs all the Fiſh in theſe parts, being the moſt delicious Diſh I ever met with. There are greater Numbers of them to be met with in *Carolina*, than any other ſort of Fiſh. Thoſe that are diſpoſed to fiſh for them, eſpecially every new Flood, catch as many Barrels full as they pleaſe, with Hook and Line, for at that time they will catch them as faſt as they can throw their Bait into the Water, which is generally a ſoft *Crab*, and ſo Salt them up and Tranſport them to other parts that are ſcarce of Proviſions.

The *Black-Drums* are a thicker made Fiſh, and much fatter than the former; they are an excellent good Fiſh, but not ſo common here, as they are in the more *Northerly* parts of this Continent, they are taken after the ſame manner with the former, *viz.* with Hook and Line.

The *Angel-fiſh*, ſo called from it's beautiful Golden Colour, that ſhines all about it's Head and Belly; it is in ſhape exactly like the *Bream*, and is very good to eat. The ſame ſort of Fiſh is plentifully to be met with all along

along the Coaſt of *Bermudas*, and is very much eſteemed by the Inhabitants of that Iſland.

The *Baſs*, or *Rock-fiſh*, are to be met with both in the ſalt and freſh Water; when they are young they very much reſemble a *Grey-Ling*, but they grow to the ſize of the large *Cod-fiſh*. They are a good, firm, and well taſted Fiſh, and are in great plenty in theſe parts; they are good Food, eſpecially the Heads of the large ones ſouſed, make a choice Diſh.

The *Mullets* are the ſame as with us in ſize and goodneſs, and are in greater plenty here, than in moſt parts of *Europe*, eſpecially where the Waters are ſalt and brackiſh. They are killed by ſtriking them with the *Fiſh-gig*, or caught in *Nets*, for they ſeldom or never take the Bait. I have frequently known them at Night-time, to leap into the *Cannoes*, and likewiſe vaſt numbers of them to be found dead on the dry Sands or Shoars. They are much of the Nature of the *Pike*. They ſtrengthen the Stomach, and are good againſt the *Cholick*, *&c.*

The *Sheeps-head*, is a Fiſh, ſo called, from it's having Teeth in it's Head like a Sheep. It is much about the bigneſs of the *Angel-fiſh*, and partly ſhaped like him, being flat. It has the vogue of being one of the choiceſt Fiſhes in this Province: Moſt certainly it is a delicate Fiſh, and well reliſhed, yet I think there are many others as good. It is taken with the Hook and Line as the *Drum*, . They are plenty in all our Salt-water Rivers and Inlets, and generally weigh two to three Pounds, and ſometimes more.

The *Plaice* are here very large and plenty, being the ſame as with us in *Europe*, they are of good nouriſhment, but more watry than *Soals*. The beſt *Plaice* have the blackeſt Spots, as the beſt *Flounders* have the reddeſt.

The

The *Soals* are found here, but not in ſuch plenty as generally other Fiſh are, but are as good and as ſweet here, as in any part of *Europe*. They are of the nature of the *Plaice* and *Flounder*, but a much better Fiſh, being more firm and ſolid, and afford more plenty of nouriſhment. The *Indians* and others kill vaſt quantities of theſe two ſorts, and the *Flounders*, with their *Fiſh-gigs*, eſpecially in the dark Nights, when the Weather is calm, with Lights.

The *Shads* are the ſame here as in *Europe*; they are pleaſant, ſweet, and nouriſhing, but are full of Bones, that it is dangerous to eat them without great care. They are to be met with in great plenty at ſome Seaſons. They are ſaid to be ſomething Hypnotick in their Nature.

The *Fat-backs*, are ſo called, from being one of the fatteſt Fiſhes ever yet known, for when they are fryed in a Pan, they neither uſe Oil or Butter for that purpoſe. They are like the *Mullet*, but not ſo large, they are an excellent ſweet Fiſh, eat well, and are very nouriſhing.

The *Guar*, or *Guard-fiſh*, whereof there are two ſorts, *viz.* the White and the Green. The White is ſhaped almoſt like a *Pike*, but more ſlender. It's Mouth has a long ſmall Bill, ſet with very ſharp Teeth with which it catches it's prey which are ſeveral ſorts of fry and ſmall Fiſhes. They have ſtrong large Scales ſo firmly knit together, that it is a hard matter to pierce through them with the ſharpeſt Knife. When they dreſs them, they ſlit the Belly, where the Scales are not ſo ſtrong or Armor-like, and take off their Skin, which they throw away as uſeleſs. The Meat is white and firm, and looks rather like Fleſh than Fiſh. It is but very indifferent and courſe Food, therefore not much coveted by the Planters, though the *Indians* are very fond of them. The Gall

is

is very Green, and a moſt violent *Cathartick* if taken inwardly.

The *Green-guard*, is ſhaped in all reſpects like the other, only it is not ſo large, and it's Scales are Finer. The upper Jaw is the ſame as in the *Alligator*, moveable. It's Bones when fry'd or broyl'd, remain as green as Graſs, though the Meat be of a white colour, and is but indifferent Food. The ſame ſort of Fiſh is generally to be met with on the Coaſts of *Ireland*, before the Seaſon of the *Mackarel*, and ſeldom afterwards.

The *Scate*, or *Stingre*, is altogether of the nature of the *Thornback*, but ſtronger. They are the ſame here as are to be met with in ſeveral parts of *Europe*, and are very common; but the great plenty of other good Fiſh makes them little regarded, for few or none eat them in this Province (except the the *Negroes* and *Indians*) though they are at every Planter's Door, as far as the ſalt Waters are. The Skin is uſed to poliſh *Ivory*, and fine Wood; it is ſaid that they couple with the *Thornback*, and grow till they weigh One hundred and Sixty Pounds. The Oil of the Liver is good in hard Swellings, and the Aſhes of the Skin help running Ulcers of the *Head* and *Baldneſs*.

The *Thornbacks* are the ſame here as in *Europe*, but not ſo plenty as the *Scate* and *Whip-Rays*. Their Fleſh is moiſt, nouriſhes much, and reſtores in long and deep Conſumptions, the Liver is ſweet, and has the ſame virtues. The Gall cures Diſeaſes of the Ears and Itch.

The *Conger*, or great *Sea-Eel*, always remains in the Salt Waters, it is white, fat, and ſweet Fleſh, which nouriſhes to exceſs, and is dangerous becauſe of Surfeits: they are beſt when firſt boiled in Water, Salt, Sweet-Herbs, and Spices, then Broiled, or Collared, and then they are exceeding good Meat. Theſe kind of Fiſh

are

are better known to the *Northward* of *America*, than in this Province.

The *Lamprey*, or *Lampron*, is not common in these Parts but plenty to the *Northward*. They are best in *March* and *April*, being then fattest; in *Summer* they are harder and leaner. They are about a Yard long, live in the Sea in Rocky places, and in the Mouths of Rivers, and weigh about twelve pound Weight: They eat Flesh, and when taken, are said to fly at the Fishers, and to be an Enemy to the *Conger*. They are sometimes taken in the Fish-Wairs, but the *Indians* cannot endure them, neither will they eat them, though they are fond of most other sorts of Fish found in these Parts. *Pliny* reporteth, that they Spawn at all times of the Year, whereas all other Fish have certain Seasons. The Flesh is sweet and of good Nourishment, yet it is apt to cause Surfeits like the former, with which it agrees in Nature and Virtues.

The *Eels* are plenty in all our Rivers, and eat as well as in any part of the World. Their Flesh is very sweet, and yields much Nourishment, but apt to surfeit if much eaten. The Fat is good against blows and discolouring of the Skin, dropt into the Ears, helps old Pains and Deafness. The Gall is excellent against Suffusions of the Eyes, and the Blood warm with Wine helps the *Cholick*.

The *Sun-Fish* is very fat and rounder than a *Bream*, it's hinder part is invironed with a Circular Fin, which serves instead of a Tail, so that it may seem to be but the Head of a Fish, or a Fish in part rather than a whole one. They are plenty in these parts of *America*, and sometimes weigh a hundred Weight; they are commonly two or three Feet in length, they have no Scales, but are covered with a hard thick and sharp Skin, the colour

whereof on the Back is black, and on the Belly a light ſilver grey. They are extreamly well taſted, therefore in great Eſteem amongſt the Inhabitants.

The *Toad-Fiſh*, or rather the *Sea Urchin*, becauſe they are nothing but a Skin full of Prickles, and very few Bones. They are as ugly as a *Toad*, and of no manner of Uſe only to be preſerved and hung up in *Grottos* to look at. Their manner of ſwimming is to rowl and tumble round like a Ball.

The *Sea-Tench* is of a blackiſh colour, but exactly in ſhape like a *Tench*, except in the back Fins, which are like thoſe of a *Perch*. They are as good if not better than the freſh-water *Tench*; they are taken by Angling with Hook and Line as the *Drum* and *Pearch*, near the Inlets, or a ſmall diſtance out at Sea, where they are in great Plenty.

The *Salt-Water Trouts*, commonly called the *White Trouts*, are exactly ſhaped like the *Trouts* with us, only theſe have blackiſh and not Red Spots. They are in great plenty in the Sounds, near the Inlets, and Salt Waters; but they are not red within like ſome Trouts. They are excellent good, but ſo tender, that if they are in or near the freſh Waters, and a ſudden Froſt come on, they are ſo benumb'd, that they float as dead on the ſurface of the Water, at which Seaſon they take Cannoes full of them, yet notwithſtanding they are thus benumb'd they will recover again by the heat of the Sun, or put them into warm Water they will become brisk and lively. They are taken with the Bait, in or near the Salt Waters.

The *Crocus*, ſo called, from the croaking Noiſe it makes in ones Hand when it is taken with the Hook and Bait. They are in ſhape like a *Perch*, and in taſte like a *Whiteing*, and are very plenty.

The

The *Smelts*, are the ſame here as I have obſerved in ſeveral parts of *Europe*. They are about eight or nine Inches long, and one broad; they ſmell like Violets, and are of the fineſt, lighteſt, ſofteſt, and beſt Juice, of moſt other Fiſh, eſpecially in the *Winter*, and when full of Spawn. They lye down a great way in the Sound towards the Ocean, where they are very plenty, and vaſt numbers of them are taken at certain Seaſons of the Year.

The *Sea-Bream* is thin, broad, and flat, exactly reſembling our Freſh-water *Bream*; though there hath not been any ſuch Fiſh diſcovered yet in the freſh Waters of *Carolina*, that I could ever learn. Their Fleſh is white and ſolid, of good Juice and Nouriſhment, and eaſy of Digeſtion. They are very plenty in the Sound and Salt-Water.

The *Taylor* is about the bigneſs of a middling *Trout*, but of a blueiſh and green Colour, with a forked Tail like a *Mackrel*. They are excellent fine and delicious, Fiſhes, very plenty in the ſalt and brackiſh Waters, where they are caught with the Bait.

The *Herrings* are not quite ſo large as thoſe with us in *Ireland*, and other parts of *Europe*. They come in ſuch great Shoals to Spawn in the Months of *March* and *April*, that I have ſeen the *Chriſtian* Inhabitants catch as many Barrels full as they pleaſed, or as long as their Salt laſted to preſerve them, with Sieves and Shovels, inſtead of Nets; for at that Seaſon they run up the Creeks and ſmall Rivulets of Water in ſuch Numbers, that the *Bears* rake them out of the Water, as I have obſerved elſewhere. When they are freſh their Fleſh is very white and more delicious than the *Herring* with us in *Europe*, but when they are Salted they become red, and if dreſt with Oil and Vinegar reſemble an *Anchovy* very much, being far

beyond any I have ever met with in *Europe*, when well Pickled, but if thoſe Fiſh are eaten too greedily whilſt freſh, are apt to breed Feavers. The Planters export ſeveral Barrels from hence to the Iſlands in the *Weſt-Indies* and other parts that are ſcarce of Proviſions.

THUS I have given you the moſt exact and Impartial account of the Salt-water Fiſh that came to my knowledge during my ſtay in thoſe parts, though I have eat of ſeveral other ſorts of Fiſh which I have omitted by reaſon that they are not diſtinguiſhed by any certain Engliſh Names, that I cou'd learn, yet the *Indians* are well acquainted with them and have very uncouth Names for, which no doubt the *Chriſtians* in time will diſcover, eſpecially when this Colony is better inhabited and the Fiſhing Trade is well carry'd on. I ſhall therefore proceed to give an account of the FISH that are to be met with in the freſh Waters.

The *Sturgeon* is the firſt of theſe whereof we have great plenty, all the freſh parts of our Rivers being well ſtored with them. The upper parts of this fiſh are of a ſordid Olive Colour, or betwixt a grey and a black: The Belly of a Silver Colour. They have a midling Head; very ſmall Eyes, for the bulk of the Fiſh. The Snout is long, broad and ſharp, and the Mouth without Teeth, they have no Chops, from whence it appears that they feed by ſucking. They are a large Fiſh with a long Body, ſixteen Fins and five rows of Scales; two on each ſide, and one on the back: The Scales of the upper row which are in the middle of the Back, being greater than the reſt, riſe higher; of theſe there are no certain Number; for it has been obſerved that ſome have Eleven ſome Twelve and others Thirteen; this row is extended from the Head

Head to the fin of the Back near the Tail. The Rows on the ſides extend from the Head to the very Tail; made up with about thirty ſharp Thorns or Prickles. The lower row which begin at the firſt pair of the Fins and end at the ſecond, are each made up of Eleven, Twelve or Thirteen; all the Scales of the rows in general, have on their Tops ſtrong ſharp Prickles bending backwards. Beſides theſe five rows, they have only two Scales in the middle of the Belly, the reſt of the Belly being ſmooth. They have a large forked Tail like that of the *Shark's*, the upper part whereof ſhoots out beyond the lower a conſiderable way. Theſe Fiſhes ſometimes frequent the Salt Waters like the *Salmon*, but come to their greateſt perfection in the Rivers, where they are found twelve or fourteen Feet long, but thoſe in the Sea ſeldom exceed above a Foot and a half. They always are obſerved to ſwim faſteſt againſt the Stream, and grow till they weigh above two hundred pound Weight. In the Month of *May* (at which time they are beſt in Seaſon eſpecially the Females) they run up towards the Heads of the Rivers to Spawn, where you ſhall ſee vaſt quantities of them in a Day and eſpecially before Rain, leaping at a great height out of the Water. The *Indians* kill great Numbers of them with their *Fiſh-gigs* and Nets, which they make and fix at the ends of long Poles; for they are ſeldom or never taken with Hooks. The *Indians* that live up towards the Heads of the Rivers are fond of them, and frequently eat them, but thoſe near the ſalts and *Chriſtians* will not make any uſe of them. Their Bones ſerve indifferently for Raſps or Graters to grate *Nut-megs*, *Bread*, and the like withall. The *Sturgeon* is an excellent Fiſh when in Seaſon, being ſtrengthning, and is eſteemed as good as *Veal*, if not better; of their Eggs or Spawn is made the *Caviary* ſo much eſteemed amongſt

the

the Quality. The Liver is so sweet, that without some of the Gall, it causeth loathing. The Flesh is good against *hoarsness* and clears the *Voice*, the Fat cures the *Kibes*, and the Bones help the running *Gout*.

The *Jack*, *Pike*, or *Pickerel*, of these we have two sorts (one living in the fresh, and the other in the Salt Water) and are exactly of the same shape with those in *Europe*, but differ very much in size, for they are seldom found in these parts of *America*, above two Foot long, as far as I have yet seen. They are very plenty with us in this Province, all the fresh Water Rivers and Creeks abounding with them, and vast quantities are frequently taken in their Wairs at a time. The Flesh of this Fish is whiter and more excellent than that of the *Carp*, and is so harmless that it may be given to sick Persons. The Spawn or Row provoke both Vomit and Stool, and several other virtues are ascribed to them. Those of the Sea are a more delicate and better Fish than those of the fresh Water. They are said to live above two hundred Years, and that from their greediness of eating, they will often disgorge their Stomach of those Fishes they had taken in, and that they will sometimes swallow a Fish near as large as themselves, taking the Head in formost, the Tail hanging out of the Mouth, and so draw it in by little and little, till they compass the whole.

The *Trouts* are the same in *Carolina* as with us; but are not to be met with till you come up to the Heads of the Rivers, and where the Streams are swift and have Stony and gravelly Bottoms. These Fishes are equal in goodness to any Fish that live in the fresh Waters. The fat is very good for the *Hæmorrhoids* and clefts in the Fundament.

The *Gudgeons*, there are the same sorts found here, as in several parts of *Europe*, they are of the nature of the *Perch*, and

and the whiteſt is the beſt, they are good pleaſant food and of eaſy digeſtion, nouriſhing much, and increaſing good Blood, and are good againſt the Cholick ariſing from cold or Tartarous humours, they help the Bloody flux, and other fluxes of the Belly, and being applied help the biting of Mad-dogs and *Serpents*.

The *Perch* whereof we have five ſorts in *Carolina*. The firſt is the ſame as is to be met with in *Europe*, but is not quite ſo large. They are an excellent Fiſh and very wholſom, and good againſt Fevers, and the Stones in their Heads near the Back bone are accounted good againſt the Stone in the Reins.

The ſecond ſort of *Perch* is call'd the white *Perch* becauſe it is of a Silver colour otherwiſe it is like the former or *Engliſh Perch* in ſhape and ſize. Theſe are in very great plenty and preferable to the red ones in goodneſs.

The third ſort which are commonly call'd *Welch-men*, are of a Brown colour and are the largeſt ſort of *Perches* we have in theſe parts, ſome growing to be larger than any *Carp*, and are a very firm white and ſweet Fiſh, and are very plenty in the Rivers and Creeks.

The fourth ſort are vulgarly call'd *Iriſh-men*, theſe are a more flat Fiſh than any of the former, and much reſembling a *Bream*, being all over freckled or mottled with Black and Blue ſpots, they are a very good Fiſh and are never taken any where but in the freſh Waters where they are very plenty.

The fifth ſort are diſtinguiſhed by the Name of round *Robins* and are the leaſt ſort of all, they are flat and very round ſhaped like a *Roach*, are beautifully mottled with red ſpots, and are as good Meat as any of the former, they are very eaſily taken with a Bait, as all the reſt of the *Perches* are and are very numerous, each Creek and River of freſh Water abounding with them.

The

The *Roach* is here Likewiſe but is not as large as thoſe in *Europe*. It is a good Fiſh but its being ſo full of ſmall Bones makes it dangerous and Little regarded. It is reported to be a healthful Fiſh and not Subject to any diſeaſes, whence comes the Proverb as ſound as a *Roach*. The Fleſh is ſaid to excite Luſt and cure Fevers.

The *Carp* is the ſame as in *Europe* but is not quite ſo large. It has a ſhort Head without either Teeth or Tongue, but inſtead thereof a fleſhy Palate that it may reliſh its food. The Fins are broad, the Tail forked and the Body covered with very large ſtrong Scales. Its fleſh is fat, ſoft, ſweet, and nouriſhes very much, and is beſt in *March*, the Male being better than the Female, and the White than the Yellow. The fat cures diſeaſes of the Nerves, the Stones about the Eyes are ſaid to be good againſt the heat of Fevers, and likewiſe for the falling Sickneſs, and the Gall helps dimneſs of ſight.

The *Dace* is the ſame here as in *Europe*, but is not ſo large or plentiful as with us. The fleſh is ſoft, ſweet in taſte, and of good nouriſhment; and when pickled like *Anchovies* after the *Italian* manner, is Stomachical. They are beſt in *February*, *March* and *April*, and are excellent good food roaſted and ſeaſoned with Salt and Pepper. The fat helps pains in the Ears. The Gall mixt with the fat or Oil is good againſt Dimneſs of the Sight.

The *Flounders* are here in very great plenty and as large and good as any in *Europe*. Some of theſe Fiſh have Yellowiſh ſpots both on the Back and fins, and taſte very much like a *Plaiſe*. The *Indians* and others kill vaſt quantities of them not only with the Bait but likewiſe with their *Fiſh-gigs*, eſpecially with Lights at Night. They are an excellent Fiſh and of good Nouriſhment, ſtrengthen the Stomach, cauſe Appetite and help the Spleen.

The *Loche* is the ſame here as in *Europe*. The Fleſh is very light and excellent nouriſhment, delicate in taſte, wholſome, and good for Women with Child.

The *Sucking-Fiſh* are neareſt in taſte to a *Barble*, only they have no *Barbs*, they are about a Foot and a half long, and are a very ſoft and flaboy Fiſh, and therefore are ſeldom or never made uſe of except by the *Negroes* and *Indians*, they are generally taken with the Bait and are very plenty in our Rivers and Creeks.

The *Cat-Fiſh*, ſo call'd, from the Whiskers or ſmall fins they have about their Mouths. They are neareſt in taſte to *Eels* of any Fiſh I have ever met with. They are generally boild and made into Soop or Broath, which is the beſt way of dreſſing them. They are an excellent good Fiſh and nouriſh very much. There is another kind of *Cat-fiſh* which frequents the Salt Waters exactly like the former, both theſe ſorts are very plenty in theſe parts, and are taken by angling with a Bait. They are a round blackiſh Fiſh with a great flat Head and wide Mouth, and like the *Eels* have no Scales.

The *Grindal*, are a long ſcaled Fiſh with ſmall Eyes, and frequent Ponds, Lakes, and ſlow running Creeks and Swamps, but a very indiffrent ſoft fiſh, therefore not much coveted or made uſe of except by the *Negroes* or *Indians*, though ſome eat them, and report they are good Fiſh.

The *Old-wives*, theſe are bright ſcaly Fiſh which frequent the Swamps and freſh runs of Water, they have very ſmall Mouths and large Eyes, with a great Fin on their Back, they ſeem to be between an *European Roach* and a *Bream*, and eat much like the latter, they are in great plenty up the Freſhes. The *Indians* take abundance of theſe Fiſh and *Barbakue* them till they are Criſp, and ſo Tranſport them on wooden *Hurdles* to their Towns and Quarters.

The *Fountain-fish*, so call'd, from its frequenting the Fountains and clear running Streams of Water, where they breed and are to be met with and no where else: They are of a whitish colour and as large as a midling *Trout*, and by the clearness of the Water are very difficult to be taken, therefore I can't inform you how good they are, having never tasted any of them, but the *Indians* say they are a fine fish.

The *Barbouts*, or *Miller's-Thumb*, are the very same here as those in *England* and other parts of *Europe*. They are about three or four Inches long, have no Scales, and the Back is Yellowish with a few little black Spots. The head is large, and the Mouth wide and round. Out of the Fins grow several sharp prickles or Thornes, especially in those near the Head. These fish are very plenty in Rivers and Creeks near the Sea Shoar where they feed on watry Insects.

This is the best Account I can give, or is yet known of the FISHES in the fresh Waters, few more being discovered, though I am satisfied, and may with Justice and safety say, that there is not one third part of them yet discovered, or made known to us, therefore shall omit many strange and uncouth shapes and sort of Fishes which we are told by the *Indians*, are to be found in the Rivers and Lakes, whereof I can give no certain Information to my Readers, having no farther account of them than only hear say from those People, so shall proceed to treat of the *Shell-fish* which are found in the Salt Waters, as far as they are yet discovered.

The *OYSTERS*, whereof there are two Sorts, the great and the small, both these are in greater plenty here than

than in moſt parts of the known World, for great Numbers of them are to be found in almoſt every Creek and Gut of Salt Water, and frequently hanging upon Boughs of Trees, as they bend into the Water, ſo that when the Tide is out you ſhall ſee them ſuſpended in the Air, which would be a very uncommon ſight in *Ireland*, to ſee Fiſh growing upon Trees. In the ſound in ſeveral places there are ſuch quantities of large *Oyſter-banks*, that they are very troubleſome to Veſſels trading to theſe parts, which happen to come in amongſt them. They are of a different ſhape, from thoſe with us, for thoſe in *Carolina* are very long and large, and not round as ours are. They are excellent good, and nouriſh as much as any Fiſh whatever, and that without any manner of danger of Surfeiting. They ſtrengthen the Stomach, cauſe an Appetite, and breed good Juices, being light and eaſy of diſgeſtion, and are good in Conſumptions, and ſeveral other diſorders.

Theſe *Oyſters* pickled, are well reliſhed, excellent good for a Cold raw and ſquaſy Stomach. The Shells in Powder cure Heartburnings, are good in Feavers and the like, and are the only Lime we have for building in this Country.

The *Spaniſh-Oyſters*, are ſo call'd, from their great plenty in the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*; they have a very thin Shell, and rough on the outſide. They are excellent good *Shell-fiſh*, and ſo large that half a Dozen are ſufficient to ſatisfie a hungry Stomach. From theſe *Oyſters* come the Pearls that are ſo uſeful in Phyſick and ſo Ornamental.

The *Cockles*, whereof there are two ſorts, the larger and the ſmaller, and firſt, the large *Cockles* are ſo very big that one of them is as large as five or ſix of thoſe in *Ireland*. They are ſo very plenty in ſeveral parts, that they are often thrown upon the Sands on the ſound ſide,

where the *Gulls* and other Birds are always ready to open and eat them. These as well as the former are great Strengtheners of the Stomach, and increase a good Appetite, provoke Urine, help the Cholick, restore in Consumptions, and in all decays of nature are very good.

The *Small Cockles* are about the bigness of our largest *Cockle*, and differ in nothing from them except in the Shells which are striped cross-ways, as well as long-ways, they are as good, and have the same virtues with the former.

The *Clams* are a kind of *Cockles*, only differing in the Shells, which are thicker, and not streaked or ribbed as the *Cockles* are. They are plenty in several places along the Sound-side, and Salt-water Ponds. They are very good Pickled, and their Meat tastes like other *Cockles*; they make excellent strong Broth, which strengthens the Stomach, is nourishing, breeds good Juices, is a Restorative in Consumptions, and other natural Decays.

The *Conchs*, some of these are very large, but the lesser sort are the best Meat; and that, in my Opinion, not extraordinary, notwithstanding several in these parts are fond of them, and extol them very much: The Fish within their Shells is shaped exactly like a Horse's Yard; of this Shell the *Indians* make their *Peak*, or *Wampum*, which is the richest, and most valuable Commodity they have amongst them. They breed in a kind of Substance shaped like a *Snake*, which contains a sort of Joints, in the hollowness whereof are thousands of small *Conchs*, no bigger than small Grains of Pepper. They are plenty along the sides of the Sounds and Salt-waters, but are not as large here as those found in the Islands in the *West Indies*.

The *Muscles* are much larger than those with us, their Shells being thicker, larger, and striped with Dents: they

they grow by the ſides of Ponds, and Creeks of Salt-waters, where may be had what quantity they pleaſe. They are very apt to give Surfeits, yet there are thoſe who are fond of them, and prefer them to *Oyſters*. Some boyl them, whereof they make Broth (which is the beſt way of dreſſing them) which is nouriſhing and purgeth the Reins, therefore good for thoſe that have the Dropſie, Jaundice, Stone or Gout. They alſo eat well when they are Pickled.

The *Whale-Louſe*. Their Head is like that of a *Louſe*, with four Horns; the two ſhort ones that ſtand out before have Knobs like the Sticks of Kettle-Drums. They have ſix plates on their Backs, and their Scales as hard as *Prauns*. Their foremoſt Legs are in ſhape like a half Moon, with ſharp points, by which they faſten in the Skin of the *Whale*, and then bite pieces out of them. The *Whales* are moſtly annoyed with them in warm Weather, and frequently at that time leap to ſome height out of the Waters in a rage.

There is a little ſmall Fiſh in the freſh Waters in *Ireland*, ſomething like the former, but has no Scales, which is very troubleſome to the *Pike*, but whether it moleſts any other Fiſh, I cannot inform the Reader; but I have known the *Pike* to leap out of the Water upon dry Land with one of theſe ſticking faſt to his Belly; I have alſo been aſſured by thoſe that fiſh, and dwell near the Rivers, that one of theſe will kill the largeſt *Pike*, by cutting a hole in his Belly.

The *Crabs* whereof there are two ſorts, viz. the large ſtone *Crab* and the ſmall flat *Crab*. The large ſtone *Crabs* are the ſame in *Carolina* as with us in *Ireland*, having black tips on the ends of their Claws, theſe ſorts are plentifully to be met with near *Ceder-Iſland*, *Core-Sound* and the ſouth parts of this Province. The whole *Crab* is excellent

excellent againſt all ſorts of Fevers, Conſumptions, Hectticks, Aſthmas, the Stone in the Reins and Bladder, pains and Stopage of Urine, and many other diſorders.

The ſmaller or flat *Crab*, in *North-Carolina* is one of the ſweeteſt and beſt reliſhed of any of that ſpecies I ever met with in any part of *Europe*, when they are boyled their fleſh is very red and preferable in goodneſs to any *Lobſter*, they are as large as a Man's Hand, or rather larger. Theſe are innumerable, lying in great quantities all over the Salts; I have known the little Boys take Buſhels full of them in a few Hours. They are taken, not only to be eaten, but are one of the beſt Baits for all manner of Fiſh that take the Hook. They are very miſchevious to thoſe that ſet Night Hooks to catch Fiſh, for they generally take away all the Bait; both theſe ſorts caſt their Shells every Year, at which time they make Holes in the Sand, and cover themſelves, or thoſe with hard Shells lye on them 'till their Shells harden, otherwiſe they would be deſtroyed by other Fiſh. Theſe ſort have the ſame Virtues with the former.

The *Fiddlers*, are a ſort of ſmall *Crab* that lie in Holes in low, wet, and marſhy Ground. The *Racoons* are very fond of them, hunt for them in thoſe places, and eat them. I never knew any of them eat by the *Chriſtians*, ſo cannot inform you whether they are good or no.

The *Runners* or *Spirits*, ſo called, becauſe they are apt to pinch and bite Peoples Legs in the Night, as they walk near the Shoar, and likewiſe from their running ſo faſt. They are a kind of a whitiſh *Crab*, and though they are ſo ſmall, they will run as faſt as a Man; and are good for nothing but to look at. They live chiefly on the Sand Breaches, where they have their Holes. But will frequently run into the Sea when purſued. I take this

this to be the *Hippæe*, or *Hippeis*, repreſented by *Pliny*.

The *Soldier*, is a kind of Shell-fiſh, ſo called, but for what reaſon I know not, except it be for their often changing their Houſes, or Quarters, from one hollow *Conch ſhell* to another; for they are obſerved to be ſtill changing their Habitations as they grow larger, having no Shell of their own. They have Claws like a *Crab*, and may be reckoned a Species of them, but of the ſmalleſt kind. They are good when well dreſſed, very nouriſhing, and create a good Appetite.

The *Wilks*, or *Periwinkle*, are not ſo large as they are in many parts of *Europe*, but as ſweet and good, or rather better, being good Food and Nouriſhment; they are reſtorative in Conſumptions and Hectick, being ſodden in their own Sea-water, or boiled in Milk.

The *Skallops* are pretty good, if well dreſſed, but if only roaſted, without any other Addition, are too luſcious to be made uſe of, and are apt to ſurfeit, but otherwiſe they are nouriſhing, and comfortable to the Stomach.

The *Man of Noſes* are *Shell-fiſh*, commonly found in theſe parts, and are much valued and eſteemed for increaſing vigour in Men, and preventing barreneſs in Women, which is a thing ſeldom attends the Females here; for generally they are fruitful enough, without the benefit of theſe Fiſhes. But moſt certain it is, that they are very nouriſhing, and create good Juice in the Blood.

The *Flatings* ſo called from their flat ſhape. They are incloſed in a broad thin Shell, the whole fiſh being flat. They are a very good and delicious Fiſh and inferior to no Shell-fiſh this Country affords.

The Sea *Snail Horn* is exactly ſhaped like as other *Snail Horns* are. They are a large and very good Shell-Fiſh

Fish and their Meat is very nourishing and communicates good Juices to the Blood.

The *Finger-fish*, so called, from their being about the length of a Man's Finger, they are very plenty in this Province, but generally lye at the bottom of the Waters about one or two feet deep, and are an extraordinary good Shell-Fish.

The *Shrimps* are very plentiful in *North Carolina*, and vast quantities of them are taken by the Boys and Girls with a small bow Net. They are very restorative and good in Consumptions, Hectick and Asthmas, and are an excellent good Bait to catch *Mullets*, *Pikes*, and several other sorts of Fish that are caught by angling with the Bait.

The *Sea-Nettles* (by some called *Carvels*) whereof there are great plenty in the Western-Seas and Salt Waters on the coast of *America*. They seem to be nothing else but Slime, or a lump of *Jelly*, with a cast of red, blue and green colours in it, they Swim like a *Bladder* above the Water, but downwards there are long Fibrous Strings, some of which are near half a Yard long; some will have this *Jelly* to be a sort of Sea-plant, and the Strings its roots growing in the Sea as *Duck-weed* does in Ponds, but the Query is, if they be not a certain Species of Spawn for when they are taken out of the Water, or any thing touches them (though they scarce seem to have Life) yet they will very suddenly change their colours, which they quickly recover again. They may be reckoned amongst Potential Cauteries, because they are apt to blister the Hands or any other part of the Skin (like *Nettles*) where ever they touch. I am persuaded that they are of so venemous a Nature that few Fish prey upon them, otherwise they woud not be so numerous as they are, notwithstanding I have known some of them taken out of the Guts

Guts of the *Hawks-billed Turtle.* They are called *Sea-Nettles*, from the stinging and blistering quality they have like *Nettles*, occasioning burning Pains to whatever part of the Skin they happen to touch.

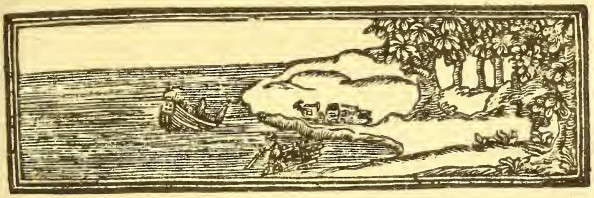
The fresh-water *Shell-fish* are the *Mussels* and *Craw fish.* The *Mussels* are here plenty in several parts of the Freshes, and are much the same as in *Europe*; they are only made use of by the *Indians*, who eat them after five or six Hours boiling to make them tender; there are valuable Pearls found in some of them, the whitest are the best, being the wholsomest. The Broth is opening, and therefore good in the *Dropsie*, *Jaundice*, and *Gout.*

The *Craw fish* are very plenty in the Brooks and small Rivers of Water amongst the *Indians*, and at the heads of the Rivers near the Mountains; they are as delicious and good here as in any part of the World. They are shaped like a *Scorpion*, and the Stones in the Head are accounted good against the *Jaundice* and *Stone* in the *Reins.* The Black are much better than the White; they nourish and strengthen the Body, and the Soop made of them is in very great Value and Esteem amongst the Quality.

Having thus given a Description of several Species, or Kinds of Fishes that are to be met with, and already known in *North-Carolina*; I shall in the next place proceed to what remains of the *Present State*, having already accounted for the *Animals* and *Vegetables*, as far as this Volume would allow of, and whatever remains may be easily guessed at by any ingenious Man who considers what Latitude *Carolina* lies in, which reaches from 29 to 36 Degrees 30 Minutes of *North* Latitude, as I have already observed; Most part of this spacious Country

being waſte and uninhabited, at preſent, except by wild Beaſts and Savage *Indians*, from whom we can have but very imperfect Accounts, they being a People of little or no Speculation, nor any way Curious.

THE



FURTHER

OBSERVATIONS

On the PRESENT STATE of

North-Carolina.

AS to the AIR, I do'nt know what fault it has, except what I have ſaid before of it's being ſometimes extreamly hot, at other times ſubtile, and piercing; and I am perſuaded, it enters a Man's Body eaſier than that in *Ireland*; yet I think that much of the Mortality that happens among Strangers, is owing in a great meaſure to the ill government of themſelves, for they eat but little, having deſtroyed their Stomachs by Surfeits of Fruit, or exceſſive Drinking hot Spirituous Liquours; and if any rather chuſe the cold, his Stomach is chilled, and he is immediately in danger of a Flux, or extream Looſeneſs. The e is another thing to be obſerved, Men guard themſelves leſs from the Air here, than in

moſt other Place, truſting to the heat of the Climate, and receive the cool of the Evenings with only a Shirt. I think that the Air, though not ſo cold, is much more ſubtle and piercing here than in *Ireland*, it corrodes Iron much more, not by Moiſture, for it is not ſo moiſt; and beſides it does it in the dry Weather.

Notwithſtanding this Country is as fertil and pleaſant as any in the World (in the ſame Latitude) for the produce of Minerals, Fruit, Grain, Wine, and ſeveral other rich Commodities, that are frequently to be met with in it. All the Experiments that have been already made of the Fertility and natural Advantages of the Country, have anſwered beyond expectation, as affording ſome Commodities, which other Places in the ſame Latitude do not.

As for *Minerals*, they being ſubterraneous Products, ſo in all New Countries, they are the laſt Species that are generally diſcovered, and will moſt certainly be ſo, where the *Indians* never look for any thing lower than the ſuperficies of the Earth, being a race of Men, the leaſt addicted to ſearch into the Bowels of the Earth, of any in the World, that inhabit ſo fine a Country as *Carolina*; and I am ſatisfied, that there are as good and rich Mines here, that lie full to the Weſtward of us, as any the *Spaniards* poſſeſs in *America*. The Lands near the Heads of the Rivers being Mountainous, and no doubt, have as rich *Minerals* in them as any of thoſe parts that are already diſcovered to be ſo rich.

I ſhall ſay no more on this Subject at preſent, but give you ſome general Obſervations concerning *North-Carolina*; which are, That it lies as convenient for Trade as any Province in *America*, abounding with ſeveral rich and valuable Commodities, ſuch as *Tar*, *Turpentine*, *Pitch*, *Roſin*, *Maſts*, *Yards*, *Planks*, *Boards*, *Staves*, *Lumber*, *Timber*,

Timber of many ſorts, fit for any uſes; Skins of *Deers*, *Beeves*, *Buffelo's*, *Elks*, *Bears*, *Panthers*, and ſeveral other Beaſts. The Furrs of *Beavers*, *Racoons*, and many other wild Beaſts, which are in great Plenty here; as alſo *Rice*, *Wheat*, *Indian Corn*, *Barley*, *Oats*, *Buck-wheat*, and ſundry ſorts of *Pulſe*, *Potatoes*, and variety of fine Fruits, *Flax*, *Beef*, *Pork*, *Tallow*, *Hides*, *Horſes*, *Whale-bone*, *Oil*, *Bees-wax*, *Myrtle-wax*, *Honey*, *Cheeſe*, *Butter*, *Cotton*, *Tobacco*, *Indico*, *Coffee*, and no doubt would produce good *Silk*, *Oil*, and *Wine*, the Soil of this Country being as proper as any in the World for that purpoſe.

This Country is likewiſe adorned with pleaſant Savannas or Meadows, Rivers, Mountains, Vallies, Hills, and rich Paſtures for Cattle, and bleſſed with a wholſome pure Air, eſpecially a little backwards from the Sea, where only wild Beaſts inhabit at preſent, few of which are ſo voracious as to kill Men, Horſes or Cows, for there cannot be a richer Soil, no place abounding more in Fleſh and Fowl, both wild and tame, beſides vaſt numbers of excellent Fiſh, Grain, Cyder, and many other pleaſant Liquors, together with moſt Neceſſaries convenient for Life, that are daily found out, to the great Benefit and Advantage of thoſe that are already ſettled here.

The *Stone* or *Gout* ſeldom or never afflict the *Chriſtian* Inhabitants, and the *Europeans* that have been afflicted with the Stone and Gravel, find preſent Eaſe, by drinking *Yaupan* Tea.

The *Conſumption* we are entire Strangers to, no Country affording a better Remedy for that Diſtemper than the pureneſs of the Air; neither has the *ſmall Pox* ever viſited this Country but once, and that in the late *Indian War*, which deſtroyed moſt of thoſe Savages that were ſeized with it.

As

As for Trade, we lie so near *Virginia*, that we might have the advantage of their Convoys, if there were occasion for them, as also Letters from thence in two or three Days, and from some places in a few Hours. The great numbers of Ships that come to *New-England*, *New-York*, *Pensilvania*, *Mary-Land*, and *Virginia*, make the Provisions scarce in those Places, so that they are frequently obliged to *North-Carolina* for those Necessaries, where Provisions and Naval Stores never fail of a good Market. Besides where these are produced and raised in such plenty, there appears good House-keeping, and plenty of all manner of delicate Eatables.

The *Porke* is excellent good, from their *Hogs* feeding on *Straw-berries*, *Wall nuts*, *Peaches*, *Maiz*, and several other sorts of delicate Fruits, which, are the natural produce of this Country, and make them the sweetest Meat the World can afford; as is well known to all Strangers that have been in that Country. And as for their *Beef*, it proves extraordinary good, being fat and well relished. We have not only Provisions very plenty, but Cloaths of our own Manufacture, which are made and daily increase in these parts; such as *Cotton*, *Wool*, *Hemp* and *Flax*, being all the growth of this Country. But the Women do not over burthen themselves with care and Industry; otherwise there woud not be such continual calls for those necessarys from *Europe*. But this Climate being visited with so mild and short Winters, save abundance of Cloaths. We likewise can go out with our Commodites to any part of the *West-Indeas*, or elsewhere in the depth of Winter, whereas those in *New-England*, *New-York*, and *Pensilvania*, and those Colonies to the *Northward* of us, cannot stir for *Ice*, but are fast locked into thei. Harbours all that Season.

We

We have no frontier Town in *North-Carolina*, which is an advantage in not being so continually alarm'd by the Enemy, and what has been accounted a detriment to us, proves one of the greatest advantages any People cou'd wish or desire. This Country being Fenced with a Sound near ten Leagues over in some Places, through which, although there be Water enough for as large Ships to come in at, as any part hitherto seated in both *Carolinas*, ; yet the difficulty of that Sound to Strangers hinders them from Hostilites against us, so that this natural Bull-work proves very advantagious to us in securing us from our Enemies.

Our distance from the Sea likewise rids us from two curses or Plagues which attend most other parts of *America*, *viz.* the *Musketo's*, and the water *Wood-worms*, that eat Ships bottoms. Whereas at *Bath* and *Eden-town*, there is no such thing known, and as for *Musketo's* we are very little troubled with them, except it be in low Marshes, and near the Salt-waters, which are only habitations for wild Beasts, Birds, and Snakes of various kinds. The vast quantities likewise of Fish that this great Sound or Water supplies us with, when ever we take the pains to Fish for them, is another considerable advantage not to be met with so commodiously in any part of *America* as in this Province.

As for the *Climate* (as I observed) we generally enjoy a very wholesome and serene Sky, and a pure and thin Air, the Wether seldom proving so overcast or Cloudy but we have the blessing of the warm Sun, except it be in *Winter*, and then as soon as the South and West-winds begin to blow, the Horizon immediately clears up and restores the light of the Sun. The Weather in *Summer* is very pleasant, being continually refreshed with cool reviving Breezes from all Quarters except the South, which is very sultry.

The

The *Spring* here is as pleasant and as beautiful as in any place I have ever been in, and the *Winter* generally proves so mild that it is rather like an *Autumn*, except the Winds blow North-west, at which time it is peircing and cold, but proper enough for our constitutions, and very wholsome, freeing these parts from many dangerous distempers that a continual *Summer* afflicts them with, nothing being wanting as to the natural Ornaments or blessings of a Country to the making reasonable Men happy.

As for the Constitution of this Government, it is so mild and easy in all respects, to the Liberties and Properties of the Subject, that it is the best established Government in the World, and a Place where a Man may peaceably enjoy his own without being invaded by another; rank and superiority always giving place to Justice and Equity, which is the foundation that every goverment ought to be built upon, and regulated by.

Besides this Province has been settled and continued the most free from the insults and barbarities of the *Indians* of any Colony in *America*, which was one of the greatest blessings that cou'd attend such a small number of People as they were, and how Iregularly settled first, and at what distance they are from each other, and yet how undisturbed they have remained and free from any Foreign danger or loss, to what most of the other Colonys have been exposed to, not only by the *Indians*, but their own Slaves the *Negroes*. And what may well deserve Admiration is, that their Prisons are never crowded with *Malefactors* or *Debtors*; as to *Malefactors* I never knew but one that was guilty of death, for Murder, which happened as follows; two Persons well known to each other, being at the *Tavern*, one of them was falling

falling asleep, his Friend importuned him to go home along with him, which the other refusing to do, his Friend told him, that he would leave him, which he had no sooner said, but the other Stab'd him with his Knife, whereof he instantly died; the Murderer was immediately apprehended, tried, and condemned to die, he confest that before he left *Europe* he had murdered two, and notwithstanding his Condemnation, he found means to make his escape out of Prison some few Days before the Execution.

As for *Debtors*, few or none are confin'd in Prison above four and twenty Hours, for the *Sherriff* generally takes them Home to his House, or takes their Word for their Appearance at the next Court, to be held, in any of their precincts or Barronies, where they Judge him a Servant to the Creditor for as long time as they imagine the Debt deserves, but if the Person has been a Planter and by misfortunes has contracted Debts, or an aged Person they frequently at these Courts make a Collection amongst themselves, by which means they discharge the Debt, or satisfie the Creditor; so that by these methods none are kept in confinement.

It is likewise enacted by the Laws of the Country, that no Person shall be liable to pay above forty Shillings of their Country Money for any publick-House Scores for Liquors, let the Persons that keep such Houses trust them what they please, yet by Law they can recover no more: This is done chiefly to prevent People, if possible, running in Debt, or spending their Time idly after that manner, especially in a Country where Industry is so much wanting. Notwithstanding this Law, some will owe above One hundred Pounds at these Taverns, or publick Houses, which they will justly and

honeſtly pay, looking upon it as the greateſt Scandal in Nature to make uſe of this Law; neither would the Country much regard them afterwards if they did. Yet there are ſome that are not ſo ſcrupulous, or ſo ſtrictly bound up to Principles of Juſtice, that have taken the advantage of this Law, to defraud their Creditors, when they had an Opportunity.

There are ſeveral other good Laws in this Province, and particularly, that no Vagabond, or inferiour Perſon is ſuffered to travel through the Country without a Paſs from the Governor, or ſome of the Juſtices of the Peace, this is done to prevent Tranſports from *Europe* running away from their Maſters.

They have no Frontier Towns, as I before obſerved, neither have they any Army, except their Militia, which are both of Horſe and Foot, having proper Officers, who are Commiſſioned, or Nominated by the Governor, although they are ſeldom obliged to Muſter (as they are in moſt of the other *Engliſh* Provinces in *America*) except it be to apprehend Offenders that will not ſubmit themſelves to the Law, or be taken by the Authority of their Juſtices of Peace's Warrant; in ſuch caſes, they generally raiſe the *Poſſe* or *Militia*, to ſeize and bring them to Juſtice; Yet inſtances of this Nature are but ſeldom, for I never knew but two whilſt I was in the Country.

But to return to the Subject in Hand, there are made throughout this Settlement, as good Bricks as any I have ever met with in *Europe*: All ſorts of Handy-crafts, ſuch as *Carpenters*, *Joyners*, *Coopers*, *Bricklayers*, *Plaiſterers*, *Shoemakers*, *Tanners*, *Curriers*, *Taylors*, *Weavers*, and moſt other ſorts of Tradeſmen, may with ſmall Beginnings, and good Induſtry, ſoon thrive well in this Place, and provide good Eſtates, and all manner of Neceſſaries

Neceſſaries for their Families, Lands being ſold at a cheaper rate here than in moſt parts of *America*.

The Farmers that go thither (for which ſort of People it is a very thriving place) ſhou'd bring with them ſeveral ſorts of Seeds of *Graſs*, as *Trefoil*, *Clover-Graſs*, all ſorts of *Sanfoin*, and common *Graſs*, and eſpecially thoſe that have aroſe and ſprung in a warm Climate, that will endure the heat of the Sun; likewiſe ſeveral *Garden-Seeds*, and choice *Fruit-Trees*, and *European-grain*, for increaſe and hardneſs, and eſpecially *Olive-Trees* and ſeveral ſorts of *European-Grapes*. The neceſſarys for Husbandry I need not acquaint the Husbandman withal, but *Hoes* of all ſorts, and *Axes* muſt be had, *Saws*, *Wedges*, *Augurs*, *Nails*, *Hammers*, and what other things may be neceſſary to build with Timber and Brick. For whoever reads this Treatiſe with attention, muſt needs be acquainted with the nature of the Country, and therefore cannot but be Judges what will be chiefly wanting in it.

Whoever goes to this Province need not complain for want of Lands for taking up, even in places moſt delightfully ſeated on navigable Rivers and Creeks, without being driven to remote parts of the Country for ſettlements, as at preſent they are forced to do in *New-England*, and ſeveral other *Engliſh* provinces in *America*, which are already become ſo populous, that a new comer cannot get a beneficial and comodious ſeat, unleſs he purchaſe it at a very dear rate.

Another great advantage here is, that there is liberty of Conſcience (as I ſaid before) allowed to all. Theſe, things being duly weighed, any rational Man that has a mind to purchaſe Lands for a Settlement for himſelf and Family, will ſoon diſcover the advantages that attend the ſettlers and purchaſers of Lands here above all the other

Provinces in the *English* Dominions in *America*, for Ease, Pleasure, Satisfaction, and all necessaries of Life.

And as several parts of *Europe* may be admired for its artificial, so may *Carolina* for its natural Beauty; for the Country in general is level, except some Hills near the *Charokee* and *Appelapean* Mountains, and most agreeably diversified with fine arable Lands, producing vast increase, and two Crops in one Season, with large and spacious Savannes or Meadows, most beautifully adorn'd with variety of Odoriferous and fine Flowers, intermixt with plenty of good Grass for Pasture for Cattle. The large Woods and Forests with their Lofty Trees and spreading Vines of various sorts, affording not only refreshing, but most pleasant shades to sit under in the extremity of the hot Weather, and likewise abounding with various kinds of wild Beasts and Birds, which are preserved in them, not only for diversion of Hunting, but likewise convenient and profitable for the support of Man.

And Lastly, the large and Navigable Rivers and Creeks that are to be met with watring and adorning this Country, well stored with vast quantities of Fish and Water-Fowl. These ornaments and many advantages which it enjoys, makes it one of the pleasantest places in the World to live in, *Sed, Nescio qua natale solum dulcedine capto, ducit & Immemores non sinit esse sui.* They make very necessary Vessels for carriage of their Commodities by Water, which are called in these parts *Periaugers* and *Canoes*, which are the Boats made use of in this Country, and are generally made out of one peice of large Timber, and that most commonly of the *Cypress* kind, which they make hollow and shaped like a Boat, with Masts, Oars, and Padles, according to their size and bigness. Some of these *Periaugers*, are so large that they are capable of carrying forty or fifty Barrels of *Pitch* or *Tar*. In

these

these Vessels likewise they carry Goods, Horses, and other Cattle from one Plantation to another over large and spacious Rivers; they frequently trade in them to *Virginia* and other places on this continent, no Vessel of the same Burthen made after the *European* manner is able to out Sail one of these *Periaugers*.

The *Canoes* are of less Burthen than the former, some will carry two or three Horses over these large Rivers, and others so small that they will carry only two or three Men. These are more tickliſh than Boats, but no Boat in the World is capable to be rowed as fast as they are, and when they are full of Water they will not sink, and not only the *Indians* but even the *Christians* are very dexterous in managing of them.

Before the arrival of the *Christians* in these parts (as I have been credibly inform'd) the *Indians* had no other Method in making these *Periaugers* and *Canoes*, but by Fire, burning them hollow with Gums and Rosins, and scraping them with sharp Stones or Shells, prepared for that use, according to the shape and size they proposed to make them, having neither Handsaws, Axes, Adds, Chizel, or any other Instruments made of Iron or Steel, wherewith to fashion or make them; but at present they have all manner of Instruments proper for such uses, which they have purchased from the *Christians*. It is most certain, that no People in the World are more handy and dexterous in managing their *Periaugers*, and *Canoes*, with either Sail, Oar, or Paddle, than they are; and when ever it happens that their *Canoes* are full of Water, they will very nimbly leap out, and holding the *Canoe* with one Hand, throw out the Water with a *Gourd* with the other, and so proceed on their intended Voyage. They likewise very often set their *Periaugers* and *Canoes*, along the Shoar with long Poles.

The

The Land Carriages are much after the ſame manner as thoſe with us; there being not only plenty of Horſes, but likewiſe of Carts and Waggons, and ſeveral other Neceſſaries convenient for Carrying all manner of Commodities by Land from one place to another.

The Roads are as good as in moſt parts of the World, and the travelling as pleaſant, eſpecially the Road from *Edentown* to *Virginia*, being made broad and convenient, for all ſorts of Carriages, ſuch as Coaches, Chaiſes, Waggons and Carts, and eſpecially for Horſemen, theſe Lands lying ſo level, and the beautiful and delightful Objects they are entertained with in their Journey, render it both amuſing and diverting. What is remarkable is, that traveling from *Edentown* to *Virginia*, there is a Poſt ſet up in the Diviſion between thoſe two Provinces, with *North Carolina* on the South, and *Virginia* on the North, in large Capital Letters, to ſhew to all Travellers the Bounds between thoſe two Colonies.

In other parts the Roads are more like Paths than any publick Road, only that they are made broad enough for Coach, Chaiſes, and all manner of Carriages. But this is a general Rule to be obſerved throughout all *America*, that wherever you meet any of thoſe Paths like Roads, with the Trees marked or notched on each ſide, it is a ſure ſign that it is the publick Road from one *Chriſtian* Town to another. Notwithſtanding there are ſeveral Paths of Horſes, Cows, and other Beaſts in the Woods, as large as the former, which are to be avoided, by reaſon that the Trees are not marked as above; neither do the *Indians* ever uſe this Method in making their Roads, having ſome ſecret Knowledge to guide them through theſe large Woods, which we are entire Strangers to; ſo that ſeveral Chriſtians not knowing, or regardleſs of theſe Marks, have been for ſeveral Days loſt in the

the Woods, before they could come to any Planters Houſe, or meet with any Perſon to inform them which way to go; yet I never heard of any periſh for want of Proviſions, under theſe misfortunes, there being not only great Plenty of ſeveral good Fruits to be met with, all over the Woods moſt parts of the Year, but likewiſe variety of Birds and Beaſts, neceſſary for the ſupport of Life; but I have known ſome loſt for eight, others for fourteen Days, before they could meet with any human Creature to inform them what part of the Province they were in.

The *Negroes* ſometimes make uſe of theſe Advantages in the Woods, where they will ſtay for Months together before they can be found out by their Maſters, or any other Perſon; and great Numbers of them would act after the ſame manner (which would be detrimental to the Planters) were they not ſo much afraid of the *Indians*, who have ſuch a natural averſion to the *Blacks*, that they commonly ſhoot them when ever they find them in the Woods or ſolitary parts of the Country.

There are no Wind-Mills in this Province at preſent, and not above two or three Water-Mills, which are for the moſt part continually grinding their Wheat; for the ſmall *Sloops* and *Periaugers* are continually coming and going with Corn and Flower: But the common method that the Planters uſe to grind their Corn is with Hand-Mills, which almoſt every one of them has. The Stones for theſe Mills are got up the River *Neus*, which are very ſoft when dug out of the Earth, but grow exceeding hard and durable after they are ſome time in the Air, and are ſerviceable upon theſe occaſions. Theſe Stones ſeem more like a parcel of *Oyſter-ſhells* petrified, than any natural Stone, for through the whole Grain of this Stone there is no other appearance, but the exact ſhape of the *Oyſter-*

Oyſter-ſhells. Of this kind of Stone there are ſeveral Quarries and Rocks to be met with towards the Heads of the Rivers; notwithſtanding there is plenty of Free-Stone near the Mountains, and moſt kinds of Greet proper to make Milliſtones, yet the former being ſo eaſily acquired, are only made uſe of at preſent, except ſome few brought from *England*, for their Water-Mills. The Proprietors of theſe Mills take moſt commonly every other Barrel as Toll, for grinding; but the Laws of the Country allow only every ſixth.

There are abundance of excellent good Springs to be met with in ſeveral parts of this Province, abounding with as ſweet and freſh Waters as any in *Europe*, and eſpecially near the Mountains, in which there can be none better. The Lands near theſe parts being for the moſt part very rich, with an extraordinary black Mold, ſome of a Copper colour, and both very good. Here are likewiſe great quantities of Iron Mine, ſeveral ſorts of Stone, divers kinds of Spaws, and *chalibeat* Springs, the Water whereof being drank, make the Excrements as black as Ink by its *chalibeat* Quality.

It is very remarkable, at certain ſeaſons of the Year, but eſpecially in *Winter*, as Perſons travel up near the Mountains, they hear at Night the moſt hideous and ſtrange Noiſe, that ever pierced mortals Ear, which at firſt was very frightful to us, 'till ſuch time as we were informed by our *Indian* Guides, that this Noiſe is cuſtomary in thoſe parts there being innumerable numbers of *Panthers*, *Tygers*, *Wolves*, and other Beaſts of Prey, going in whole droves to hunt the *Deer*, making this frightful Noiſe all the Night, until Day appears, or that a Shot or two is fired, then all will be ſtill and quiet. There are ſeveral large Swamps to be met with here, which are the Habitation of thoſe wild Beaſts, where they make their

their abode in the Day, at which time they are not to be ſeen or heard in the Woods.

But theſe kind of wild Beaſts are not very plenty (except the *Wolves*) near the Settlements, the Planters continually deſtroying them as they hunt and travel in the Woods, and in proceſs of time will be leſſened as this Country begins to be better Inhabited. This Country affords many and large Swamps, which are generally overflowed or under Water in the *Winter*, yet I never met with any Bogs, but plenty of good Pit Coal in many places, of which they make no manner of uſe at preſent, all kind of Timber being ſo plenty, and proper for fireing; ſo that all other kinds of Fuel are diſregarded and made no uſe of by the Inhabitants of this Province.

It will not be improper, in this place, to give an account how the *Turpentine*, *Tar*, *Pitch*, and *Roſin* are made, being all the produce of one Tree, and a very good Staple Commodity in theſe parts. The Planters make their Servants or *Negroes* cut large Cavities on each ſide of the *Pitch-Pine* Tree (which they term *Boxing of the Tree*) wherein the *Turpentine* runs, and the *Negroes* with Ladles take it out and put it into Barrels: Theſe Trees continue thus running moſt commonly for three Years, and then decay, but in proceſs of time fall to the Ground, which is what they call *Light-Wood*, of which their *Pitch* and *Tar* is made. (*viz.*)

The Planters at certain Seaſons of the Year, and eſpecially in *Winter*, make their *Negroes* gather great quantities of this *Light-wood*, which they ſplit about the thickneſs of the ſmall of a Man's Leg, and two or three Feet in length; when they have got a ſufficient quantity of it in readineſs, they ſet their Kilns on ſome riſing Ground or Earth thrown up for that purpoſe, in the

center whereof they make a hollow place, from whence they draw a Funnel some distance from the Kiln: Then they take the *Light-wood* which they pile up with the ends of each, placed slanting towards the center of the Kiln, which is generally made taper from the Ground, afterwards they cover it very secure with Clay, Earth, or Sods, to keep in the Flames, after this is done they set it on fire at the Top, the Weather permitting, which must be neither too dry nor too wet. By this means the *Tar* runs into the center, and from thence into the Funnel, where they attend Night and Day (with Ladles to put it into Barrels prepared for that purpose) till the Kiln is quite burnt out, which is generally in eight and forty Hours or less, according to the dimensions of the Kiln. It sometimes happens through ill management, and especially in too dry Weather, that these Kilns are blown up as if a train of Gun-powder had been laid under them, by which Accident their *Negroes* have been very much burnt or scalded. The Planters generally know very near what quantity of *Tar* each of their Kilns will produce, according to their dimensions, for which reason they are always provided with a sufficient Number of Barrels for that end.

The *Pitch* is made of the *Tar*, which is done in the following manner. They have large Furnaces made in several parts, and more now than ever, by reason of a late act of Parliament made in the Reign of his present Majesty, which obliges every Person or Persons that burn *Tar-kilns* in his Majesties dominions in *America* to make half of the first running into *Tar*, and the other half into *Pitch*, the penalty being a forfeture of the whole. With this second running they fill their furnaces, and so place a fire underneath it till such time as it begins to boyl, then they set it on fire and burn it to the consistence of *Pitch*.

The

The *Roſin* is very ſcarce in theſe parts, few giving themſelves the trouble; but when made, it is done after the following manner, *viz.* Take *Turpentine*, as much as you think proper, put it into an *Alembick* or a *Copper Veſica*, with four times its weight of fair Water, and diſtil it, which will produce a thin and clear Oil like Water, and at the bottom of the Veſſel will remain the *Roſin*. The *Indians* never make either *Pitch*, *Tar* or *Turpentine*, ranging and hunting continually through the Woods, being all the Induſtry they are given to, except they plant ſome ſmall quantity of *Indian* Corn or *Maiz*, and dreſs their *Deer-Skins*, being as well ſatisfied with this way of living as any among us, who by his Induſtry has acquired immenſe Treaſure.

I will in the next place give an account of thoſe that are Tranſported to theſe parts from *Europe*, and the many advantages that attend them in this Province, according to their good behaviour. Theſe are indented for ſuch a limitation of time, as appears by each of their *Indentures*, and are diſpoſed and made Servants of during that time, each of them being more or leſs regarded according to their good or bad behaviour, and the reaſon of their being Tranſported. Neither can any Servant give a ſecond *Indenture* on himſelf before he is out of his Apprentiſhip, and a Free-man in the Country; then he is at his Liberty to make what bargain he pleaſes, but before that time all contracts made by him are void and of no effect. For by only applying to any of their Courts, he is immediatly diſcharged and ſet free, notwithſtanding he has received a gratuity (from the Planter who claims him) for ſo doing. This being an eſtabliſhed law of the Country to prevent Maſters taking advantage of their Servants before they have obtained their freedom. As ſoon as they have

fullfill'd the Obligation of their *Indentures*, and are become Free men, their Maſters are obliged on their parts to give each Man Servant a new Suit of Cloaths, a Gun, Powder, Shot, Ball and ten Buſhels of *Indian* Corn, and by the Laws of the Country, they are entitled to fifty Acres of Land, which they ſeldom take up, but diſpoſe of for Triſles, this quantity of Land being too ſmall for large Stocks of Cattle (which moſt Planters here are poſſeſſed of) or to make *Pitch* and *Tar* on, which is another Staple of this Country, ſo that an Inſtance of this Nature is not to be met with in this Province.

Thus they appear after they have ſerved their time and have obtained their freedom, having no other viſible Fortune to depend upon or ſupport them except their Induſtry. The Queſtion then may be reaſonably asked, how it is poſſible for them to live, or make Fortunes from ſuch ſmall and deſpicable beginnings? Concerning which Objection, I ſhall thus endeavour to ſatisfie the Reader.

Thoſe that are thus made Free-men, their former Maſters generally give a Character of them, according to their good or bad behaviour during their Apprentiſhip, and thoſe that have acted with prudence, care, and good conduct, whilſt they were Servants never are at a loſs to meet with the beſt uſage from their Maſters, who recommend them to other planters (if they have no Imployment for them) to be their *Stewards*, or overſeers of their Plantations (ſeveral of the Planters of this Country having many) wherein are generally great Stocks of Cattle, Horſes, and Swine.

The overſeer being thus employ'd, his buſineſs is to mark all the *Calves*, *Foles*, and young *Pigs*, with the Planters Mark or Brand; every Planter having his Brand or Mark recorded in proper Books, kept for that purpoſe in each

each Precinct or Barony throughout this Province. This is done to prevent the Planters having any disputes about any of these Beasts, each Planter claiming by these marks nothing but what is justly his own, and if there be any *Negroes*, to see them perform whatever Work the Planter requires to be done; this being chiefly what the Overseer is employed in, for which Service he is allowed every seventh *Calf*, seventh *Fole*, and half of all the young *Hogs* that are bred during his Stewardship, and likewise the seventh part of all sorts of *Grain* and *Tobacco* that is produced on the said Plantation. Whatever quantity of *Corn*, *Rice* or *Tobacco* he plants by his own Industry, is all his own Property, the Master having nothing to do with it. Thus in three or four Years time, with good managment, he has a sufficient Stock of Cattle, Grain, Money, and all other Necessaries proper to purchase a Plantation, by which means many are become as wealthy and substantial Planters, as any in the Government. But I must confess, that few are such good Proficients in this way of Industry, notwithstanding there are such considerable advantages to be acquired thereby. But on the contrary, those of ill behaviour, and such as have been negligent in their Apprentiship, are not thus recommended, but generally get their livelyhood by the sweat of their Brow, yet live after a very loose and indolent manner; for if they work two Days in the Week, they generally drink and are idle all the rest (Provisions and Liquors being so very cheap) and are rather greater Slaves when made free, than they were during their Apprentiship, never making any advantage of their Time. Thus, I hope I have satisfied the Reader as to this Point.

I shall only mention one particular in regard to these Servants or Transports, which I had like to have omitted; which is, that they run away from their Masters, to

to prevent which, there is a Law made in this Country, whereby thoſe that run away are obliged (if apprehended and taken, as they generally are) to ſerve double the time they are abſent from their Maſters; this they are obliged to perform after the expiration of their *Indentures*, which is done to prevent their running away before they have ſerved their time, which ſo deters them, that they are not ſo guilty of this kind of Practice of late, as formerly.

Few Maſters of Ships will venture to carry on board their Veſſels any of theſe Servants or Debtors from this, or any other of the Provinces, without their giving ſufficient ſecurity that they are not in Debt, and Freemen, or publiſh an *Advertiſement* ſometime before their departure out of the Province; wherein they require all Perſon that they are indebted to, *To come, and they will pay them what they can make appear to be juſtly due.* And likewiſe, *That all Perſons indebted to them, are deſired to come and pay them before they quit the Country, in ſuch or ſuch a Ship.* This being the Subſtance of this *Advertiſement*, which is fixed on their Court-Houſe Door, for all Perſons to peruſe. Theſe Obligations being thus performed, they are at their Liberty to go where they pleaſe, and the Maſters liable to no Penalty; but if they ſhould act contrary to the Laws (and they be diſcovered) both their Perſons and Ships are liable to be arreſted, and ſubject to pay whatever the Creditors can make appear due to them, or any other Loſſes they have ſuſtained thereby. Notwithſtanding all theſe Laws, ſome of them run away, and when they are taken, like the *Negroes*, have Neck-yoaks put on them, which they conſtantly wear 'till they give ſufficient Teſtimonies of their good behaviour to the contrary. Several Inſtances of this Nature I have been Eye-witneſs to during my ſtay in that Country.

There

There is an Office here which is worth our Notice, *viz.* the *Gunpowder-Office*, which hath continued ever ſince the laſt War with the *Indians*, at which time there was a Law made, by which all Veſſels trading to thoſe Parts were liable to pay three Shillings and four Pence, *Carolina* Money *per* Ton, or the Value in *Gun Powder*, except the ſaid Veſſel was built in the Country, or that the Merchant had a Plantation there, then the Veſſels were liable to pay half Fees, or one Shilling and eight Pence *per* Ton to the *Powder-Office*. The leſſening of theſe Fees was to encourage Merchants to build and ſettle in this Country. They nominated at their General Aſſemblies ſuch Perſons as they judged proper in each County to receive the ſaid Fees, which were to be laid out in a ſufficient Magazine or Store of *Gunpowder*, which was to be always in readineſs for the uſe of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Indians*, whenever they made any Attempts, which there is no danger of their ever doing for the future; yet this Office continued 'till the Year 1733, being about that time laid aſide as unneceſſary, as I have been informed ſince my return from thoſe parts.

The Planters are very Hoſpitable and Charitable to each other, and eſpecially if any have had the misfortune to have their Houſes burnt, or any other grievous Affliction befall them. On theſe occaſions they readily contribute to make up the loſs of the Sufferers, whereby they generally become more wealthy than they were before this misfortune happened.

Thus have I given an Account of the Advantages and Diſadvantages that attend the *Chriſtian* Inhabitants of this Province; having nothing more in view than to ſatisfie my Readers with the beſt Account I could learn (during my Reſidence there) I ſhall proceed to give a ſhort

ſhort Account of the *Negroes* or *Blacks*, together with a Deſcription of the *Indians*, and the Laws and Cuſtoms now in force and uſe amongſt them.

The *NEGROES* are ſold on the Coaſt of *Guinea*, to Merchants trading to thoſe Parts, are brought from thence to *Carolina*, *Virginia*, and other Provinces in the hands of the *Engliſh*, are daily increaſing in this Country, and generally afford a good Price, *viz.* more or leſs according to their Goodneſs and Age, and are always ſure Commodities for Gold or Silver, moſt other things being purchaſed with their Paper Money. Some of them are ſold at *ſixteen*, *twenty five*, or *twenty ſix* Pounds *ſterl.* each, and are looked upon as the greateſt Riches in theſe Parts. There are great Numbers of them born here, which prove more induſtrious, honeſt, and better Slaves than any brought from *Guinea*; this is particularly owing to their Education amongſt the *Chriſtians*, which very much poliſhes and refines them from their barbarous and ſtubborn Natures that they are moſt commonly endued with. I have frequently ſeen them whipt to that degree, that large pieces of their Skin have been hanging down their Backs; yet I never obſerved one of them ſhed a Tear, which plainly ſhews them to be a People of very harſh and ſtubborn Diſpoſitions.

There are ſeveral Laws made againſt them in this Province to keep them in Subjection, and particularly one, *viz.* That if a *Negroe* cut or wound his Maſter or a Chriſtian with any unlawful Weapon, ſuch as a *Sword*, *Scymiter*, or even a *Knife*, and there is Blood-ſhed, if it is known amongſt the Planters, they immediately meet and order him to be hanged, which is always performed by another *Negroe*, and generally the Planters bring moſt of their *Negroes* with them to behold their Fellow

fellow *Negroe* ſuffer, to deter them from the like vile Practice. This Law may ſeem to be too harſh amongſt us, to put a Man to death for Blood-ſhed only, yet if the ſevereſt Laws were not ſtrictly put in execution againſt theſe People, they would ſoon overcome the *Chriſtians* in this and moſt of the other Provinces in the Hands of the *Engliſh*.

Notwithſtanding the many ſevere Laws in force againſt them, yet they ſometimes riſe and Rebel againſt their Maſter and Planters, and do a great deal of miſchief, being both treacherous and cruel in their Natures, ſo that mild Laws would be of no uſe againſt them when any favourable Opportunity offered of executing their barbarities upon the *Chriſtians*, as hath been too well experienced in *Virginia*, and other Places, where they have rebelled and deſtroyed many Families.

When they have been guilty of theſe barbarous and diſobedient Proceedings, they generally fly to the Woods, but as ſoon as the *Indians* have Notice from the *Chriſtians* of their being there, they diſperſe them; killing ſome, others flying for Mercy to the *Chriſtians* (whom they have injured) rather than fall into the others Hands, who have a natural averſion to the *Blacks*, and put them to death with the moſt exquiſite Tortures they can invent, whenever they catch them.

When any of theſe *Negroes* are put to death by the Laws of the Country, the Planters ſuffer little or no hing by it, for the Province is obliged to pay the full value they judge them worth to the Owner; this is the common Cuſtom or Law in this Province, to prevent the Planters being ruined by the loſs of their Slaves, whom they have purchaſed at ſo dear a rate; neither is this too burthenſom, for I never knew but one put to death here for wounding, and after attempting to kill his Maſter,

who uſed all Means he could to ſave his Life, but to no purpoſe, for the Country inſiſted on having the Law put in execution againſt him.

The *Negroes* that moſt commonly rebel, are thoſe brought from *Guinea*, who have been inured to War and Hardſhip all their lives; few born here, or in the other Provinces have been guilty of theſe vile Practices, except over-perſuaded by the former, whoſe Deſigns they have ſometimes diſcovered to the *Chriſtians*; ſome of whom have been rewarded with their Freedom for their good Services; but the Reader muſt obſerve, that they are not allowed to be Witneſſes in any Caſes whatever, only againſt one another.

There are ſome *Chriſtians* ſo charitable as to have the *Negroes* born in the Country, baptized and inſtructed in the *Chriſtian Faith* in their Infancy, which gives them an abhorance of the Temper and Practice of thoſe who are brought from *Guinea*. This Freedom does not in the leaſt exempt them from their Maſter's Servitude, whatever others may imagine to the contrary, who believe them to be at their own Liberty as ſoon as they have received Baptiſm. The Planters call theſe *Negroes* thus Baptized, by any whimſical Name their Fancy ſuggeſts, as, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Venus*, *Diana*, *Strawberry*, *Violet*, *Drunkard*, *Readdy Money*, *Piper*, *Fidler*, &c.

Their *Marriages* are generally performed amongſt themſelves, there being very little ceremony uſed upon that Head; for the Man makes the Woman a Preſent, ſuch as a *Braſs Ring* or ſome other Toy, which if ſhe accepts of, becomes his Wife; but if ever they part from each other, which frequently happens, upon any little Diſguſt, ſhe returns his Preſent: Theſe kind of Contracts no longer binding them, than the Woman keeps the Pledge given her. It frequently happens, when theſe Women

Women have no Children by the firſt Husband, after being a Year or two cohabiting together, the Planters oblige them to take a ſecond, third, fourth, fifth, or more Husbands or Bedfellows; a fruitful Woman amongſt them being very much valued by the Planters, and a numerous Iſſue eſteemed the greateſt Riches in this Country. The Children all go with the Mother, and are the Property of the Planter to whom ſhe belongs. And though they have no other Ceremony in their *Marriages* than what I have repreſented, yet they ſeem to be Jealouſly inclined, and fight moſt deſperately amongſt themſelves when they Rival each other, which they commonly do.

Their Children are carefully brought up, and provided for by the Planters, 'till they are able to work in the Plantations, where they have convenient Houſes built for them, and they are allowed to plant a ſufficient quantity of *Tobacco* for their own uſe, a part of which they ſell, and likewiſe on *Sundays*, they gather *Snake-Root*, otherwiſe it would be exceſſive dear if the *Chriſtians* were to gather it; with this and the *Tobacco* they buy Hats, and other Neceſſaries for themſelves, as *Linnen*, *Bracelets*, *Ribbons*, and ſeveral other Toys for their Wives and Miſtreſſes.

There are abundance of them given to Theft, and frequently ſteal from each other, and ſometimes from the *Chriſtians*, eſpecially *Rum*, with which they entertain their Wives and Miſtreſſes at Night, but are often detected and puniſhed for it.

There are ſeveral *Blacks* born here that can Read and Write, others that are bred to Trades, and prove good Artiſts in many of them. Others are bred to no Trades, but are very induſtrious and laborious in improving their Plantations, planting abundance of *Corn*, *Rice* and *To-*

bacco, and making vaſt Quantities of *Turpentine*, *Tar*, and *Pitch*, being better able to undergo fatigues in the extremity of the hot Weather than any *Europeans*.

The *Children* of both Sexes wear little or no Cloaths, except in the *Winter*, and many of the young Men and Women work ſtark naked in the Plantations in the hot Seaſon, except a piece of Cloath (out of decency) to cover their Nakedneſs; upon which Account they are not very expenſive to the Planters for their Cloathing. The Planters at their Death uſed to make ſome of their favourite *Negroes* free, but there is now an eſtabliſhed Law (eſpecially in *Virginia*) that if they do not quit the Province in about Eleven Days after their Freedom, whoever takes them they become his Property; but before the expiration of that time they either go to another Province, or ſell themſelves to the *Chriſtians*. The Planters ſeeing the Inconveniencies that might attend theſe kind of Priviledges to the *Negroes*, have this and all other Laws againſt them continually put in practice, to prevent all Opportunities they might lay hold of to make themſelves formidable.

An ACCOUNT of the

INDIANS OF *North-Carolina.*

THE *Indians*, it's well known were the Natives and Inhabitants of *America* before the *Spaniards* and *Europeans* made any diſcoveries of ſeveral parts of that Country. Amongſt whom are ſeveral different Nations and Kings to this Day. What is very ſurprizing and ſtrange is, that ſcarce any two Nations to be met with, ſpake the ſame Language, though they live ever ſo near to each other, this being a common thing all over this new World, as far as ever I cou'd be Informed. What ſhou'd occaſion ſuch a Diverſity of Languages or Speeches amongſt the *Savages*, is what moſt writers can hardly account for. But to return, the *Indians* of *North-Carolina*, are a well ſhaped clean made People,

People, of different Statures as the *Europeans* are, but chiefly inclined to be tall, are very ſtreight and neat limb'd as are to be met with in any part of the World, they never bend forwards or ſtoop in the Shoulders, except they are much over powered with old Age, as for their Legs and Feet they are as well proportioned and as handſome, as any in the World. They are of a ſtrong hale Conſtitution, and their Bodies very ſtreight, but a little flat, which is occaſioned by their being laced or tyed hard down upon a board in their Infancy, this being all their *Cradle*, which I ſhall deſcribe in another place.

Their Eyes are full and Manly, and of a black or dark Hazel colour, the White marbled with Red Strakes, which is always common amongſt theſe People, unleſs they have either a white Father or Mother.

Their Colour is Tawny, which wou'd not be ſo dark did they not daub themſelves ſo often with *Bear's-Oil*, and a Colour like *Burnt-Cork*, which they practice from their Infancy, and continue ſo to do moſt part of their lives, it fills up the pores, and enables them the better to endure the Weather, and prevents moſt ſorts of Inſects and Vermin to be any wiſe troubleſome to them. They are never to be met with Heads bald, though very Old, which I am perſwaded is occaſioned by their Heads being always uncovered, and greaſing their Hair and other Parts ſo often as the do with *Bear's-fat*, which undoubtedly is a great nouriſher of the Hair, and cauſeth it to grow ſo very faſt. Amongſt the *Bear's Oil* (when they intend to be fine) they mix a certain red Powder that is produced from a kind of *Scarlet* Root that they get in the Hilly Country, near the foot of the great ridge of Mountains, and as it is reported by them, is no where elſe to be found. They have this *Scarlet Root* in great Eſteem, and ſell it at a great Price one to another, and the Reaſon of it's

its being so very valuable is, because they not only go a great way for it, but are likewise in great Danger of the *Sinagars*, or *Iroquis*, who are mortal Enemies to all our civilized *Indians*, and are very often by them or others before their return from this Voyage, made their Captives or killed,

The *Tuskeruros* and other *Indians*, have frequently brought the Seeds of this Plant from the Mountains, but it would never grow in our Land, delighting no where but in the Hilly and Mountainous parts; with this and the *Bear's-grease* they anoint their Heads and Temples, which is esteemed as Ornamental as *Oil* and *sweet Powder*, or any other thing we can use to our Hair; besides it has the Virtues to kill *Lice*, and suffer none to abide in their Heads. For want of this Root, they sometimes use a Root called *Pecoon*, which is of a Crimson colour, but apt to die the Hair of an ugly Hue, they likewise make use of an Herb called *Wasebur*, and small Roots called *Chappacor*, and the Bark of a Tree called *Tangomockonominge*; all these are Dyes for several sorts of Reds, which the *Indians* use to paint their Faces, Matts and Baskets with, but whether they would prove good in Cloath, is not yet known. This, I am certain of, that one of our civilized *Indians* brought me a handful of dryed Flowers, and desired me to put them in a large Sauce-pan filled with Water, and boil them with a piece of Linnen Cloath, which made it have such a deep Purple Colour, that the same could not be discharged by any Method used, but the oftner it was washed, the more beautiful and lively it appeared; the *Indian* would by no means discover the Plants the said Flower grew upon, but assured me, that he would procure any Person what quantity they pleased, if they would but satisfie him for his Trouble. They not only paint themselves *Red*,

Red, but with many other Colours, ſuch as *Black*, *Green*, *Blue*, and *White*, by which they repreſent all the Affairs in Life, ſuch as *War*, *Peace*, *Feaſts*, *Death*, and the like.

They generally let the Hair on their Heads grow very long, which is lank, thick and the ſtrongeſt of any People I have ever met with, and as black as Jet. They always travel bare-headed, having neither Hats, or any artificial Covering for thoſe Parts, except it be their civilized Kings and War Captains, who of late wear Hats, eſpecially when they viſit the *Chriſtians*. Thoſe who have repreſented the *Savages* as rough as Beaſts, have never had the Opportunity of ſeeing them, for they have naturally but little or no Beards, or Hairs on their Faces, and very ſeldome under their Arm-pits, which 'tis ſaid they continually pluck out by the Root as it begins to grow. Neither have they any upon their Privities, except ſome few that wear Brieeches or Tail-clouts, however, though theſe People are generally ſmooth and free from Hair, yet I have known ſome that were old, hairy down their Backs, and thoſe Hairs very long: It is to be obſerved, that the Head of the *Penis* is covered throughout the whole Nations of the *Indians* that I ever ſaw; I am credibly informed, that this is common with all, both old and young in *America*. They have extraordinary good Teeth, but generally of a yellowiſh Colour, occaſioned by their ſmoaking *Tobacco*, which they are very much addicted to; this Plant they report to have had, many ages before the arrival of the *Chriſtians* amongſt them.

They never cut or pair their Nails, but let them grow very long, ſaying, that that is the uſe they were made for, and laugh at the *Europeans* for pairing theirs, long Nails being always eſteemed amongſt them as a Beauty, which the Dancers at their Feaſts generally have, who rather repreſent

represent the figure of *Harpies* than Men, with these kind of Ornaments. They have long and taper Fingers as any People whatsoever, and it is to be admired how dexterous and steady they are in their Hands and Feet, for they will walk over deep Brooks and Creeks on the smallest Poles, and that without any Fear or Concern, which no People in these Parts can perform but themselves. I have seen an *Indian* walk on the ridge of a House without any manner of fear, and look from off the Gable, and spit down as unconcerned as if he had been walking on *Terra Firma*; as for Running, Leaping, or any such like Exercise, their Legs seldom fail or miscarry, so as to give them a fall; as for letting any thing fall out of their Hands, I never knew an Example. Their Gate is very upright and majestick, neither are they ever seen to walk backwards and forwards as we do, or contemplate on the Affairs of Loss and Gain, and many other things which daily perplex us. It is this steadiness in their Limbs (which are as well proportioned and as handsom as any in the World) that makes them so dexterous at the Gun, for it is remarkable that these People generally shoot and kill their Game with one single Ball, and the Boys with their Bows and Arrows are so well experienced in that kind of Exercise, that they will kill a Bird flying, or a Deer running, with as much certainty, as others with a Gun, of which I have been an Eye-witness.

They have no manner of Musical Instruments, such as *Pipe*, *Fiddle*, or any other Arts, Sciences, or Trades, worth mentioning, amongst them, which may be owing to their careless way of living, taking little or no Pains to provide for the Necessaries of Life, as the *Europeans* do. They will learn any thing very soon, and seem to be indued with very good Genius's, for I have seen

ſeveral Guns Stocked by them, better than moſt of our *Joyners*, having no Inſtrument or Tool to work with only a ſhort Knife: I have likewiſe known ſeveral of them that were taken Priſoners in the laſt War, and made Slaves to the *Engliſh*, learn handycraft Trades well and ſpeedily.

I never ſaw a Dwarf amongſt them, and only one that was Hump-back'd. Though the *Indians* are a tall People, yet they are not of ſo robuſt and ſtrong Bodies as to lift great Burthens, to endure hard Labour, or ſlaviſh Work, as the *Europeans* do, yet ſome that are Slaves prove very induſtrious and laborious. Amongſt themſelves they never work, taking little or no care or pains, but what is abſolutely neceſſary to ſupport Life, the Grandure and Riches of this World being utterly deſpiſed by them.

The *Indians* in *North-Carolina* that live near the Planters, are but few (as I obſerved before) not exceeding *Fifteen* or *Sixteen* hundred Men, Women and Children, and thoſe in good harmony with the *Engliſh*, with whom they conſtantly trade; yet near the Mountains they are very numerous and powerful, but have little or no fire Arms amongſt them, ſo that the three following Kings are not ſo much in dread or fear of thoſe near the Mountains as they formerly were, ſince they have furniſhed themſelves with Fire-Arms from the *Europeans*, becauſe they can kill at greater diſtances with their Guns, than the other can with their Bows and Arrows.

They have three *Paricoſſy's*, or *Indian Kings* in this Province, who are civilized, *viz.* King *Blunt*, King *Durant*, and King *Highter*; but they may rather be compared to Heads of Clans than Kings, according to their Appearances. I have frequently ſeen and converſed with theſe three Kings, whoſe Dreſſes were as follows:

King

King *Blunt* appeared before the Governour to pay his Tribute, which he, as well as the reſt, generally do once or twice every Year; and this Tribute is a quantity of *Deer-Skins*, dreſſed after the *Indian* manner.

Complements being paſſed between him and the Governour (which I ſhall deſcribe in another place) they were deſired to ſit down and dine with his Excellency, which all of them generally do, whenever they come to Town, where the Governour is: Several Diſcourſes paſt between them, and amongſt other things, that they were afraid of the *Sinagars*, or *Irequois Indians* (who are not in ſubjection to the *Engliſh*) coming to invade them, and deſiring the Aſſiſtance of the Governour, if there ſhould be any Occaſion, which he aſſured them of. Dinner being ended, the Glaſs went round very merrily, and whenever they drank to the Governour, they always ſtiled him by the Name of *Brother*. Theſe three Kings ſpeak *Engliſh* tolerably well, and are very wary and cunning in their Diſcourſes, and you would be ſurpriſed to hear what ſubtile and witty Anſwers they made to each Queſtion propoſed to them, notwithſtanding they are in general Illiterate People, having no Letters or Learning to improve them.

King *Blunt* being the moſt powerful of theſe I have mentioned, had a Suit of *Engliſh* Broadcloth on, and a pair of Women's Stockings, of a blue Colour, with white Clocks, a tolerable good Shirt, Cravat, Shoes, Hat, *&c.*

King *Durant* had on an old Blue Livery, the Waſtecoat having ſome remains of Silver Lace, with all other Neceſſaries fit for wearing Apparel ſuch as Shirt, Stockings, Shoes, *&c.* made after the *Engliſh* manner.

King *Highter* had on a Soldiers red Coat, Waſtecoat, and Breeches, with all other conveniencies for wearing Apparel, like the former: And it is to be obſerved, that

that after their return home to their Towns, that they never wear these Cloaths till they make the next State Visit amongst the *Christians*.

After this manner appeared the three civilized Kings, with each of them his *Queen*, *Children*, *Physician*, *Captains of War*, and his *Guards*: After Dinner was over, the Governour ordered *Rum* for the Queens, and the rest of the Retinue, who remained at some distance from the Governours House during the time the Kings were in Company with him. In a few Hours after they all withdrew from the Governours House, and went into Town to dispose of their *Deer-Skins* that were remaining, for *Blankets*, *Guns*, *Powder*, *Shot*, *Ball*, and other Necessaries they had occasion for, and especially *Rum*, whereof they are very fond.

What is worthy of Observation amongst the whole Retinue, is this, That you shall not see two but what have some Mark to distinguish them from each other; sometimes very long black Hair, with several bits of Stuff, such as *Green*, *Blue*, *Red*, *White*, and *Yellow*, tied in it; others with their Hair cut close, only a Circle left on the Head, the Hair whereof is about half an Inch longer than the rest. Others with several Marks in different parts of their Bodies and Faces, as if they had been marked with *Gun-Powder*, so that if you see an hundred of them, you shall always observe some difference in each of them, either in their Painting, Tonsure of their Hair, or the marks made in their Skins. All these Guards were well Armed, with each Man a Gun, good store of Powder and Ball, and a *Tamahawk* by his side, which is a kind of small *Hatchet*. It is likewise to be observed, that scarce any of the whole Retinue, except the *War Captains*, had any Cloathing, only *Tail-Clouts* (for decency) to cover their Nakedness, and some few with

a *Blanket*, or ſome ſuch like piece of Cloth about their Shoulders.

As ſoon as they have ſold their *Deer-Skins* for thoſe Neceſſaries they had occaſion for, and had drank what quantity of *Rum* they were allowed, or thought fit to make uſe of, they came out into the Street, to act the *Indian War*. which to any one bred in *Europe*, ſeemed rather like a Scene of Madneſs, than a Warlike Exerciſe, for one while they were Hooping and Hollowing, another while ſtamping altogether like Madmen, another time creeping, as if they were ſurprizing their Enemies, and many other antick Poſtures and Geſtures, too tedious to name. Though theſe Kings may ſeem deſpicable and meane to us, yet are they moſt abſolute, putting to death thoſe they judge worthy of it; therefore it may not be amiſs to give ſome Inſtances, becauſe they ſeem cruel and barbarous, if compared with our Laws for puniſhing Offenders, as may appear by the following Accounnt, *viz.*

An *Indian* came to a Planters Houſe in this Province, and finding no body at home but a Servant Maid, he attempted to lie with her, but ſhe not complying with his Deſires, he was ſo provoked, that to be revenged, he ſhot the Planters Dog as he was going away. The Planter complained to the Governour of the injury the *Indian* had done him, in order to have him puniſhed for the offece. A Meſſenger is immediately diſpatched to their King to demand Satisfaction for the treſpaſs the *Indian* had been guilty of. The Meſſenger coming late that Evening to the *Indian-town* the King courteouſly received him and prevailed upon him to ſtay all Night, and that the next Day when the Sun was up, at ſuch a height (as he expreſſed it) he would deliver him the Offender. Accordingly he remained there all Night, in hopes to have the

the *Indian* brought before the Governour, in order to be puniſhed according to the *Engliſh* Law; but at the time appointed, the King deſired the Meſſenger to walk with him into the Plantation, where to his great aſtoniſhment, he found the *Indian* dead, and hanging upon a Tree. The Meſſenger complained to the King, of the raſhneſs and cruelty of this Proceeding, adding, that he did not deſerve Death, and that he was ſorry he had been the Meſſenger, or occaſion to have a Perſon put to death, for ſo ſmall a Crime, which only deſerved Whipping, or ſome ſuch kind of Puniſhment; that he only came in order to have him brought before the Governour, to have him puniſhed. But the King replied, That he might then take him where he pleaſed, but he had put it out of his power ever afterwards to be guilty of doing any roguiſh Tricks. But to return: Their Queens, Sons, and Daughters, are never permitted to dine at the Governour's Table with the Kings, but remain with their Children and Guards at ſome diſtance from the Houſe.

The firſt of theſe Queens was dreſt with a Peticoat made after the *European* manner, and had her Hair, which is generally long, thick, and Black, tyed full of bits of Stuff, ſuch as Red, Green, Yellow, and variety of other Colours, ſo that to an *European* ſhe rather ſeem'd like a Woman out of *Bedlam*, than a Queen. She likewiſe had a large Belt about her full of their *Peack*, or *wampum*, which is their Money, and what they value above *Gold* or *Silver*, but to me it ſeem'd no better than our common *Snails*, or other ordinary Shells; the other parts of the Body from the Waſte upwards were all naked. The other two Queens were dreſt much after the ſame manner, but none like the firſt, having not ſuch rich Belts of Money about their Bodies, which to us in *Europe* woud not be worth one Farthing.

The

The *Indian Women*, as well as the Men, are ſwarthy, but their features are very agreeable and fine as any People you ſhall meet with, and few have better and ſharper Eyes than they have. Neither did I ever ſee but one Blind Man amongſt them, and they never would give me any account how he became blind, though I importun'd them to know the reaſon. This blind Man was led about with a Boy or Girl by a ſtring, ſo they put what burthens they pleas'd on his Back, and made him ſerviceable after that manner upon ſeveral Occaſions.

The firing they chiefly burn is *Pich-Pine*, that does not only ſtrengthen the Eyes, but preſerves them, which I do not doubt but it does, becauſe the Smoak never offends the Eyes though you ſhould hold your Face over a great Fire thereof, which is occaſioned by the Volatile parts of the *Turpentine*, which riſes with the Smoak, being of ſo friendly and Balſamick nature to them, that they are much relieved thereby, for the Aſhes of the *Pine-tree* afford little or no fixt Salt.

The *Indians* in general are great Smoakers of *Tobacco* (in their Language *Uppowoc*) which they tell us they had before the *Europeans* made any diſcoveries of that Country. It differs in Leaf from the *ſweet ſcented* and *Oroonoko*, which are the plants we raiſe and cultivate in *America*. Theirs likewiſe differs very much in the ſmell when it is Green from our *Tobacco* before it is cured, neither do they uſe the ſame method in curing it as we do, therefore the difference muſt be very conſiderable in taſte and ſmell, for all Men (that know *Tobacco*) muſt allow, that it is the ordering thereof that gives a hogo to the Weed, rather than any natural reliſh it poſſeſſes when Green. They make the heads of their Pipes very large, which are generally cut out of Stones, the Shanks whereof are made of hollow Cane. and although they are great Smoakers,

yet

yet they are never known to chew, or make it into *Snuff*, but will very freely take a pinch of Snuff out of an *European's* Box.

The *Indians* are Strangers to such delicacies as are in vogue amongst us, yet they have plenty of several kinds of Food, as *Buffeloes*, *Venison*, and *Fawns* in the Bags of the Does Bellys, *Bears*, *Beavers*, *Panthers*, *Pole-Cats*, *Wild-Cats*, *Raccoons*, *Possums*, *Hares*, *Squirrels*, roasted with their Guts in, wild *Bull's Beef*, *Mutton*, and *Pork*, which two latter they have from the *Christians*. The Deer, which is so highly esteemed in European Countries, for the delicacie of It's Flesh, is little valued amongst these Savages, only for the plunder of his Skin. All manner of wild Fowl that are eatable, *viz.* *Swans*, *Geese*, *Brants*, *Ducks*, *Turkeys*, *Pigeons*, and several other sorts of Fowl that are to be met with in *Carolina*.

Fishes of all sorts, both in the fresh and salt Waters, and all manner of shell-fish, as *Tortoises*, *Terebins*, *Oysters*, *Clams*, and the *Sting-ray*, or *Scate*, dryed and most other sort of Fishes that are known in these parts, except the *Conger*, *Lamprey-Eel*, and *Sturgeon*, our civiliz'd *Indians* that live near the Salt-Water will not touch, though those up the Freshes eat them. And as for *Snakes*, they scarce either kill or eat them, yet some of the *Savages* near the the Mountains are said to do both. All manner of Wild Fruits that are palatable, some of which they dry and keep against the *Winter*, such as *Huckle Berries*, and several other sorts of *Berries*, *Wall-nuts*, *Chesnuts*, *Hazel-Nuts*, *Chinkapins*, *Acorns*, and many other Fruits, as *Peaches* which they dry and make *Quidonies* and *Cakes* of, that are very pleasant, grateful, and cooling, but a little Tartish.

Rockahomine-Meal, which is made of their *Maze*, or *Indian-Corn* parched or pounded, and made into several sorts

ſorts of Bread, Ears of *Corn* roaſted in the *Summer*, and preſerved againſt *Winter*. *Ground-Nuts*, or *Wild Potatoes*, *Oil* of *Acorns* and Wild *Pigeons*, which they make uſe of as we do *Butter*, and ſeveral other things that are to be met with in great plenty amongſt them. They eat young *Waſps* when they are white in the Combs, before they can fly, which is eſteemed a very great dainty amongſt them, as likewiſe *Gourds*, *Mellons*, *Cucumbers*, *Squaſhes*, *Semblens*, and *Pulſe* of all ſorts. Tho' their Grounds be very fertile and able to produce much more than they do; yet they are contented to live upon a little, and what ſmall quantity of *Indian-Corn* they have is brought forth by the Induſtry of their Wives, who inſtead of *Ploughs* (of which they have none, nor Creatures fit for tillage) cultivate and dig the Ground with *Wooden Spades* and *Hoes* made after their own Faſhion, the Men's minds being wholly taken up in Hunting, eſpecially till they are about 50 Years of Age.

The *Victuals* are common throughout the whole kindred and relations, and often to the whole Town, and eſpecially when they are in their Hunting Quarters, then they all fare alike, there being little or no diſtinction obſerved amongſt them in their eating. It is very ſtrange to ſee in all the Places where they have been formerly ſettled, or had their Towns near the Salt Waters, what vaſt quantities of *Oyſter-ſhells* are to be met with on the Banks of the Rivers, in ſuch heaps, that it is ſurprizing to behold them: One might reaſonably imagine (by ſuch great quantities as are there) that they ſcarce lived upon any thing elſe, or that they muſt have been ſettled many hundred Years in one Place, which is not common amongſt them, being a People always ſhifting from one place to another, as their Fancies lead them.

These *Savages* live in *Wigwams*, or *Cabins*, built with Poles and the Bark of Trees; their Houses are made oval, or round like an *Oven*, to prevent any Damage by hard gales of Wind, which are common in this Country. They make the Fire in the middle of the House, and have a Hole at the top of the Roof, right above the Fire, to let out the Smoak. These Dwellings are as hot as Stoves, where they sweat and sleep all Night; the Floors are never paved or swept, so that the Earth is always loose, much resembling the poor Cabbins that are to be met with in several parts of *Ireland*, only the *Indians* having such plenty of Wood, make no earthen Walls to theirs. The Bark they generally make their Cabbins with is *Cypress*, or *red* or *white Cedar*; sometimes when they are a great way distant from any of these Woods, they make use of the *Pine Bark*, which is the worst sort to cover their Houses with. In building these Houses they get long Poles of *Pine*, *Cedar*, *Ash*, *Hickery*, or any Wood that will bend; these Poles are generally about the thickness of a Man's Leg at the thickest end, stript of the Bark, and well warmed in the Fire, which makes them tough and pliable. Then they make sharp points on the thickest ends, and stick them fast in the Ground, about two yards asunder, in a circular Form, the distance they design the Cabin, then they bend the tops and bring them together, after which they bind their Ends with Bark of Trees, that is proper for that use, such as *Elm*, or the long black Moss that grows on Trees, which seldom rots; then they brace them with other Poles to make them strong and firm; lastly, they cover them all over with Barks of Trees (except a hole to let out the Smoak) that they are warm and tight, and will keep firm against Wind and Weather. These are all the kind of Dwellings that are to be met with throughout all the Nations of

of the *Indians*, in these parts of *America*, except the civilized Kings, who of late have Houses fashioned and built after the manner that the *Christians* build theirs.

These Dwelling-Houses have Benches all round, except where the Door stands, whereon they lay Beasts Skins and Mats made of *Rushes*, on which they sleep and loll, having no other Beds but these. In one of these Houses several Families commonly live together, all related to one another, for these *Savages* do not seem so very careful of their Females as the *Europeans*, having no Bars or Partitions to keep the Men at a distance from the Women. They have other sorts of Cabins made without Windows or Holes at the top, which are their Granaries, where they keep their Corn and Fruit for *Winter*, or Store-Houses for their *Deer* or *Bever* Skins, and all other kind of Merchandize that they deal in. They have Cabbins of another kind made like a Shead, being only covered over head, the rest left open to the Air; these have Reed Hurdles like Tables to lie and sit on in *Summer*, and serve for pleasant Banqueting Houses in the extremity of the hot Weather.

As for *Liquors* they have little or none made amongst them, neither were they acquainted with any kind of intoxicating Liquors before the arrival of the *Christians*; contenting themselves with the pure Element, but they are now become very great Drinkers of *Rum*, and will part with any thing they have to purchase it; when they are a little mellow, they are the most impatient Creatures living, 'till they have enough to make them quite drunk, and then they are often the most miserable Spectacles in Nature, frequently tumbling into the Fire, and burning their Arms and Legs to that degree, that the Sinews are contracted, and they become Cripples all their Lives after; besides several other misfortunes which

them during their Drunkenneſs, as breaking their Bones and Joints, with many other melancholly Accidents, yet none ſufficient to deter them from this Practice. *Drunkenneſs* is a Vice ſo common amongſt them (if they can obtain ſtrong Liquors) that they drop down and lie quite naked, in ſuch brutiſh Poſtures as are not fit to be named. Theſe baſe Diſpoſitions are principally owing to the meanneſs of their Education, being ſtrangers to all Arts and Sciences, and the Knowledge of other Countries, which renders them inſenſible of that Virtue and Decency which other Nations value at ſo high a Rate.

The chief and only Liquor they admire is *Rum*, which they generally drink without any mixture; this the *Europeans* bring in amongſt them, and buy *Deer-Skins*, *Furrs*, and other Commodities with; they will freely ſell or part with any thing they have in the World (except their Wives and Children) rather than not accompliſh their Deſigns. They ſometimes commit ſuch brutalities and enormous Vices, as are not fit to be mentioned; yet there are ſome few amongſt them that will

In the Year 1708, the Governour ſummoned all the * not drink any ſtrong Liquors.
Indian Kings and Rulers in *North-Carolina* to meet, in order to make a firm and laſting Peace between the *Chriſtians* and *Indians*: At which publick Meeting, the *Indian* Kings and Rulers deſired, that in the concluſion of this Peace, it might be enacted that no *Rum* ſhou'd be Sold to them, which was accordingly granted, and a Law made by the *Engliſh*, which inflicted a penalty on any white Men that ſold *Rum* to the *Indians*. But this Law was never ſtrictly obſerved or put in force, becauſe the young *Indians* were ſo diſguſted at that Article, that they threatn'd to kill the *Indians* that had a Hand in making it, unleſs it were ſpeedily laid aſide, and that

they

they might have *Rum* ſold them as uſual when they went to the *Chriſtians* Houſes to buy it.

They likewiſe often times in their Drunken frolicks cut off their Hair and ſell it to the *Chriſtians*, which is looked upon amongſt them as the greateſt diſgrace imaginable; and the only affront that can be offered them is to deſire them to ſell their Hair, when they are ſober and free from Liquors.

The *Indians* are very revengful, notwithſtanding they always conceal their reſentments, but never forget an injury done, till they have received Satisfaction; yet they are the freeſt People from Heats and paſſions (which ſo frequently poſſeſs the *Europeans*) of any People I have ever ſeen or heard of. They never call any one to an Account for what they do when they are Drunk, but ſay it was the Drink that cauſed his misbehaviour, therefore he ought to be forgiven: Neither will they frequent any *Chriſtians* Houſe that is given to Paſſion, nor will ever buy or ſell with him, if they can get the ſame commodities they have occaſion for from any other Perſon; for they ſay ſuch kind of People are mad *Wolves* and no Men. They ſeldom or never fight with one another, unleſs when they are Drunk, nor ſhall you ever hear any Scolding amongſt them. For they ſay the *Europeans* are always wrangling and uneaſy with each other, and wonder they do not go out of this World, ſince they are ſo uneaſy and diſcontented in it. Neither do they ſhew the leaſt ſign of being dejected or caſt down at the greateſt calamities that can attend them, except it be the loſs of Friends. For it is remarkable, that all other loſſes and misfortuues end in Laughter, for if their Cabbins ſhould take Fire, and all their Goods be burnt therein (notwithſtanding all will ſtrive to ſave what they can whilſt there is any poſſibility, and prevent any farther damage) yet

ſuch

ſuch a misfortune generally ends in a hearty fit of Laughter. But if any of their kinsfolks have loſt their Lives in the Flames, it is then the Caſe is altered, and they become very penſive and mourn for a conſiderable time, which always bears Proportion to the dignity of the Perſon deceaſed, and the number of Relations he had near him, who make a horrid howling during that time.

The *Indian* Women are never known to ſcold, and it is a thing impoſſible to hear them make uſe of that unruly Member the Tongue, with ſuch Rage and Malice as our *European* Dames are ſubject to, whom I could wiſh would ſet theſe *Indians* for a Pattern, by which means there would be more Quietneſs and better Harmony in moſt Families, than at preſent is to be met with. For when theſe *Indian* Women are provoked or affronted by their Husbands, or any other Perſons, they reſent the Indignity offered them in Silence, Tears, or by refuſing their Meat; theſe being always certain Signs that they have been injured and Affronted.

Neither are the Men Paſſionate, or over haſty to act any Affair with too much haſte or impetuoſity, never determining any Buſineſs of Moment without the greateſt Deliberation and Warineſs imaginable, being more content with common Accidents and Misfortunes incident to human Nature (ſuch as Loſſes, contrary Winds, bad Weather, Poverty and the like) than People of more civilized Nations. I never felt any ill or unſavoury ſmell in their Cabins, whereas ſhould we live in our Houſes as they do, we ſhould be poiſoned with our own Naſtineſs; which confirms theſe *Indians* to be, as they certainly are, ſome of the ſweeteſt People in the World.

Their Women when they are young, and at Maturity, are fine ſhaped Creatures (take them in general) as any in the Univerſe; and though they are of a tawny Complexion

plexion (which is very much occasioned by their being so much exposed to the Weather, and their continual daubing and painting themselves with *Bear's Oil*, and other Ingredients mixed with it) yet their Features are very good, their Eyes Black and Amorous, and their Smiles afford the finest composure a Face can possess.

Their Hands are of the finest make, with small long taper Fingers, and as soft as their Cheeks, the whole Body being of a smooth Nature, with Limbs of the most exquisite shape. They are Mercenary, except the Married Women, who sometimes bestow their Favours on whom they like best, in their Husbands absence, for which they never take any Reward: As for the report that some might have heard of them, that they are never found inconstant like the *European* Women, it is intirely false; for were the old World and the New, put into a pair of Scales (in point of Constancy and Chastity) it would be a hard matter to discern which was the heavier. As for the *Trading Girls*, which are those designed to get Money by Prostitution, these are easily known, by a particular Tonsure, or cut of their Hair, differing from all others of that Nation, who are not of their Profession; which Method is to prevent Mistakes, for these *Savages* are desirous (if possible) to keep their Wives to themselves, as well as those in other Parts of the World.

When any Addresses are made to one of these Girls, she immediately acquaints her Parents therewith, and they tell the King of it (provided he that courts her for a Bedfellow be a stranger) his Majesty being most commonly principle Baud of the Nation he rules over, there being seldom any of these Love-bargains made or concluded without his Royal Assent. He likewise advises her what Bargain to make with her Gallant, who shews some Toys he has to present her with: But if it happens

pens to be an *Indian* Trader, that wants one of them for a Bedfellow, and has got *Rum* to ſell, he always fees the King with a large Dram, to confirm the Match.

When any ſuch Queſtion is propoſed to theſe *Savages*, they will debate the Matter amongſt themſelves with all the ſobriety and ſerioufneſs imaginable, every one of the Girls Relations arguing the Advantage or Diſadvantage that may enſue from ſuch a Nights Encounter, all which is done with as much ſteadineſs and reality, as if it were the greateſt Concern in the World, not ſo much as one Perſon ſhall be ſeen to ſmile ſo long as the Debate laſts, making no manner of difference betwixt an Agreement of this Nature, and any other Bargain. If they comply with the Men's deſire, then a particular Bed is provided for them either in a *Cabin* by themſelves, or elſe all the young People turn out to another Lodging, that they might not ſpoil ſport betwixt theſe Lovers, and if the old People are in the ſame *Cabin* along with them all Night, they lye as unconcern'd as if they were ſo many Statues or logs of Wood, in nowiſe offering to diſturb them, and that the Man may have the Satisfaction of his new purchaſe, which pleaſure is ſometimes bought at too dear at rate. If it be an *Indian* of their own Town or Neighbourhood that wants a Miſtreſs, he comes to none but the Girl who receives what preſents ſhe thinks fit to ask, and ſo lyes with him all Night without the knowledge or previous conſent of her Parents or Relations. This familiarity ſo kindles luſt, that the young Men will likewiſe go in the Night time from one Houſe to another to viſit the young Women, after which rambling manner they frequently ſpend the whole Night. In their adreſſes they find no delays, for if ſhe is willing to entertain the Man, ſhe gives him encouragement, and grants him admittance, otherwiſe ſhe

ſhe withdraws her Face from him and ſays, *I cannot ſee you, either you or I muſt leave this* Cabin *and ſleep ſome where elſe this Night.* This repulſe makes him immediatly withdraw, and addreſs himſelf to ſome more kind Miſtreſs, that will accept of his favours. Neither doth it diſpleaſe the Parents, that their Daughters are thus acquainted, knowing by theſe Means that they can command the young Men to help them in any Work or Buſineſs they have occaſion to uſe them in.

They ſet apart the youngeſt and prittieſt Faces for trading Girls, who are remarkably known by a particular Tonſure in their Hair (as I ſaid before) which diſtinguiſhes them from thoſe engaged to Husbands; for what is accounted amongſt us as moſt Criminal, are taken for ſlender Treſpaſſes amongſt them; for if a young Man can get a Favour of his Neighbour's Daughter, it is looked upon as a ſlight Offence, becauſe they are not permitted to Marry without the King's Approbation, which is ſeldom before they are twenty Years of age.

Theſe Girls are generally very Mercenary, and whoever make uſe of them, engages them with ſome gratuity or other, the principal part whereof is for the King's uſe, exerciſing his prerogative over all the Stews of his Nation, his own Cabbin being very often the chief Brothel Houſe. As they grow in Years, the hot aſſaults of Love grow cooler, and then they become more ſtaid and conſtant to their Husbands, if engaged; many of them after their Engagement or Marriage, are ſo reſerved, that they will admit of no other to their Embraces but their Husbands.

Theſe trading Girls, after they have led that courſe of Life ſeveral Years, in which time they ſcarce ever have a Child, for it is ſuppoſed that they have ſome particular

Secret, or Method (with Herbs) by which they prevent Conception, 'till they are married, and then never fail to be fruitful. But if it ſhould happen, that ſhe brings forth a Child whilſt ſhe follows this lewd courſe of Life, ſhe is not only accounted a Fool, but her Reputation is very much leſſened thereby, at laſt they grow weary of the Addreſs of ſo many Men, and betake themſelves to a married State, or to the Company of one Man; neither does their having been common to ſo many, occaſion any Blemiſh in their Reputation, or hinderance to a Husband, but rather a Promotion; for they ſay, *That a Woman living otherwiſe, is not worth a Man's acceptance, and never makes a good Wife.*

The Men are never to boaſt of Intrigues with the Women, if they do, none of the Girls will admit of their Company to their Beds, or have any regard for them afterwards. This is not out of any tender Regard they have for their Reputation, for there is no ſuch thing (on that Account) known amongſt them; although we may reckon them the greateſt Libertines in the purſuit of their Pleaſures, and moſt extravagant in their Embraces, yet they retain and poſſeſs a modeſty that requires thoſe Paſſions never to be revailed, or made known to the World.

The Woman is not puniſhed for Adultery (this and Fornication being not ſo much as looked upon as a Sin amongſt them) but the Gallant is obliged to make the injured Husband Satisfaction, which is the Law of Nations, and practiſed amongſt all the *Indians*; the Gallant that ſtrives to evade ſuch Satisfaction as the Husband demands, lives daily in danger of his Life: But when thoſe Reparations are made him, that he is ſatisfied, with all Animoſities ceaſe, and he is laughed at by the whole Nation, for carrying on his Intrigue with no better Conduct,

duct, than to be discovered, and pay so dear for his Pleasure.

The *Indians* say, that a Woman is a weak Creature, and easily drawn away by the Man's persuasion; for which reason they seldom or never lay any blame on the Woman, but the Man (that ought to be Master of his his Passions) for persuading her to it.

They are of very hale sound Constitutions, and their Breath as sweet as the Air they breath in: The Women are of so tender a Composition, that they seem rather designed for the Bed than Bondage; yet their Love is never of that extensive force or continuance, that any of them ever run mad or make away with themselves on that score. They never love beyond retrieving their first indifferency, and when slighted, are as ready to untie the Knot at one end, as you are at the other.

I knew an *European Man* that lived many Years amongst the *Indians*, and had a Child by one of their Women, having bought her as they do their Wives, and afterwards married a *Christian*: Sometime after he came to the *Indian* Town, not only to buy *Deer-Skins*, but likewise to pass away a Night with his former Mistress as usual, but she made answer, *That she then had forgot that she ever knew him, and that she never lay with another Woman's Husband*; so fell a crying, took up the Child she had by him, and went out of the Cabin in great Disorder, although he used all possible means to pacifie her, by offering her Presents of several *Toys* and *Rum*, but all to no purpose, for she would never see him afterwards, or be reconciled.

There are several *Europeans* and other Traders which travel and abide amongst them for a long space of Time, sometimes a Year, two or three, and those Men commonly have their *Indian* Wives or Mistresses, whereby

they ſoon learn the *Indian* Tongue, and keep in good Friendſhip with them, beſides the ſatisfaction they have of a Bedfellow, they find theſe Girls very ſerviceable to them upon ſeveral occaſions; eſpecially in dreſſing their Victuals, and inſtructing them in the Affairs and Cuſtoms of the Country; moreover they get a great Trade amongſt them; but the Perſon that is reſerved, and doth not thus converſe with their Women, it is difficult for him to accompliſh his Deſigns amongſt the Natives.

One great misfortune that generally attend the *Chriſtians* that converſe with theſe Women as Husbands, is, that they get Children by them, which are ſeldom otherwiſe brought up or educated than in the wretched ſtate of *Infidelity*; for it is a certain Rule and Cuſtom amongſt all the *Savages* in *America* (as far as I could learn) to let all the Children fall to the Woman's Lot; for it frequently happens, that two *Indians*, that have lived together as Man and Wife for many Years, in which time they have had ſeveral Children, if they part, and another takes her to be his Wife, all the Children go along with the Mother; and therefore on this Account it is a difficult matter for the *Chriſtians* ever to get the Children they have had by theſe *Indian* Women away from them, to bring them up in the Knowledge of the true God, and the Principles of the *Chriſtian Faith*, that they live in a miſerable ſtate of Darkneſs and Infidelity all the Days of their lives. It is very ſurprizing, that ſeveral *Chriſtians* that are accuſtomed to the Converſation of theſe Women and their way of living, have been ſo infatuated and allured with that carleſs ſort of life, as to continue with their *Indian* Wife, and her Relations ſo long as they lived, without ever deſiring to return again among the *Chriſtians*, though they had ſeveral Opportunities

nities, and conſiderable Advantages offered them. Of theſe loſt and unfortunate ſort of People (as I may properly term them) there are ſome living amongſt the *Savage Indians* of *Carolina* to this Day, with whom I have frequently converſed, and exhorted them to return to the *Chriſtians*, from the *Indians*, and their abominable Practices, and likewiſe reminding them of what our Saviour JESUS CHRIST ſaid, *That where two or three are gathered together in his Name, he will grant their Requeſt*, which they would not accept, but voluntary remained amongſt them. I likewiſe urged many other Reaſons and Texts of Scripture, but all to no purpoſe, neither could I have any ſatisfactory Anſwer from them for their obſtinate and dangerous way of living.

The *Indians* being of ſeveral Nations, have as different Cuſtoms amongſt them, and he that is the greateſt Warrior, or the beſt Hunter, is ſure to be the greateſt favorite amongſt the Women. The prettieſt Girls are always beſtowed upon the chief Men, and ugliеſt upon the lazy and uſeleſs Lubbers, as to the Ceremony of Marriage they have none amongſt them, for the Girls at Twelve or Fourteen years of Age, or as ſoon as Nature prompts them, freely beſtow their favours on ſome Youth about the ſame Age, and ſo continues them to whom ſhe likes beſt, changing her Mate as often as ſhe pleaſes; for few or none of them are conſtant to one, 'till the greater number of Years has made her capable of managing her Domeſtick Affairs; and that ſhe hath try'd the vigour of moſt of the Nation ſhe belongs to; for the multiplicity of Gallants beforehand are no objection or ſtain to a Females Reputation, or hindrance to her advancement, for the more ſhe hath followed that courſe of Life, the more ſhe is valued and reſpected, and coveted by thoſe of the firſt Rank amongſt them to make a

Wife

of: So that a Virgin, ſo much eſteemed and coveted by the *Europeans*, is in little value or requeſt amongſt them.

When a Man or Woman is arrived at a certain age of Maturity, and has paſſed the Ceremonies practiſed by their Nation, and other Graduations and Qualifications amongſt them, and are allowed to be Houſekeepers, it is then he makes his Addreſſes to one or other of theſe for a Wife: When he has obtained her conſent, the Parents of both Parties (with the conſent of the King) agree about the matter, making a promiſe of their Daughter to the Man that requires her for a Wife; and it often happens that they converſe and travel together ſeveral Moons before they are acknowledged as Man and Wife, or the Marriage publiſhed openly, theſe being Cuſtoms allowed amongſt them in all parts. After this, the Man upon the leaſt diſguſt or diſlike may turn her away, and take another: But if ſhe ſhould diſapprove of his Company, a Price is ſet upon her, and whoever takes her, is obliged to pay the Fine to the former Husband, then ſhe becomes free from him, and is the latters Wife.

Sometimes their Captains of War and great Men keep three or four of theſe Girls for their own uſe, when at the ſame time they are ſo impotent and old as to be incapable to make uſe of one of them, but theſe will always have their Due, if there be either *European* or *Indian* that will accept of their Favours.

The Husband is never ſo diſpleas'd or enrag'd with the Adultreſs, as to put her to Death, or even to inflict any grievious puniſhments on her, though ſhe be caught in the very fact. But the rival becomes Debtor to the cornuted Husband in ſome few trifles of little value amongſt the *Europeans* (yet much eſteemed amongſt them) which

which when paid, all animosities cease and are laid aside between the Husband and the Wife's gallant, otherwise they are a treacherous generation when thus injurd.

They will even sometimes let out their Wives for a Night or two for a gratuity, and sometimes to oblige their Neighbours or intimate Friends, especially their great Men, nor do they reckon their Wives Whores for lying with those that are as good or better then themselves, and sometimes to gratifie their Wives Inclinations. A custom much like this we read of amongst the *Britains*, which was a Society of Wives among certain Numbers, and by common consent. Every Man married a single Woman, who was always after, and alone, esteem'd his Wife. But it was usual for 5. 6. 10. 12. or more either Brothers or Friends as they coud agree to have all their Wives in common, so that encounters happen'd amongst them as they were invited by desire, or favourd by opportunity. Yet every Woman's Children was attributed to him that had Married her, but all had a share in the care and defence of the whole Society, since no Man knew which were his own. Such were the People and the customs of the *Britons* when the *Romans* invaded their Island under the Ensignes of *Julius Cæsar*.

But to return, when a young *Indian* has a mind for such a Girl for his Wife, he, or some one for him goes (as I before observed) to the young Woman's Father or Mother, if living, if not, to the neareſt Relations, where he or they make offers of the Match betwixt them; the Relations reply, *they will consider of it*: This serves for a sufficient Answer, 'till there be a second meeting about it, where they seriously debate the Affair amongst themselves, the King being commonly present, and most of the great Men, who all give their Opinion about it, which if they agree upon, the Woman is immediately called

called to know how ſhe approves of the Man (for as it is reported, they never give their Children in Marriage without their conſent) for a Husband; if ſhe approves and is ſatisfied, the Man pays ſo much for his Wife, and the handſomer ſhe is, bears the greater price. It ſometimes happens that the Man has not Effects enough to pay the Purchaſe for her; but if he be known to be a a good Hunter, that he can raiſe and pay the Fine agreed upon in ſo many Moons, or ſuch a limited Time as they propoſe, ſhe is obliged to go along with him as bethrothed, but he is not to have carnal Knowledge of her 'till all the Obligation or Payment is diſcharged. This is punctually obſerved, and then ſhe is his Wife.

Thus they live together under one covering for ſeveral Months (till the obligation is fullfill'd) and the Woman remains the ſame as ſhe was when ſhe firſt came to him, as I have been inform'd by the *Indians* themſelves. I am perſwaded that there are but few of the *Europeans* but what wou'd break through theſe cuſtoms, if they had the ſame opportunities and Liberties allowed them. But the *Indians* are not ſo vigorous and impetient in the purſuit of Love, and gratifying their deſires as the *Europeans* are, yet the Women are quite contrary; and thoſe *Indian* Girls that have frequently converſed with the *Europeans*, never much care for the converſation of their own Country-men afterwards.

They never marry ſo near as a firſt Couſin, yet they are allowed to marry two Siſters, or his Brothers Wife; and although there is nothing more coveted amongſt them than to marry a Woman of their own tribe or Nation, which conſiſts of very few People, ſo that they are all of them related to one another, yet they are obliged to look out for Husbands and Wives amongſt ſtrangers and People of another Nation. If an *Indian* ſhould

lie

lie with his own Sister (and that she proves with Child, or it is otherwise known) or any other near Relations, his Body is immediately Burnt, and the Ashes thereof thrown into the River, as unworthey to remain upon the Earth. Neither is Sodomy, that beastly Action known amongst them, nor have they a Name forthat abominable Sin in all their Languages.

These Marriages amongst them are no longer binding than the Man and Woman agree together, for either have liberty to leave each other upon any frivolous excuse. Both Men and Women commonly marry four or five times before they can settle to their Content; for when they thus marry, they do not intend to bind themselves for as long time as they shall live, but for as long only as they shall agree together and love each other: If they grow weary or discontented with each other, they may separate, which is equally allowed to both Parties; Thus they part without any clamour or noise, and perfectly indifferent to each other afterwards, and take no more Notice when they meet, than if they had never seen one another, and wonder that the *Europeans* do not follow the same course: But whoever takes the Woman that was another Man's before, and bought by him (as they all are) must certainly pay to her former Husband whatsoever he gave for her: But if he sends her away without any Cause, she keeps the Presents given her before Marriage: If she be a Widow, and her Husband died in Debt, whoever takes her to be his Wife, pays all her late Husband's Obligations, be they never so many; for the Woman is not required or obliged to pay any thing (unless she is willing so to do) that was owing from her Husband, so long as she lives single. But if a Man courts her for a Nights Lodging, and obtains it, if the Creditors have knowledge of it, they will

make him pay the Husband's Debts, then he may if he pleases, take her to be his Wife, or sell her to another for his own or a less Purchase.

There are several of these kind of Bargains made in a Day amongst them (the Women never living the worse for this kind of Traffick) for the Men will sell their Wives at their publick Meetings, as Men do *Horses* and other Cattle at a Fair or Market with us: A Man is not only allowed to change as often as he pleases, but likewise to have as many Wives as he is able to maintain, though they are seldom known to live with more than one at a time, except it be their great Men, such as *War-Captains*, *&c.* The Women have very ealy travail with their Children; sometimes they bring forth Twins, and are frequently brought to Bed by themselves, when taken at a disadvantage; not but that they have *Midwives* as well as *Doctors* amongst them, who make it their Profession (for Gain) to assist and deliver Women: Some of these *Midwives* are very knowing in several Medecins that the Country naturally produces, which most certainly expedite and make easy Births, besides they are unacquainted with those severe Pains that follow the Birth in *European* Women. Their Remedies are a great cause of this easiness in that state, for the Women will run up and down their Plantations the same Day they are delivered, without any sign of Pain or Sickness; yet they look very meager and thin, not but that we must allow a great deal to be owing to the Climate, and the natural Constitution of the Women, whose Courses of Nature never visit them in such quantities as the *European* Women have; although they always have plenty of Milk, I never saw an *Indian* Woman have large Breasts, which is common amongst the *Blacks* or *Negroe* Women, they having the largest and uglieſt

uglieſt of any that are to be met with; neither does the youngeſt Wife amongſt the *Indians* ever fail of proving ſo good a Nurſe, as to bring up her Child free from the *Rickits*, and diſaſters that proceed from the *Teeth*, with many other Diſtempers which are frequent amongſt the Children in *Europe*.

They let their Children (amongſt whom are many *Olive* Beauties) ſuck 'till they are well grown, unleſs they prove big with Child ſooner than uſual. They always nurſe their own Children themſelves, unleſs Sickneſs or Death prevents them. I only once ſaw a *Nurſe* hired to give Suck to an *Indian* Woman's Child, the Mother happening to have a fit of ſickneſs not long after her delivery; by which not only her Strength was much impaired, but likewiſe the Milk in her Breaſts. As ſoon as the Child is born, they waſh it in cold Water in the next Stream or River, then anoint or bedaub it all over with *Bear's Greaſe* and other Ingredients, as I have before obſerved; after their Delivery they waſh themſelves in the Waters, and abſent themſelves from the Company of Men for forty Days. The Husband takes care to provide a *Cradle*, which is ſoon made, conſiſting only of a piece of flat Wood that they hew with their *Hatchets* to the likeneſs of a Board, about two Feet long and a Foot broad, to this they brace and tie the Child very cloſe, having near the middle a Stick faſtned about two Inches from the Board, for the Child's Breech to reſt on, under this they put a Wad of *Moſs* that receives the Child's Excrements, by which means they can very readily ſhift the *Moſs*, and keep all clean and ſweet. They are apt to have the Bodies and Heads of their Children flat, which is owing to theſe kind of Cradles, yet they are the moſt portable things that can be invented, there being a String from one corner of the Board to the other, where-

by the Mother flings the Child on her Back, ſo that the Infant's Back is towards hers, and it's Face to the Sky; if it rains, ſhe throws her *Leather* or *Woolen Match-coat* over her Head, which covers her all over, and ſecures her and the Child from the injury of the Weather. Theſe being the only kind of *Cradles* that are common throughout all *America*.

The Women quit all manner of Company, neither do they dreſs their own Victuals during their Purgation; after they have had ſeveral Children, they grow ſtrangely out of Shape in their Bodies; as for Barreneſs it is ſeldom or never known amongſt them, their Women moſt commonly proving very fruitful, eſpecially after Marriage, every *Cabin* being full of Children, who are taught as ſoon as they grow up to *Fiſh*, and *Hunt* in the Woods, and to do what is neceſſary about their Houſes, *viz.* to beat *Indian Corn*, and the like, for they do not take the leaſt Care of their Education, being ſtrangers to all Arts and Sciences, ſo that they lead a very idle Life.

They name their Children according to their own Fancies, which is quite different to either the Father or Mother's Name. This Name they keep (if a Boy) 'till they arrive to the Age of a *Hunter*, or a *Warrior*, which is commonly at ſixteen or ſeventeen Years, then they take a Name to themſelves as they think proper, ſome being called *Eagle*, *Tyger*, *Panther*, *Alligator*, or ſome ſuch wild Creature, eſteeming nothing on Earth worthy to give them a Name, but ſuch kind of Wildfowl or Beaſts. Some likewiſe take the Names of ſome *Fiſh*, which they keep as long as they live.

They number their Age by *Moons* or *Winters*, and ſay a Woman or a Man is ſo many *Moons* or *Winters* old, and ſo they do with all memorable Actions in life, accounting

accounting it to be ſo many *Moons* or *Winters* ſince ſuch or ſuch a thing happened. They likewiſe can gueſs tollerably well at the time of the Day by the height of the *Sun*. Though they have no different Names for *Sun* or *Moon*, yet they underſtand the latters Age, having no other Computation of Time but after this manner.

They have no *Sabbath*, or certain Days of Reſt appointed for Devotion amongſt them, that I ever could obſerve, except we will allow of their Feaſts to be their feſtival Days, ſet appart for that purpoſe. However thoſe that are frequently amongſt the *Chriſtians*, and ſpeak the *Engliſh* Tongue, know very well when it is *Sunday*, or the *Engliſh Man's Gods Day*, as they term it. In theſe Parts they have likewiſe a particular and diſtinct Name for *Chriſtmas*, which they call *Winick-keſhuſe*, or the *Engliſh-Man's Gods Moon*.

They name the Months according to what moſtly is produced or taken in each of them, as one is called *Herring-month*, which is *March*, another the *Strawberry-month*, which is *April*, another the *Mulberry-month*, or *May*; others name them by Trees that bud or bloſſom at particular Seaſons of the Year, ſuch as the *Dogwood-tree*, *Tulip-tree*, and many others. Others again make out their Seaſons from the flight of Birds, ſuch as *Swans*, and many other Fowl, and ſome from the Gobling of *Turkey Cocks*, which is in *March*, and *April*; for when they are out in their Hunting matches they ſay they will returne Home when the *Turkey Cock* begin to Gobble.

The *Indians* are not Jealous like the *Spaniards* and other *European* Nations, neither do they know what Jealouſy is, becauſe they never think their Wives unconſtant unleſs they are Eye witneſſes thereof. They are generally baſhful, eſpecially the young Maids, who when they come into a ſtrange *Cabin* where they are not

not acquainted, never ask for any thing, though they be ever so Hungry or Thirsty, but sit down without speaking a Word, till some of the House ask them some Questions, or fall into discourse with the Stranger.

The Women (as I observ'd before) never Scold with each other, and no People in the World more tender and Indulgent of their Children, so that they seldom or never correct or chastise them, which I am perswaded is a very great reason that they are not given to Scold (like the *Europeans*) when they come to Men and Women's Estate.

They have few or no complements amongst them, except shaking of Hands, and scratching on the shoulder, which are the greatest marks of affection and sincerity that can be shewed amongst them, not only to Strangers but to each other. And it is worthy of observation, to see when the *War Captains* (who are Men of the greatest esteem amongst them, next the King) come to the *Cabins* of the inferior *Indians*, that at his departure they scratch his shoulder, which is look'd upon amongst them, as the greatest honour, Complement, or marke of distinction they can confer on so great a Man.

They do not express *Fare you well*, but when they leave the House or Company will say, *I go straight away*, which is to intimate their departure, and if the Man of the House has any Message to send by the Person going he may acquaint them therewith. Neither does their Language allow them to say, *Sir, I am your Servant*, because they have little or no Degrees of Quality or Titles for Man, only *King*, *War Captain*, *Old-man*, or *Young-Man*, which respect the stations and Circumstances, that Men are employed in or arrived to, and not Ceremony. Neither is the Name of Master so much as known amongst them. And as for Servant, they have no such thing,

except

except Slave, for their *Dogs*, *Cats*, *Wild* and *Domeſtick Beaſts* and *Birds* are call'd by the ſame Name, for the *Indian-word* for Slave includes them all; ſo when an *Indian* tells you, *he has got a Slave for you*, it may (in general terms as they uſe) be a young *Eagle*, a *Dog*, *Poſſam*, *Ottor*, or any other thing of that Nature, which is obſequiouſly to depend on the Maſter for its Suſtenance.

When the *Europeans* come in amongſt them to their Towns, though perhaps the *Indians* are well acquainted with ſome of them, yet not one of them will ſpeak to them, till the King pays the firſt complement, which is ſhaking of Hands, and biding them welcome, after him the *War Captains*, *Doctors* or *Prieſts* ſo on gradually from high to low, not one of all theſe ſpeaking to the *European* till his ſuperior has ended his Salutation. After all this Ceremony is over then every *Indian* has liberty to ſpeak and converſe with his *European* acquaintance, this being an honour due to the King and his great Men, which is moſt ſtrictly obſerved amongſt them.

It is common amongſt the *European* traders who trafick with the *Indians*, if they find no Body at Home, to make uſe of their *Huts*, or *Cabins* and other neceſſaries that they find in them, ſuch as *Indian Corn*, *Peas*, *Beans*, *Chinkapin*, *Nuts*, *Wall-nuts*, and ſeveral other *Nuts*, and Fruits, *Pigeon's-Oil*, *Barbacu'd Veniſon*, *Peaches*, and *Peach-Bread*, theſe *Peaches* are likewiſe made into a *Quiddony*, and then into Loaves like *Barley* Cakes, which cut into thin Slices and diſolved in Water, make a very greatful and cooling Drink, all which they allow the *Chriſtian* Traders to do, in lieu whereof they moſt commonly leave ſome ſmall gratuity ſuch as *Tobacco*, *Beads*, or ſome other Trifles of this Nature, (which are kindly received and acknowledged by them) and then proceed on their intended Journey.

The

The Women's dreſs in ſevere and cold Weather are Peticoats, Blankets, or Tail-clouts (which of late they have purchaſed from the *Europeans*) or a *Hairy Match-coat* made in the nature of a Plad of the Skins of ſeveral wild Beaſts, which keeps out the Cold, and (as I ſaid before) defends their Children from the prejudices of the Weather, at other times they have only a kind of flap or Apron containing two Yards in length, and better than half a Yard deep, to cover the Privities, which is done only for decency, both Men and Women being accuſtomed from their infancy to an entire Nakedneſs, for they go with their Feet, Body, and Head bear, all ſeaſons of the Year. Others wear Blue or Red Flaps made of Bays and Plains, which they buy from the *Europeans*, both of which they tuck in at the Corners, to faſten that kind of Garment, and at other times they make it faſt with a Belt: Sometimes they wear *Meggizons* or *Indian Shoes* made of *Deer-Skins*, after the manner as the Men's are. Some of them likewiſe have in *Winter* Blue or Red Stuff faſtned about their Legs inſtead of *Stockins*.

The Hair of their Head is made into a long Roll like a *Horſes-tail*, and adorned or bound round with *Ronoak* or *Procelan*, a kind of Beads they make of *Conk-ſhells*, which is the Money the *Indians* make uſe of in theſe parts. Others that have not this, make a Leather ſtring or ſome pieces of Green or Red Stuff ſerve, others adorne their Hair with Beautiful Flowers and Feathers of ſeveral Birds: After this manner they make their appearance, when they come along with their Husbands amongſt the *Chriſtians*.

The Men have *Match-coats* of *Hair*, *Furs*, *Feathers*, or *Cloth*, and their Hair rolled upon each Ear as the Women's, only much ſhorter, and frequently a Roll on the Crown of their Head and Temples, as they fan-

cy,

cy, there being no great nicety or ſtrictneſs in their Dreſs. They make their Stockins of pieces of *Blue* or *Red* Cloath, which they faſten about their Legs with ſmall Splinters made of bits of the *Pitch pine-wood*, or any other Wood. Others faſten them on with Strings on the out ſide of the Leg like *Buskins*. Sometimes they wear great Bobs in their Ears, others in the holes thereof put *Eagles* and other Birds Feathers for a Trophy; when they kill any Fowl, they commonly pluck of the downy Feathers and ſtick them all over their Heads, which make them appear more frightful than Ornamental, and more like People diſtracted than in their Senſes: At other times both Men and Women wear great Belts and Neck-laces of their Money made of *Conk-ſhells*, and often times Bracelets made of *Braſs* and *Iron-wire*, and ſeveral other Toys which they purchaſe from the *Chriſtians*.

Others have their Hair made up in long rolls, wherein are tied ſeveral bits of Stuff of various colours, ſuch as *Yellow*, *Green*, and *Red*, and the like, as the Women do. Betwixt their Legs comes a piece of Cloth that is tuck'd in like a Belt both before and behind; this is contrived to hide their Nakedneſs, of which Decency they are ſtrict obſervers, though never practiſed before the *Chriſtians* came amongſt them. Some wear *Shoes* of *Buck* or *Bear Skins*, which they will tan in an Hour or two with the Bark of Trees boiled, wherein they put the *Leather* whilſt hot, and let it remain a ſhort time, whereby it becomes ſo qualified, as to endure Water and Dirt without growing hard. Theſe *Moggizons* or *Shoes* have no Heels, but are made as fit for the Feet, as a Glove for the Hand, and eaſie to travel in when one is a little uſed to them.

The *Feather Match-coats* are exceedingly pretty, ſome of which are beautifully wrought with variety of Colours

and Figures, which ſeem at a diſtance like a fine flowred *Silk-ſhag*, when new and freſh, they ſerve a Bed inſtead of a Quilt. Some *Match-coats* are made of *Hair*, as *Racoons*, *Beavers*, or *Squirrell's Skins*, which are very warm. Others again are made of the green part of the Skin of the *Mallards* head, and other Fowls which they ſtitch or ſow perfectly well together, their Thread being either the Sinews of a *Deer* divided very ſmall, or *Silk-graſs*, when theſe are finiſhed they look moſt beautifuly, though they muſt needs be very troubleſome and tedious to make. But thoſe that have plenty of *Deer Skins* frequently buy the *Engliſh* made *Coats*, *Blankets*, *&c.* yet few are ever known to buy or wear Breeches (except their Kings and great Men) ſaying they are too much confined in them, and prevents their ſpeed in running, leaping, and other exerciſes.

There was formerly a Nation of *Indians* called the *Paſquotank Indians*, who kept Cattle and made Butter, but at preſent there is no ſuch thing to be found amongſt them or any other Nation in theſe Parts; had theſe inclinations in thoſe poor *Savages* met with that encouragement (from the *Engliſh* and other *Europeans* ſettled in *North-Carolina*) which in juſtice, Piety and Virtue (ought to be the practice of every *Chriſtian*) I do not doubt but that they wou'd ſoon be converted, and with joy embrace the *Chriſtian-faith*, and belive us to be a more worthy race of People than themſelves, by our good Actions and Morals. But on the contrary, they have been formerly defrauded of the Lands allotted them, which was the occaſion of a long and vexatious War to the Chriſtians, and it frequeutly happens (at this Day) that the *Europeans* (which I am ſorry I have occaſion to mention) meet thoſe poor *Indians* in the Woods, and not only beat and abuſe them, but commonly rob them of their

their *Furs*, *Deer Skins*, and other commodities which they have acquired with so much pains and fatigue. I have known several complaints to the Governor of such usage during my abode in that Country, which shews the greatest ingratitude in Nature, when we consider how ready these poor Creatures are to serve and oblige us, in what ever assistance we want from them. And that in most of the Colonies already well Peopl'd with *Christians*, it woud be impossible for them to live (for their own Slaves the *Negroes* wou'd destroy them) only for them who upon all occasions are ready to suppress them when they Rebel against their Masters, which they frequently do in *Virginia* and many other parts of *America* belonging to the Crown of *England*.

Their dresses are as different as the Nations to whom they belong, so that it is impossible to recount all the whimsical Figures that they commonly make by their Antick dresses. Besides *Carolina* is a warm Country, and very mild in its *Winters* to what *Mary-Land*, *Pensilvania*, *New-York*, the *Jersies*, or *New-England* are, wherefore our *Indian* Habits differ very much from the dresses that are used by the *Savages* that inhabit those cold Countries; in regard their chiefest cloathing for the *Winter* Season is made of the Furs of *Bevers*, *Raccoons*, and other *Northren Furs*, as the *Monack-Moor*, *Marten*, *Black-Fox*, and many other Beasts that are to be met with to the *Northward*, that we are unacquainted with here.

Their dress in Peace and War are quite different from some Nations before they go to War, the Women comb out their Hair and anoint it with *Bears-grease*, and the *Red Root*, and likewise adorn it with Feathers of various beautiful colours, besides *Copper*, *Iron* Rings, and sometimes *Wampum* or *Peak* in their Ears. Moreover they buy red Colours of the *Indian* Traders, wherewith they

Paint their Faces all over as red as *Vermillion*, and commonly make a circle of Black about one Eye, and another circle of White about the other; whilſt others bedaub their Faces with *Tobacco pipe Clay*, *Lamp-black*, *Black Lead*, and divers other colours, ſuch as *Green*, *Blue*, and the like, theſe they make with ſeveral ſorts of *Herbs*, *Minerals*, and Earths, that they get in different patts of the Country where they Hunt and Travel. When theſe People are thus Painted they make the moſt frightful Figures that can be imitated by Men, and ſeem more like Devils out of Hell than any human Creature upon Earth, the reaſon why they thus Paint themſelves is becauſe they believe it adds to their Courage and ſtrikes a terror in their Enemies.

It is worthy of Obſervation, that whenever you meet them thus diſguis'd or Painted, you may be ſure that they are about ſome miſchief or other, for in all Hoſtilities that have ever been acted againſt the *Chriſtians* at any time in ſeveral of the Plantations of *America*, theſe *Savages* always appear'd in theſe diſguiſes, whereby they might never after be diſcovered or known by the *Chriſtians* that ſhoud happen to ſee them after they had made their eſcape; for it is impoſſible ever to know an *Indian* under theſe Colours, although he had been ever ſo often at your Houſe, and you were moſt intimatly acquainted with him before he put on this diſguiſe.

As for the Women, they ſeldom or never uſe any Paint on their Faces, except *Bear's-Greaſe*, or *Lamp-black*, when they mourn for their dead; neither do they carry their Women along with them into the Field of Battle, or when they intend any Expedition (as they do in many parts of the *Eaſtren* Country) but always leave them at home with the old Men and Children, to provide all manner of Neceſſaries for them. By their different

way

way of Painting, they repreſent moſt of the Actions in Life, ſuch as *War*, *Peace*, *Feaſts*, *Death*, and the like, uſing different Colours or Paintings ſuitable to each occaſion. When they are thus Painted, they go to Battle in the following manner: Each Man takes his Gun, and a ſufficient quantity of Powder and Ball, or if he has not theſe, his Bow (which is about an Ell long) and Arrows, about eighteen Inches, made of ſmall *Canes*, ſome of them are very artificially headed with ſharp *Stones*, *Shells*, *Teeth* of *Fiſh*, or hardned after their manner, the other End being Feathered with two Feathers, and tied with the Guts of ſome Beaſt when green and moiſt; each of them has likewiſe a *Tamahawk* or ſmall *Hatchet*, and *Cutlaſhes*, when they can get them purchaſed by any means from the *Europeans*. They alſo uſe Clubs or long Poles (in the ends whereof they faſten very artificially ſharp *Stones*, or the *Horns* of Beaſts) and wooden Swords, hardened after their manner; ſometimes they have wooden Breaſt-plates for their defence; theſe being all the Weapons that are made uſe of amongſt the civilized, and *Savage Indians* in theſe parts.

The way of waging War is ſo harſh, that one muſt have a Body of Steel to bear the Fatigues they are obliged to undergo. They give but little Quarters, and if they are taken Priſoners, they are never exchanged: When one Nation is engaged in War with another, there is little Valour uſed, though they accompliſh notable Exploits by Craft and Stratagem, for they do not attack each other by open Force, but dividing themſelves into ſmall Parties, twenty five or thirty Men lie in Ambuſh near the Village they deſign to attack, 'till Night, then they ſet upon the Huts that lie diſperſed in the open Country, if they meet with any aged Men they kill them, cut off their Heads, Hands, and Feet, nay, if they have time,

time, cut them all into ſmall pieces, that every one may take along with him a part, as a ſignal of his Bravery: But if the Enemy are alarmed, they are glad to be contented with the Head alone, or perhaps a Lock of the Hair, which they carry home in triumph, as an undoubted ſign of their Bravery. When they intend to do a bold Exploit, they enter a Village at Night, force open a Houſe, kill all they meet with, and then betake themſelves to their Heels, for fear of being purſued by their Enemies. If they engage in the open Field, their chief Deſign is to draw one another into an Ambuſh; but the death of one or two Men commonly decides the Quarrel, that Party which has loſt them, returning immediately.

When they go to War, they carry their *Idol* with them, of whom they tell incredible Stories, and ask Council, as the Antients were wont to do with the *Oracle* of *Apollo*, and then proceed upon their intended Expedition, with their *Kings* or *War Captains*, who march firſt, with a *Club* in one Hand, and a *Bow* in the other, with a Quiver full of *Arrows*, all the reſt follow him towards the Battle, with ſuch Weapons as they can conveniently get, ſinging Songs inſtead of Drums and Trumpets, and whilſt they fight, there is nothing to be heard but Skreeches and Cries amongſt them, and it is accounted a great Battle amongſt them where three or four are killed, or made Captives.

They are a People that never forget Injuries done by their Enemies, and ſeldom ceaſe 'till they have Satisfaction, but before they go upon any Expedition, they often aſſemble in Council together, and there debate the Matter in hand, and take thoſe Reſolutions that they judge moſt adviſable to be done, being a People never over haſty in what they do.

They

They make great Feasts after they have obtained a Victory over their Enemies, for several Days together, where they drink great quantities of *Yaupan Tea*, and whatever Trophies they obtain in Battle, they carefully bring home to their Towns, and place them all together, round which they Dance for several Hours, shewing all the signs of Joy imaginable, their young Men and Wives singing Songs of Praise to their *War Captains* and great Men, for their late Conquest over their Enemies; they likewise make the most antient Women of the Country Dance, holding the Hair of their Enemies in their Hands.

Their manner of War amongst themselves, is either by suddenly surprizing each other, which is most commonly done about the dawning of the Day, Moon-light, or by Ambushes; set Battles being very rare, except it be where there are many Trees, to have a place of Refuge or Defence after every Shot, or the delivery of their Arrows, by leaping behind them, or some other shelter.

When they go to War or their Hunting Matches the Victuals which they generally carry with them is *Bread*, *Indian Corn*, *dried Fruits*, of several sorts, *Honey*, and *Meal* made of *Maiz* parched in the Fire, this they can preserve for a long time without receiving any damage; they likewise carry dried *Fish* upon these occasions, and these are most commonly all the Provisions they take with them.

The Cruelty they use to their Prisoners of War, is scarce to be paralel'd, because they strive to invent the most inhuman and barbarous Butcheries for these miserable Wretches that happen in their power, that is possible for themselves or Devils to invent. These *Savages* esteem Death to be no Punishment, but an advancement to him that is taken out of the World into another; therefore

therefore they inflict on them these cruel Torments, in prolonging Life in that miserable state, as long as they can, and never miss *Sculping* of these Wretches (as they call it) which is to cut off the Skin from the Temples, and take the whole Head of Hair along with it from the Scull, like a Cap; this they hang at their Belts, and carry to their Towns for their Wives and Children to be spectators of. They sometimes take the top of the Scull along with it, all which they preserve and carefully keep by them to shew their Conquest, and Victory over their Enemies. Some of them keep their Enemies Teeth, which are taken in War; whilst others split the *Pitch-Pine* and stick the Prisoners Bodies (whilst alive) full of them, which they set fire to, and burn like so many Toarches: In this manner they make him dance round a great Fire, every one buffeting and deriding him 'till he expires; then every one present strive to get a Bone or some other Relick of this unfortunate Captive. Whatever Weapons they kill or wound their Enemies with, they let the Blood remain on it as a Trophy of their Victory.

It is remarkable, that if any of the young Fellows who have been at at the Wars, and had the fortune to take a Captive, returns the proudest Creature upon Earth, and sets such a Value on himself, that he scarce knows how to contain in his Senses. In all their Wars they never destroy the Women or Children that they make Captives, but carefully preserve them.

The *Iroquois*, or *Sannagers*, and *Charokees*, are the most powerful and warlike *Indeans* that we know of in these Parts, being always at War, and not to be persuaded from that way of living by any Arguments or Persuasions whatsoever. They live near the Mountains, and there has been several Methods used by the *Christians* to persuade

perſwade them to live peaceably with the *Tuskeruros* (who are one of the Civilized Nations, amongſt the *Engliſh* that live near the Sea) notwithſtanding theſe *Indians* very much deſire to make Peace, and woud ſubmit to the former, yet their anſwer is, that they cannot live without War, which they have ever been accuſtomed to, and that if peace be made with them or any other Nation they War withal, they muſt find out ſome others to wage War againſt. But for them to live in peace is to live out of their element, War, Conqueſt, and Murder, being what they always delight in, and value themſelves for. Yet they have not moleſted the *Tuskeruros*, of late Years, and it is ſuppoſed that they are now at War with the *Indians* on the other ſide of the Mountains, and though they may ſeem ſuch a Barbarous People, yet they are very fond of the *Chriſtians*, and uſe them with all manner of civility when they meet them in the Mountains where they conſtantly trade with each other.

When they take a Priſoner, and intend to keep him as a Slave to Work in their Fields, they flea the Skin from the ſetting on of his Toes to the middle of his Foot, cut of one half of his Feet, wraping the Skin over the Wounds and then healing them. By this cruel and Barbarous method the *Indian* captive is hindred from making his eſcape, for he can neither run faſt or go any where but his feet or Stumps are more eaſily traced and diſcovered, yet I have ſeen ſome that made their eſcape from their Enemies though they were diſabled after this manner.

The *Indians* ground their Wars chiefly on Enmity, not on Intereſt, as the *Europeans* generally do, for the loſs of the meaneſt Perſon in the Nation, they will go to War and lay all at Stake, and proſecute their deſign to the utmoſt, till the Nation they were injured by be

wholly deſtroyed, or make them that ſatisfaction which they demand.

They maintain continual Wars one Nation againſt another, which ſometimes hold for Ages, killing and making captive all they can, till they become ſo weak that they are often forced to make peace for want of a ſufficient number of Recruits to ſupply their Wars; ſo that by theſe continual Wars, and the art they have and often practice of Poyſoning one another, which they do with a large white Spongy Root that grows in their freſh Marſhes, many numerous and formidable Nations are dwindled away to a handful of Men in compariſon to what they were ſixty Years ago. and it's ſtrange to imagine how many hundred Miles they come to make War on each other; without any viſible view of Intereſt in Lands, or Riches, which are the chief motives of all *European Princes*, waging War againſt each other.

They are very Politick in waging and carrying on their War, firſt by adviſing with all the antient Men of conduct and reaſon that belong to their Nation; ſuch as ſuperannuated *War Captains*, and thoſe that have been Counſellors amongſt them for many Years, whoſe Advice has ſucceeded well. They have likewiſe their *Field Counſellors*, who are accuſtomed to Ambuſcades and Surprizes, which methods are commonly uſed by them in theſe parts, for you ſhall ſeldom hear of a Field or ſet Battle fought amongſt them.

Yet before they undertake any enterprizes, they meet ſeveral Mornings together in their State-Houſes, where the King repaireth, and is placed on a ſeat which is generally higher than any of his Retinue's, where all of them ſalute him; as ſoon as the Salutation is over, every one ſits down according to their Degrees or Seniority, and if there be any thing to be debated, the King calls his

his Prieſts and the moſt antient Men of his Nation and asks their Advice. Afterwards he commands *Caſſena* to be brought, and when he has drank a Cup full of the Liquor (which holds about a Pint and a half) they all, one after another drink the ſame proportion out of the ſame Cup.

This drink is in ſuch great requeſt amongſt them, that no Man is permitted to taſte thereof in this publick Aſſembly unleſs he has ſignalized himſelf in the Wars againſt his Enemies; Valour being highly eſteemed amongſt them: They drink this Tea very warm, which makes them ſweat plentifully, and has the virtue to take away Hunger and Thirſt for twenty four Hours.

Theſe *Indians* exerciſe their young Men very much in Shooting with their Bows and Arrows, the Strings whereof are made of the Guts of the Stag, or of a Stag's Skin, which they know how to dreſs as well as any People in *Europe*, and with as different ſorts of Colours; there being plenty of ſeveral beautiful Dies in this Country, which they are well acquainted with, they likewiſe take great pleaſure in Hunting and Fiſhing, wherein they are very expert.

I will give you ſome few Inſtances of their Politicks and Expeditions, which are worth mentioning. The firſt was thus, two Nations were at War with each other, and both Parties were in the Woods or Forreſt ranging to ſee what Enemies they coud take or deſtroy. The leſſer Number found they were diſcovered by the greater, and that they cou'd not well get over a River (that lay betwixt them and their Home) without engaging the other party, whoſe Numbers were much ſuperior, they immediately called a Council, which being met, and having weighed and debated their preſent circumſtances, with many arguments for a conſiderable time,

and found their Enemies advantage, and that they could not possibly expect any success in engaging such an unequal Number. They at last concluded on this Stratagem, which in my opinion carried a great deal of policy along with it. It was, that the same Night they should make a great Fire, which they were certain would be discover'd by the adverse party, and there dress up Logs of Wood in their Cloaths, and make them exactly seem like *Indians* that were fast asleep by the Fire-side (which is their way when they are Hunting or otherwise in the Woods) so said they, our Enemies will fire upon these Images, supposing them to be Men, while we lye in Ambuscade, and after their Guns are unloaded we shall deal well enough with them.

This result was immediately put in execution, and the Fire was made by the side of a Vally where they lay perdue, very advantagiously all Night. Thus a little before break of Day they came down to the Fire, and at once fired in upon these Logs in the *Indian* Cloaths and run up to them expecting they had kill'd every Man dead upon the Spot, but they soon found themselves to be mistaken, for then the other *Indians* who had lain all the Night stark-naked, attacked them with their loaded Pieces, which so surpriz'd them, that every Man was taken Prisoner and brought in bound to their Town, some of whom were sold to the *English* for Slaves.

There was another extraordinary Instance of this Nature that happen'd betwixt the *Machapunga Indians* and the *Coranines*, living on the Sand-banks near *Machapunga River*, which carries a great deal of Treachery and Barbarity in it, and is as follows. The *Machapungas* were invited to a feast by the *Coranines* (which two Nations had been a long time at War together, but had lately concluded a Peace) thereupon the *Machapunga Indians* took

took the advantage of coming to the *Coranines* feaſt, and to avoid all ſuſpicion, and that there was a good harmony and underſtanding now amongſt them; the *Machapunga* King who though of a Savage nature, was a great Politician, and very ſtout, order'd all his Men to carry their *Tamahawks* along with them under their *Match-coats*, which they did, and being acquainted when to fall on, by the Word given, they all (upon this deſign) ſet forward for the feaſt, and came to the *Coranine-town*, who made them welcome, and had gotten Victuals, Fruit, and ſuch things as make an *Indian Entertainment*; having provided all things neceſſary to make their new Gueſts welcome, after Dinner towards the Evening (as it is cuſtomary amongſt them) they went to Dancing all-together; when the *Machapunga* King ſaw the beſt opportunity offer, he gave the Word, and immediately his Men pulled out their *Tamahawks*, or *Hatchets* from under their *Match-coats*, killed ſeveral, and took the reſt of them Priſoners, except ſome few that were not at the Feaſt, and about four or five that made their eſcape; ſome of theſe they ſold as Slaves to the *Engliſh*. At the time this was done, theſe *Indians* had nothing but Bows and Arrows, being intire ſtrangers to Guns and their uſes; neither are any of the two former Nations to be met with (at this Day) living near *Mahcapunga River*, which place is well inhabited by *Chriſtians*.

Their Dances are of different Natures, and for every ſort they have a different Song or Tune, which is allotted for each Dance. Upon theſe occaſions they will continue dancing for ſeveral Nights together, with the greateſt briskneſs imaginable, their Wind never failing them: In a *War-Dance* they have *Warlike Songs*, wherein they expreſs with all the paſſion and vehemency imaginable what they intend to do with their Enemies; how they will

will kill, roaſt, ſculp, beat, and make Captives ſuch and ſuch numbers of them, and how many they have deſtroyed already: Whatever Trophies they have gained in War are ſet up for all thoſe preſent to behold, round which they Feaſt and Dance with the greateſt extaſie of Joy that can be expreſt or ſhewn by them.

All the Songs are made new for every Feaſt, neither is one and the ſame Song ſung at two ſeveral Feſtivals; ſome one of the Nation (who hath the beſt gift of expreſſing their Deſigns) is appointed by their King and *War Captains* to make theſe Songs; theſe Perſons or Poets being in great requeſt with the King, and Nation to whom they belong.

Their Peace Dances are generally made at their Feaſts, and are of another Nature; as when ſeveral Towns, and ſometimes different Nations have made Peace with one another, then it ſuits both Nations, and relates how the bad Spirit made them go to War and deſtroy one another, that it ſhall never be ſo again, but that their Sons and Daughters ſhall marry together, and the two Nations love each other, and become as one united People.

They have a third ſort of Feaſt and Dances which are when the Harveſt of *Corn* is ended, and in the *Spring*; the one to return Thanks to the good Spirit for the Fruits of the Earth, the other to beg the ſame Bleſſings for the ſucceeding Year. They plant their *Maze* or *Indian Corn* twice a Year, *viz.* in *March* and *June*, all in the ſame Soil, for as ſoon as one Crop is ripe, which is in three Months, they immediately gather it and plant the ſame Grounds over again. Before the *Europeans* arrived in theſe Parts, they uſed to dig their Grounds with an Inſtrument made of Wood, which was faſhioned like a broad *Matock*, but at preſent they have *Hoes* from the *Chriſtians*,

Christians, and commonly plant two or three Grains together: They never Dung their Land, but set Fire to the Weeds, which makes very good Manure; when the Land is to be planted, the King commands one of the Men to assemble his Subjects every Day to Labour, and when the *Maze* is gathered, it is all carried into a common Store-House, where it is distributed to every one as there is occasion; they seldom sow more than what will serve them for six Months, and that very sparingly; for during the *Winter* they retire into the Woods to hunt, or fish, where they have plenty of various kinds of wild Beasts, Birds and Fishes. To encourage the young Men to labour in planting their *Maze* and *Pulse*, they place a kind of *Idol* in the Field, dressed up exactly like an *Indian*, with a great quantity of *Wampum*, or *Money* that is made of *Conk-Shells*, hanging about his Neck. This Image none of the young Men dare presume to approach, the old ones will not suffer them, but tell them that it is some famous Warrior that died many Ages ago, and now is come among them, to see if they work well, which if they do, he will go to the good Spirit, and speak to him to send them plenty of Corn, and to make them expert Hunters, and mighty Warriors; and many other incredible Stories, with which they amuse their Youth. All this while the King and the old Men sit round the Image, and seemingly pay the most profound Respect and Veneration imaginable to the same. One great help to them in carrying on these Cheats, and inducing their Youth to do what they please is, the uninterrupted Silence which is ever kept and observed amongst them.

At these Feasts, which are set out with all the Magnificence imaginable, or that their Fare will allow of, the Masquerade begins always at Night. There is a Fire commonly made in the middle of the largest House

in

in the Town, which frequently happens to be that of their King or *War Captain*, or a Houſe made for that purpoſe, where two Men are placed on a Mat on the Ground, the one with a *Rattle* made of a *Gourd*, with ſome *Indian Corn* or *Beans* in it; the other with a *Drum* made of an *Earthen Pot*, covered with a dreſſed *Deer Skin*, with one Stick in his Hand to beat thereon; thus they begin the Song appointed for that purpoſe, at the ſame time the one Drums, and the other Rattles; this is all the artificial Muſick of their own making that I ever ſaw amongſt them. To theſe two Inſtruments they ſing, which may be ſuppoſed to make but indifferent *Muſick*, for *Europeans*, and yet the Cadencies and raiſing of their Voices are formed with that equality and exactneſs, that to us it ſeems very ſtrange and admirable how they ſhould continue theſe Songs without once miſſing to agree with each others Note and Tune.

As for their *Dancing*, were there Maſters of that Profeſſion amongſt them, as there are in *Europe*, I am certain they would dearly earn their Money; for theſe People take the moſt Pains that Men are able to endure: I have ſeen thirty dancing together, and every one with the Sweat dropping down, as if Water were powred on their Backs.

They bring up their Youth in many laborious Exercciſes, to make them able to endure Fatigues, and improve their Wind, which is indeed very long and durable, being a hard matter in any Exerciſe to diſpoſſeſs them of it, there being ſeveral Games amongſt them that is won by him that hath the longeſt Breath. In traveling and hunting they are moſt indefatigable, being bred up after that manner from their Youth, to which they have a double inducement, as it carries both Pleaſure and Profit with it. I have known ſome of them very ſtrong, and particularly

particularly remarkable for their running and leaping; The agility of both Men and Women are such, that they will very readily swim over great Rivers, and sometimes carry their Children; they likewise very nimbly climb the highest Trees in the Country.

These People (as I said before) have solemn Feasts upon several occasions, such as for *War*, *Peace*, the Fruits of the Earth, and the like, at these Festivals they have great plenty of Provisions, such as *Venison*, *Birds*, *Fishes*, and several sorts of *Fruits* and *Roots*. Their firing is made of Wood, which they kindle by strenuously rubbing one stick against another (the Sticks being of different kinds) and so roast their flesh Meat on wooden Spits, or Boyl it in Earthen Pots, of their own make, and sometimes broil it on the Embers.

They are for the most part very gentle, loving and faithful, void of Guile or Treachery (except they are highly injured) and live after the manner of the Golden Age, for they only take care how to defend themselves from the Cold in their short *Winters*, and to feed themselves with such Victuals as the Soil produceth. They sometimes have plenty of *Rum* at these Entertainments, which they purchase from the *Europeans*, but the common drink they make use of to quench their thirst is *Water*, and it is to be admired that they never yet found out the method of making *Wines* in these parts, where several sorts of *Grapes* are so plenty, and these People in general being extreamly fond of strong Liquors.

At Night their Revels begin, which is commonly in a House made for that purpose being the largest amongst their dwellings, this House is built in form of a Pyramid wherein are made handsome white Benches artificially of fine *Canes*, joining along the Walls, and the Door or entrance very low. In these *State-Houses* are transacted all

publick and private buſineſs relating to the Affairs of the Government, and the audience of Foreign Ambaſſadors from other *Indian* Kings; likewiſe their conſultations for wageing and making of *War*, Propoſals of Trade with their Neighbouring *Indians* or *Europeans*, who happen to come amongſt them, and there determine what may be moſt convenient for them to act, and what to omit, old Age being always held in as great veneration amongſt them, as any People you ſhall find in any part of the World.

It is to be obſerved, that during their conſultations no manner of interuption is given to the Speaker, who gets up and declares to the Auditors what he thinks moſt adviſable to be done in the Affair then depending; as ſoon as he has finiſh'd what he thinks proper to ſay on that Subject, he ſits down and then the ſecond proceeds after the ſame method, and ſo all the reſt in their turns, and laſtly their King, not one Word to be heard, or even a whiſper during their whole conference but from him that ſtands up. The whole Aſſembly giving a great deal of attention to what each Perſon relates on that head, a profound ſilence and exact decorum being uſed during the Oration.

And it is even remarkable amongſt them in their common Diſcourſe, that they never interupt each other, none offering to open his Mouth till the other has finiſhed what he has to ſay on the Subject. This practice I am perſwaded wou'd be of great uſe and advantage to the *Europeans*, who are ſo ſubject to interrupt each other, before they can utter their intentions, frequently judging from a few Words ſpoken, the whole Cauſe before they have heard the Merits of it.

Theſe People are naturally very ſubtile and ſharp witted, and ready to conceive our meaning by Signs, and to make anſwers to be underſtood again. If they have not

not seen the thing whereof you ask them, they will wink or cover their Eyes with their Hand to intimate thereby that it hath been hid from their sight, and if they understand not those things whereof you enquire, they will stop their Ears, and by many other such like signs, easie to be understood, they are apt to learn any thing of us, and are very willing to teach us the Names of each thing in their Language we demand of them.

All their dwelling Houses are covered with the Barks of Trees, But this *Senate-House* differs very much from them, being artificially Thatch'd with *Sedge* and *Rushes*; at the building whereof every one assists till it is finished. and as soon as it is compleatly finished, the King places some one of his chiefest Men to dwell therein, charging him with a diligent preservation thereof, in like manner as *European* Princes commit the charge and Government of Forts and Castles to some favorite subject they judge worthy of so great Honours and Trust.

They frequently send Ambassadors to each other, who make very odd and strange Figures at their Arrival, having their Faces and Hair painted all over as red as *Vermillion*, a *Fusee* or *Bow* and *Arrows* in their Hands, and a *Cutlash* or *Tamahawk* stuck in their *Girdle*. As soon as they arrive they are brought to the Kings House, from thence are conducted to the *State-House*, where they take the place that is assign'd them, and there treat of those important Affairs with which they are commission'd from their Kings and Nations to whom they belong.

I have frequently made use of the word Civilized *Indians*, and for the better information of my Readers they are those that assisted the *Christians* against the other *Savages* of that Country in the late *War* when the Hon. Colonel *Barnwell* intirely defeated them in *Bath* County, *Anno Dom.* 1712.

But to returne to their Feasts, in these *State-Houses*, the King being come, and seated invites the *Europeans*, if there be any amongst them at that time, who are always placed next the King, with his *War Captains* on each side; being thus seated, there is a circular Fire made of split *Canes* in the middle of the House, which otherwise would be as dark as a Dungeon, and is as hot as a *Dutch Stove*. One Man is constantly employed to supply split *Canes* as the others are consumed. The Guests being all seated on *Benches* or *Mats* on the Ground, they bring in several pieces of *Bears-flesh* and *Venison*, roasted and boiled; *Wild Turkeys* in great plenty, dressed after their manner; various kinds of other Wild Beasts and *Fowl*, *Fish*, and several kinds of Medlies made of *Maiz*, *stewed Peaches*, *dried Peaches*, and variety of other *Fruits*. Every one of the *Indians* bringing something with him, to enlarge their Banquet, according to their Degree and Quality.

When all their Dainties are brought in, the first Entertainment begins with kicking out the *Dogs*, which are like the *Wolves* in these parts; for it is supposed that they are a Species of them, made tame by beating and starving. They are the worst *Dog-masters* in the World, for you shall never see an *Indian Dog* that is fat amongst them; neither do I find that they make any use of them, for they never bring them to their *Hunting-matches*.

They are of a quite contrary Disposition to their *Horses*, to whom they are the best of Masters, for they are continually feeding them with *Maze*, or whatever he will eat, until he is as fat as a *Hog*, yet they never ride or make any manner of use of him, except only to carry a *Deer* home that they have killed near the Plantations; or Firewood for their Houses.

As

As ſoon as the Dogs are diſcharged, the Company are ſummoned by beat of Drum and the Rattle; which two Inſtruments I have already mentioned, and whilſt the one rattled the other in Conſort beat the Drum, others at the ſame time ſung mournful Ditties, the burthen of their Songs being in remembrance of their former greatneſs and numbers of their Nation, the famous Exploits of their renowned Anceſtors, and all Actions of moment that had been performed by their forefathers in former Days.

No ſooner does this kind of Conſort begin to play and ſing, but preſently come in ſome *Indians* finely dreſſed up with *Feathers*, their Faces covered with *Vizards* made of *Gourds*; round their Ancles and Knees are hung Bells of ſeveral ſorts, having wooden Falcions in their Hands, ſuch as our *Gladiators* commonly uſe upon the Stage; in this Dreſs they dance about an Hour or more, ſhewing many ſtrange Geſtures, brandiſhing their Weapons as if they were going to fight each other, ottentimes walking round the Room with ſo much dexterity and nimbleneſs, that you may not hear their Bells make the leaſt noiſe, which is very ſtrange to ſee them perform, turning their Bodies, Arms and Legs, into ſuch ſtrange and frightful Poſtures, that to an *European* they would ſeem like a parcel of *Bedlamites*, void of Senſe or Reaſon; after they have cut two or three high Capers, they immediately leave the Room. As ſoon as they diſappear, come in a parcel of Women and Girles, each taking place according to their degree in Stature, the talleſt leading the Dance, and the leaſt of all placed laſt. They then form themſelves into a Ring, repreſenting the Fire they dance about. Several of them having Bells about their Legs, dreſſed with Flowers and Feathers like the Men, others with ſmall Bells about their Necks, though

though their way of Dancing is nothing but a ſort of ſtamping, which they continue for ſeveral Hours together, till they are all of them in as great a ſweat as if they had been dipped in the River.

During theſe Dances the Spectators do not neglect to fill their Bellies with the Proviſions that are there, more or leſs of them being continually eating: When the Dancing is ended, every Youth that is ſo diſpoſed, takes hold of the Girl he fancies to be his Bedfellow for that Night, few Ceremonies being uſed upon that head amongſt them.

At theſe Feſtivals and publick Aſſemblies they give a traditional Relation of what happened amongſt them for many Years paſt, to their young Men; having no other Method to record what their Anceſtors have done, or known only by Tradition from Father to Son, and their *Hierogliphicks*, being entire Strangers to Letters or Learning.

They have another ſort of Feaſt where their Prieſts or Conjurers pretend to converſe familiarly, and demand divers ſtrange things from Spirits by their Invocations, and the Magical Charms which they make uſe of. This Feaſt they celebrate in the open Fields, where a large Circle is made; all the *Indians* that come to it are variouſly painted and adorned with rich Feathers of divers Colours; they have ſinging and dancing at this as at the others: After they have ſung and danced for a quarter of an Hour, and turned about three times, they run like diſtracted Men into the Woods; then the Women continue the reſt of the Day in Tears, and as melancholy as poſſible, then in a Rage they cut the Arms of the young Girls with ſharp *Shells* of *Fiſhes*, 'till the Blood follows, which they caſt into the Air, with loud Shreeks and Cries.

Thoſe

Thoſe that begin this Feaſt (which is always in the Morning) are their Prieſts or Conjurers, to whom they give great credit and belief, not only becauſe they are very ſubtile and crafty *Magicians*, and find out things loſt, but likewiſe becauſe they heal Diſeaſes by their Charms and Knowledge in Plants. They firſt run to the Woods, from whence they returu in two Days, and then begin to Sing and Dance in the middle of the Circle (which the Women ſweep and make very clean againſt their return) and are very chearful and merry with the old *Indian* Fathers that ſtay'd behind, by reaſon of their natural Indiſpoſitions and feebleneſs: When all theſe Ceremonies are ended, they begin to eat with ſuch greedineſs, that they ſeem rather to devour their Meat than eat it, becauſe they neither eat nor drink during their two Days continuance in the Woods.

At theſe Feaſts moſt of all the Nations that are in Peace with each other meet, though ſeventy or eighty Miles diſtant from each other, where they ſell and buy ſeveral Commodities as we do at our Fairs and Markets.

They are very much given to Gaming at theſe publick Meetings, and often ſtrip one another of all they have in the World; and what's more to be admired is, that they frequently play themſelves away, and remain the Winners Servants 'till their Relations or themſelves pay the Money to redeem them; and it is obſervable, that the Looſer is never dejected or caſt down at his misfortune, but ſeems contented and as chearful as if he he had been the Winner. They never differ at Gaming, neither did I ever ſee a Diſpute about the legality thereof ſo much as ariſe amongſt them.

The chief Game is a kind of *Arithmetick*, which is managed or played with a parcel of ſmall ſplit *Reeds* about the thickneſs of a ſmall *Bent*; theſe are made very nicely, that

that they part and are tractable in their Hands. They are fifty one in Number, and their length about seven Inches; when they play they throw part to their Antagoniſt, the Art in this kind of Game is to diſcover upon ſight how many you have, and what you throw to him that plays with you; ſome are ſo expert in gueſſing the Numbers they gave, and what they have remaining, that they will not miſs once in ten times; they are ſo taken with this particular Game, that ſeveral of them have loſt large *Indian Eſtates*. A good Set of theſe *Reeds* to play with, are generally valued and ſold for a dreſſed *Doe-Skin*.

They have ſeveral other Games and Plays wherewith they frequently divert themſelves, as with the *Kernels* or *Stones* of the Fruit of the *Perſimon* Tree, which are in effect the ſame as our *Dice*, becauſe winning or looſing depend on which ſide appears uppermoſt, and how they happen to fall together.

Their manner of playing *Ball* is after this manner, *viz.* they place a ſquare *Mat* made of *Reeds* or *Bullruſhes* at the top of a Tree eight or nine Fathom from the Ground, and whoever hitteth the *Mat* in playing thereat, winneth the Game.

They have another Game which is managed with a *Battoon*, and very much reſembles our *Trap-Ball*; as the Nations differ ſo do their Games and Paſtimes, having ſeveral peculiar to themſelves which are not practiſed by others; yet theſe I have mentioned are the chief that I have obſerved amongſt them.

They are charitable and kind to each other, eſpecially to thoſe of their own Nation; for if any one of them has ſuffered loſs by Fire or otherwiſe, they order him to make a Feaſt (their Victuals being in common) and to invite them all to it: On the Day appointed they all come,

come, and after every Man's Victuals is dealt to him, one of their Speakers, or grave old Men makes an Harangue, to the Company to this effect, that *That Man's Houſe hath been deſtroyed, together with all his Goods That he and his Family very narrowly eſcaped. That he is every Man's Friend in that Company, and that it is all their Duties to help him, as he would do any of them, had the like Misfortune befallen them.*—— In ſuch like Speeches he accoſts all that are preſent, to a charitable compliance in behalf of the diſtreſſed Perſon. After this Oration is over, every Man according to his Quality and Ability, throws down upon the Ground ſome Preſent, which is commonly *Beads*, *Ronoak*, *Peak*, *Skins*, or *Furs*, which often amounts to treble the loſs he has ſuſtained. The ſame aſſiſtance they give to any Man that wants to build a Cabin or make a Canoe, or any other Convenience that he is not able to perform, and ſtands in need of: For, they ſay, it is every Man's Duty ſo to do, there being ſeveral Works that one Man cannot effect, therefore they muſt give him their help, otherwiſe the Society would ſoon fall, and they ſhould be deprived of thoſe urgent Neceſſaries which Life requires.

Their Charity is no leſs extenſive towards Widows, for it often happens that a Woman is deſtitute of a Husband, either by Wars or otherwiſe, and hath a great many Children to maintain, ſuch a Perſon they always help, and make their young Men Plant, Reap, and do every thing ſhe is not capable of doing herſelf; yet they will not allow any one to be idle (eſpecially in the Harveſt time) but employ themſelves in ſome Work or other. As they are unaquainted with the value of *Gold* or *Silver*, they prefer their *Indian-Money* before it, which is of different Sorts, but all made of *Shells*, that are found on the Coaſt of *Carolina*, and eſpecially the *Conch-ſhells*;

these are very large and hard and difficult to be cut, yet some *European Smiths* have tried to drill these *Shells*, thinking to get an advantage by them, but it proved so hard and tedious in the working, that nothing could be gained thereby, that they have intirely laid it aside for the *Indians* to manage, who never value their Time, so that they can make them according to their Fancy.

They frequently make of these *Shells* several sorts of Figures, in imitation of *Gorges*, *Crosses*, *Stars*, or any other odd kind of Figure that their imagination suggests, these they wear about their Necks and Arms tied with a String; there are some of these *Gorges* that will sell for three or four *Buck Skins* ready dress't, whilst others are only valued and sold for one *Doe Skin*. But the general and currant Species amongst all the *Indians* of *Carolina*, and I believe all over the Continent as far as the Bay of *Mexico*, that which we call *Peak* and *Ronoak*, but *Peak* more especially. This is that which they call *Wampum* at *New York*, and has been made use of as current Coin for many Years amongst the *Europeans* settled in that Province. This is what many Writers call *Proclean* and was formerly made at *New York* in great quantities, and with us in some Measure. Four Cubits of this purchase a dressed *Doe Skin*, and six or seven are the purchases of a dressed *Buck Skin*: An *European* could not afford to make so much of this *Wampum* for five times the Value; for it is made out of a very large Shell of which that Country affords plenty.

This Shell they grind smaller than the small End of a *Tobacco Pipe*, or a large *Wheat Straw*; four or five of these are about an Inch in length, and every one drilled through, polished and made as smooth as Glass, yet they are as strong as *Beads*. A *Cubit* of the *Indian* Measure

ſure contains as much in length as will reach from the the Elbow to the end of the little Finger. They never regard or ſtand to queſtion whether he is a tall or ſhort Man that meaſures it; but if this *Wampum* or *Peak* be of a black or purple Colour, as ſome part of the Shell, then it is twice the Value.

They grind theſe Shells upon Stones and other things, 'till they make them current, but the Drilling is the moſt difficult to the *Europeans*, which the *Indians* do with a Nail ſtuck in a Cane or Reed, but whether they have any Method in ſoftning theſe Shells, is uncertain. They rowl it continually on their Thighs with their right Hand, and hold the bit of Shell with their left; thus by degrees they drill a hole through it, which is a tedious Work, but eſpecially in making their *Ronoak*, four of which will ſcarce make on length of *Wampum*.

The *Indians* in general are a People (as I obſerved) that ſet very little value on their Time, and need never be under any apprehenſion or fear that the *Chriſtians* will take the Trade out of their hands. This is the Money with which you may buy *Skins*, *Furs*, *Slaves*, or any thing they have except their Children, it being their *Mammon* (as our Money is to us) that perſuades and intices them to do any thing. With this they will buy off Murders, or whatever a Man can do that is Ill, and be his Crime of never ſo black a Nature, this Money is ſufficient to purge him of it, and have it buried in Oblivion for ever, ſuch an influence hath this Almighty Gain over them, that the moſt inhuman practices ſhall appear innocent and laudable, and engage them in the moſt ſcandalous and barbarous Actions, without once reflecting or condemning themſelves in the leaſt for it.

Formerly in their hunting Matches they uſed to dreſs themſelves very artfuelly in *Deer Skins*, by which counterfet they would come as near the *Deer* as they pleaſed, by mimicking each Geſture of that Beaſt as they approached, by which means they killed vaſt numbers of them, but ſome of themſelves being ſhot in this diſguiſe, it is now intirely laid aſide and that practice diſallowed of by the expreſs Orders of their Kings.

They have particular Methods by which they can preſerve the Eyes of Beaſts as if they were ſtill living, this they will by no means diſcover to the *Chriſtians*; they have many other curious things that the *Europeans* are deſirous to know and learn from them, but they will by no means diſcover or make known to them, being a People that are ſecret, crafty, and ſubtile in all their Affairs, though of ever ſo ſmall a moment.

Although theſe *Indians*, in reſpect of us, are a poor People, and their want of Skill and Judgment in the Knowledge and uſe of the Sciences, generally eſteem Trifles to things of real value, not having the advantages of improving themſelves as the *Europeans*; yet in their own manner and way of Thinking, they ſeem to be ingenious, and ſhew excellency of Wit, notwithſtanding the many inconveniencies they labour under, and their want of Tools and Inſtruments to aſſiſt them in any of their Undertakings, for I have, during my continuance amongſt them, ſeen many uſeful Inſtruments made for ſeveral uſes, with nothing but an indifferent Knife.

They commonly barbecu or dry their *Veniſon* on Mats or Hurdles in the Sun, firſt ſalting it with their Salt, which is made of the Aſhes of the *Hickery Wood*; this Veniſon ſo cured, they keep and make uſe of in time of ſcarcity, and bad Weather, which they tear to pieces with their Hands and Teeth (for want of Knives) and

then

then put it into a Morter and pound it very fine, adding the Powder of the *Hickery Nuts* or *Wall-nuts* and other ingredients, whereof they make a ſavory Diſh.

Their Kings, as they are moſt abſolute, put to death any of their Subjects that have committed thoſe Crimes that they think worthy of ſo great a Puniſhment; which is ſtrictly obſerved, and put in execution by the War Captains after different and barbarous Methods, according to the King's Will and Pleaſure.

Their Sculping and ſticking them full of Splinters of *Light-wood*, and ſetting theſe Wretches on Fire, their fleaing and cutting their Feet at the Inſtep, I have already made mention of; during which time they never ceaſe feaſting, dancing, ſinging, and playing a thouſand antick Tricks, eſpecially if it be one of their Enemies; at other times they rip open the Bellys of theſe wretches, faſten their Bowels to a Tree, and force them round 'till ſuch time as their Intrails are out, or their Strength is intirely ſpent, that they can ſhew no more Diverſion to the Spectators, who delight in ſuch inhuman Actions: It is incredible to ſee with what Courage and Bravery theſe Wretches behave in the midſt of theſe Tortures and agonies of Death, not once ſeeming to bemoan themſelves, believing and imagining their Enemies will have the ſame Fate when they fall into the Hands of thoſe belonging to their Nation.

There was an *Indian* put to death whilſt I was in the Country by the Kings Order, for cleaving the Scull of one of his own Nation with a *Tamahawk*, of which Wound he inſtantly died. The Offender was immediatly brought forth, and two other *Indians* were ordered to get a couple of Ropes tyed up in the nature of Nooſes, with which they ſtrangled the Offender, one pulling one way and the other the contrary, 'till he was dead; the

neareſt

neareſt Relations of the deceaſed ſtriking him on the Head with great Clubs. Theſe are the moſt common Methods that are yet known amongſt them, by which they torture and put one another to death; but doubtleſs there are many other barbarous Methods that they make uſe of, which as yet we are ſtrangers to.

The King moſt commonly gives orders to put the offender to Death, yet the puniſhment due to the offender is very often left to the neareſt Relation of the deceas'd, who proſecutes him with all the rage and fury imaginable, being both Judge and Executioner till he is fully ſatisfied; yet this revenge is oftentimes bought off with their *wampum*, *Beads*, *Tobacco*, and ſuch like commodities, whereof they are very fond, and are uſeful amongſt them, though the crimes were of the higheſt Nature, Villany, or Barbarity that cou'd be acted by Mankind, yet theſe trifles make a ſufficient attonement for all.

They have a ſtrange cuſtom or Ceremony amongſt them, to call to mind the perſecutions and death of the Kings their Anceſtors ſlain by their Enemies, at certain Seaſons, and particularly when the *Savages* have been at War with any Nation, and return from their Country without bringing home ſome Priſoners of War, or the Heads of their Enemies. The King cauſes as a perpetual remembrance of all his predeceſſors to beat and wound the beſt beloved of all his Children with the ſame Weapons wherewith they had been kill'd in former times, to the end that by renewing the Wound, their Death ſhould be lamented a freſh.

The King and his Nation being aſſembled on theſe Occaſions, a Feaſt is prepared, and the *Indian* who is authoriſed to wound the Kings Son, runs about the Houſe like a diſtracted Perſon crying and making a moſt hidious noiſe all the time with the Weapon in his Hand, wherewith

wherewith he wounds the Kings Son, this he performs three ſeveral times, during which interval he preſents the King with Victuals or *Caſſena*, and it is very ſtrange to ſee the *Indian* that is thus ſtruck never offers to ſtir till he is wounded the third time, after which he falls down backwards ſtreaching out his Arms and Legs as if he had been ready to expire, then the reſt of the Kings Sons and Daughters, together with the Mother and vaſt Numbers of Women and Girls fall at his Feet and Lament and Cry moſt bitterly; during this time the King and his retinue are Feaſting, yet with ſuch profound ſilence for ſome Hours, that not one Word, or even a Whiſper is to be heard amongſt them, after this manner they continue till Night, which ends in Singing, Dancing, and the greateſt joy imaginable.

The *Sapona Indians* live at the Weſt branch of *Cape Fear*, or *Clarendon River*, which is very beautiful, and has good Land about it; it is five or ſix Days Journey over the Mountains to go to the *South-Sea*. Theſe Mountains are very Barren, with abundance of Rocks and Marble, but no Fowl or Water are to be found in theſe Parts. The *Indians* reſiding here are very powerfull, but ſeldom make viſits amongſt us except it be their Traders who bring us *Skins* and *Furs*.

The *Toteras* are neighbouring *Indians* to the *Saponas*, and live *Weſt-ward* in the Mountains; I have been informed by ſome of them that Trade amongſt the *Europeans*, that they have *Bazoar-ſtone*, but I never ſaw any of it whilſt I was in thoſe parts.

The *Keyawees* live likewiſe on a Branch of *Cape Fear* River which lies to the *North-weſt*. The Lands here are very Fertile and in many places abounding with Rocks of ſeveral ſorts of Stones, ſuch as *Lime-ſtone*, *Marble*, and the like.

I have

I have frequently convers'd with their *Doctors*, who are in great requeſt and eſteem amongſt them, they told me of many great cures that they have performed, but woud never diſcover any thing of what they knew, or by what Herbs or plants they perfected them, notwithſtanding I importun'd them and even offered rewards. Theſe *Savages* in general being a very wary People, ſeldom or never revealing any of their ſecrets to the *Europeans*, yet are willing to aſſiſt them in any *Indian* diſorder that ſhould afflict them, as in the biting of *Snakes* or any other misfortune of that Nature wherein they have any Knowledge, but as to *European* Diſorders they are entire Strangers, which moſt commonly prove fatal amongſt them.

The *Indians* in *Carolina* have no Fences to part each others Lots in their *Corn-Fields*, but every Man knows his own proportion, and it ſcarce ever happens that they rob one another of ſo much as an *Ear* of *Corn*; which if any is found to do, he is ſentenced by the Elders to Work and plant for him that was Robb'd, till he is fully recompenc'd for all the damage or loſs he has ſuſtaind in his *Corn-Field*; this is very punctually performed, and the Thief held in diſgrace that ſteals from any of his Friends or the Nation he belongs to.

When theſe *Savages* live near the Waters they frequent the Rivers in *Summer-time* very much where both Men and Women often in a Day go in naked to waſh themſelves, not both Sexes together, yet this is not out of any point of modeſty, that being a virtue or qualification that is very little regarded or make uſe of amongſt theſe People.

Theſe *Indians* generally are the beſt marks Men with *Guns* that are to be met with in moſt parts of the World, and commonly kill what they Shoot at with a ſingle Ball;

Ball; this is principally owing to the ſteadineſs in their Limbs and the ſharp Sight with which they are endued. They take a great deal of pains when they buy a *Gun* firſt, to find out if it has any fault in the Barrel, which they generally take out of the ſtock and cut a Notch in a Tree where they make it ſtreight, if there be occaſion, and after ſhoot ſeveral times at markes, that they may be acquainted with its faults and perfections, this they do before they go to kill *Deer*, or any other kind of Game that is to be met with as they hunt in Woods. It is remarkable in them that they will ſeldom ſtir or go abroad into the Woods to Hunt before the *Sun* is an Hour or two heigh, and hath exhaled moſt part of the Dew from the Earth, then are they indefatigable in walking from Morning till Night in purſuit of their Game. When they are Traveling in the Woods together, they always keep a conſtant Pace, neither will they ſtride over a Tree that lyes croſs a path in their way, but always go round it, which is a quite contrary cuſtom to the *Europeans*, but for what reaſon the *Indians* uſe this Ceremony I never cou'd learn, though I have frequently importuned them on that Head. And what is worthy of Obſervation is, that none of the *Indians* in *North-Carolina* are to be met with Left Handed; whether this be owing to their method of Nurſing, or otherwiſe, I cannot account for. When ever they cut with a Knife, they alway turn the Edge towards themſelves, whereas the *Europeans* cut and Whittle from them.

Before the Arrival of the *Europeans* in theſe parts of *America*, theſe *Savages* not knowing the uſe of *Steel* and *Flints*, they got their fire from Sticks, which by vehement colliſion or rubbing together kindle and take fire. This method they will ſometimes practice even now when it has happen'd through rainy Weather, or ſome

other accident, that they have wet their *Spunk*, or *Touch-wood*, which is a ſort of ſoft Corkey ſubſtance, generally of a *Cinamon* colour, and grows in the *Concave* or hollow part of an *Oak*, *Hickory*, and ſeveral other ſorts of Wood, which they dig out with an *Ax* as they have occaſion. It is in great plenty in *Carolina*, and is always kept by the *Europeans* and *Indians* inſtead of *Touch-wood* and *Tender*, both which it exceeds.

It is very ſurprizing to find ſo many different Languages amongſt them as there are, there being few Nations that underſtand each other. But I believe the principal reaſon of this great difference and confuſion of Languages as are to be met with amongſt them, is owing to theſe People ſeldom or never converſing with any Nation but their own. And I have often obſerved ſeveral of the *Indians* with whom I have been acquainted aud freely converſed with at *Bath* and *Edentown*, that when I chanc'd to meet them in the Woods, they wou'd not ſpeak one Word of *Engliſh* (which they could do tolerably well) but would either anſwer me in their own Language or by ſigns; the reaſon whereof I coud never underſtand, though I made all the ſtrict enquiry I could. Theſe differences in their Languages cauſe Jealonſies and fears amongſt them, which often occaſion Wars, wherein they deſtroy each other; otherwiſe the *Chriſtians* had not in all probability ſettled themſelves ſo eaſily as they have done, had theſe tribes of *Savages* united themſelves into one People, or general intereſt, or were they ſo but every hundred Miles together. In ſhort, they are a ſtrange ſort of People under their preſent Circumſtances, and have ſuch odd and uncouth ways in their management and courſe of living, that it ſeems a miracle to us how they bring about their deſigns as they do, when their ways are commonly quite contraty to ours.

ours. I am perſwaded that were it not for the continual Wars they have amongſt themſelves, they wou'd enjoy the happieſt ſtate in this World of all Mankind, being neither Slaves to Riches or Grandure, which bewitches the greateſt part of the World, and occaſions daily care and trouble in thoſe that are thus in Love with it, which theſe *Savages* are entirely free from.

Drunkeneſs and ſeveral other Vices were intirely unknown to them before the Arrival of the *Chriſtians* amongſt them, and *Swearing*, their Language cannot expreſs, yet thoſe that learn *Engliſh* ſoon learn that faſhionable vice of *Swearing*, and it is generally the firſt thing they can talk, hearing thoſe vile and abominable expreſſions ſo often repeated by the *Europeans*. The many Vices they ſee and hear daily practiſed by the *Chriſtians*, have in a great meaſure perverted theſe miſerable Creatures, that they never deſire to be inſtructed in the light of the *Goſpel*, but rather look upon us as a more unworthy race of People than themſelves; that at this very Day they are no nearer *Chriſtianity* (in all appearance) than they were at the firſt diſcovery made by the *Chriſtians* of this part of the World. Yet it is moſt certain, that they have ſeveral abominable vices amongſt them, which no doubt they might be brought off, if the *Europeans* woud ſhow thoſe good examples of Virtue, Piety, and Morality, which are eſſentially neceſſary for every *Chriſtian* to do and practice. They have likewiſe ſeveral good Qualities amongſt them, and are very Hoſpitable and fond of the *Europeans*, who generally look upon them with all the diſdain immaginable, and very often return ill Offices for their gratitude.

They have a ſtrange and odd Cuſtom amongſt them in making offerings of their firſt Fruits, and likewiſe throwing the firſt Bit or Spoonful of every Mail they

ſit down to, into the Aſhes near the Fire, and all the reaſon they give for ſo doing is, that it is the ſame to them as the pulling of our Hats and talking when we go to Victuals is to us. The *Indians* in *Carolina* call *Rum* and *Phyſick* by the ſame Name, and the reaſon they give is, becauſe *Rum* makes People ſick, as if they had taken any Phyſical or Poyſonous Plant, notwithſtanding they cannot forbear drinking it to exceſs, when they can by any means purchaſe it or any other Spiritous Liquor.

They are a craving People, and if you give them any thing by way of Preſent, they imagine that it obliges you to give them another, and ſo on, until you have given them all you have; ſo inſatiable and unreaſonable are they in their Demands, that they have no bounds to them. If they give any thing as a Preſent, it is with a View to receive twice the Value, for they have no conſideration that you ſhall want or have any occaſion for thoſe things you give them; for their way of Living is ſo contrary to ours, that neither we nor they can fathom one anothers Deſigns or Methods.

They ſet the leaſt value upon Time of any People in the World, for if they are going out to Hunt, Fiſh, or any other indifferent Buſineſs, you may keep them as long as you pleaſe, provided you entertain them in Diſcourſe, and ſeem pleaſed with their Company; yet no People are more expeditious and ſafer Meſſengers than they, when any extraordinary Buſineſs that they are ſent about requires it.

The *Indian Women*'s Work in this Province is generally to dreſs their Victuals for the whole Family, and make *Mats*, *Baskets*, *Girdles* of *Poſſum's Hair*, and ſuch like things, which they commonly ſell to the *Europeans*. The *Mats* they make are of *Ruſhes*, about five Feet broad, and two Fathom long, ſowed double, whereby they become

come very commodious to lay under our Beds, or to sleep upon in the *Summer* Season in the Day, and for our Slaves at Night. There are other *Mats* made of *Flags*, which the *Tuskeruro Indians* make and sell to the Planters. The *Baskets* our neighbouring *Indians* make are all of a very fine sort of *Bullrushes*, and sometimes of *Silk-grass*, which they work with the figures of *Beasts*, *Birds*, *Fishes*, and the like; in these they carry several sorts of *Fruits*, *Flowers*, and many other things of that nature, which they either sell or make Presents of to the *Christians*. The *Savage Indians* who live a great way from the *Christians*, make both their *Baskets* or *Mats* of split *Reeds*, which are exceeding neat and handsome, being made only of the outward shining part of the *Cane*; with these I have seen *Mats*, *Baskets*, and *Dressing Boxes*, very artificially done, they sell these to the Planters when they come down amongst them to dispose of their *Deer-Skins*, *Furs*, and other Commodities.

The *Indians* that live neat the *Christians* frequently Buy or rather Barter *Deer-Skins* and other Commodities for *Rum*, which they carry to the *Indians* that live *Westward* on this and the other side of the Mountains, who never knew what it was 'till within these few Years: This Liquor they carry in *Rundlets* for many hundred Miles, but sometimes they cannot forbear breaking their Cargo in their Journies, and sit down in the Woods and drink it all up; then they begin to Hollow and Shout after such a manner, that the most distracted Persons can scarce be compared to them. When they happen to carry it safe (which they seldom do without drinking some part of it, which they supply by filling up the Vessel with Water) and come amongst the *Indian Towns*; those that buy the *Rum* of them have so many Mouthfulls for a *Deer-Skin*, they never use or have any other kind of Measure

Meaſure at preſent: for this purpoſe the Buyer always makes choiſe of his Man who hath generally the wideſt Mouth, whom he brings with him to the Place where it is to be diſpoſed of, with a Bowl to put it in.

The *Indian Merchant*, or Seller, looks very narrowly to the Man's Mouth that meaſures it, for fear he ſhould ſwallow any down, either through wilfulneſs, or otherwiſe, which if he ſhould happen to do, the *Merchant* or ſome of his Party do not ſcruple immediately to knock the fellow down, exclaiming at the ſame time againſt him for falſe Meaſure, ſo that the Buyer is obliged to get another Mouth Piece to meaſure it by; moſt certain it is, that the *Indians* have not ſuch puny Palates (as many of the *Europeans* have) otherwiſe they would find out ſome decent Method or other to meaſure their Liquor. This way of Trading muſt not only ſeem ſtrange, but very diverting to the *European* Spectators, to ſee ſo much Quarreling and Controverſy, as frequently happens in this new and uncommon way of Dealing or meaſuring *Rum*.

The *Indian* King is the Ruler of the Nation he belongs to, and has others under him to aſſiſt him, as his *War Captains* and *Counſellors*, who are choſen out of the moſt ancient and wiſe Men of his Nation. Theſe he conſults in all general Debates, concerning *War* or *Peace*, *Trade*, *Hunting*, and all the Adventures and Accidents of human Affairs, that appear or come within their Juriſdiction, where all theſe Matters are diſcourſed of and argued *pro* and *con* very deliberately (without making any Parties or Diviſions) with the greateſt Conduct and Prudence immaginable, having nothing more at Heart than what may be intirely for the publick Good and ſafety of their Nation, always valuing that before their own private Intereſt. After every Man has given

his

his Opinion freely as he thinks proper, yet he that has the moſt Voices, or in ſumming up what hath been offered, and is found to be the moſt reaſonable, that they make uſe of without Jars or Wrangling, and put it in execution the firſt Opportunity that offers; theſe being a People that diſcharge their Duty with all the integrity and juſtice immaginable; every town amongſt them has a Ruler or Governor over it, yet the King is abſolute over his whole Nation.

The Succeſſion falls not directly to the King's Son, but to his Sifters, which is a ſure way to prevent Impoſtures in the Succeſſion. They ſometimes poyſon the Heir that they do not approve of, or judge incapable not to govern them. The King himſelf is commonly the chief Perſon concerned in this wicked and abominable Practice. The *Indians* are ſo well acquainted with the Poyſons that this Country produces, that they have been known to poyſon whole Families, and moſt part of the Town; and it is certain, that they can poyſon a running Spring or Fountain of Water, that whoever drinks thereof, will ſoon after infallibly dye. When the Offender is diſcovered, his own Relations urge for his being put to death, whom nothing will appeaſe but the moſt cruel Tortures Imagination can invent, and theſe executed in the moſt publick manner that is poſſible for ſuch a Tragical Scene to be acted, ſo great is their abhorrence of ſuch wicked Practices. All the Nations to whom the Offender belongs, and the other Nations in Peace with them within a hundred Miles or more (if it be poſſible to acquaint them) are ſummoned to come and appear at ſuch a Time and Place, to ſee and rejoyce at the Torments and Death of ſuch a Perſon, who is the common and profeſſed Enemy to all the friendly *Indians* thereabouts, who now lies under the Condemnation of the whole Nation

Nation, and accordingly is to be put to Death at such a time as they prefix.

Upon this Summons or Notice, all that are able appear from all the adjacent parts, with all the Joy imaginable, as if they were going to celebrate some Play or other Diversion for the Entertainment of the whole Company. At this Meeting they generally have a Feast prepared before they begin the Execution of the Criminal, which they perform in the manner following: They bring the Prisoner to the place appointed for his Execution, where he is set down upon the Ground, all the Company get about him, and there is not one sorrowful or dejected Countenance to be seen amongst them: Every thing being thus prepared, the Person appointed to be chief Executioner takes a Knife, and bids the Criminal hold out his Hands, which he does, then another cuts the Skin round the Wrist, which is drawn off like a Glove, and flead off at the Fingers end, break his Joints and Bones with great Clubs, and buffet and torment him, 'till some violent Blow puts an end to his wretched Life: They burn him to Ashes, which they carefuly gather and throw down the Rivers, as unworthy that the Earth should contain them.

As soon as this tragical Scene is over, they begin their Feast, and eat and drink chearfully, repeating all the Actions of the Tormenters, with the Prisoners behaviour during his Tortures; thus they spend the Night in one continued Scene of Mirth and Jollity, in having put to Death the common Enemy of their Nation, and all the others in Friendship with them.

These Accusations are often wrongfully laid against *Indian Heroes*, or a great Man they have a mind to get rid of, that has more Courage and Conduct than his Neighbouring Kings, or *War Captains*; it is then they alledge

alledge the Practice of Poyſoning *Indians* againſt him, and make a rehearſal of every Perſon that died for a Year or two, and give out they were poyſoned by ſuch an *Indian*; this Report being once ſpread abroad, ſtirs up all the Relations of the deceaſed againſt the ſaid Perſon; by ſuch means they take an advantage againſt him, and he is preſently put to death.

They are very reſerved and politick in theſe Affairs, and will attend a long time with a great deal of Patience to bring about their deſigns, theſe People being never impatient or over haſty in executing any of their deſigns of revenge; yet they never forget injuries done by their Enemies, but always take a proper time to accompliſh them, for they will endure a great many Misfortunes, Loſſes, and Diſappointments without ever ſhowing themſelves vexed or uneaſy at them.

If at any time they go by Water, and there happens a Head or contrary Wind, they never fret, or make themſelves uneaſy as the *Europeans* are moſt ſubject to do; and let what troubles or misfortunes ſo ever attend them they never ſeem to relent, but carry it off with as much reſolution as any People upon Earth. Neither are they guilty of that vice ſo common amongſt the *Europeans* of envying each others happineſs, becauſe their ſtation is not equal or above their Neighbours: Of this Sin I never knew an example amongſt them, though they are a People that ſet as great a value upon themſelves as any ſort of Men in the World, upon which account they find ſomething valuable in themſelves above Riches or Grandure.

Thus he that is a good Warriour is the proudeſt creature living, and he that is an expert Hunter is eſteem'd very much by the People and himſelf; yet all theſe are natural virtues or Gifts and not Riches, which are as

often in the poſſeſſion of a Fool as a wiſe Man. Several of them are poſſeſs'd of great Quantities of *Deer*, and *Bever Skins*, *Wampum*, *Amunition*, and many other things which are eſteemed Riches amongſt them, yet ſuch an *Indian* is no more eſteemed or regarded by them than any ordinary Fellow, provided he has no Perſonal Endowments, which are the only Ornaments and Perfections that muſt gain him credit and eſteem amongſt theſe People, for a great dealer amongſt them is no otherwiſe valued or reſpected, than a Man that ſtrains his Wits, and fatigues himſelf to furniſh others with neceſſaries of Life.

There is ſomething ſurprizingly undaunted in their Behaviour when they are taken Captives, and expect to die after the moſt miſerable and tormenting manner that *Savages* can invent againſt ſuch unfortunate Creatures, as happen to be their Priſoners; for at the very approach of Death they are obſerv'd to ſing, and ſhew the greateſt reſolution and bravery of any People in the World; having no dread or fear to die; for they know by inſtinct of Nature, and daily Experience, that all things living are ſubject to Death, wherefore they have that great and noble gift to ſubmit to every thing that happens, with the greateſt reſignation imaginable, and value nothing that attacks them in this Life.

They are never fearful in the Night, neither do the thoughts or dread of Spirits ever give them the leaſt trouble, ſuch as the *Hobgoblins* and *Bug-bears*, the Apprehenſions of which we ſuck in in our Infancy from Nurſes and Servants, who ſugeſt to us, ſtrange and Idle Tales of *Fairies* and *Witches*, which make ſuch impreſſions on us in our tender Years, that at maturity we are moſt commonly afraid of our own Shaddows, and carry *Pigmie-ſouls* in *Giant-bodies* ever after, by which meane

means we are so much depriv'd of reason and unman'd, that we are never afterwards able to be Masters of half the Courage and Bravery nature designed for us, whilst we remain in this World. Several instances whereof are daily to be met with amongst us, which I omit as being Foreign to what we treat of. Not but that the *Indians* have as many lying Stories of *Spirits* and *Conjurers* as any People; but they never tell them with that disadvantage, or after that frightful manner, that the *Europeans* are subject to inform their Children. The old Men amongst them bring themselves into very great esteem by making the others believe their familiarity with *Devils* and *Spirits*, and what great advantage they have thereby, which if it once gain credit amongst them, they are ever afterwards held in the greatest respect and veneration imaginable; and whatever they impose upon these People for the future is received as certain Truths.

Some of them are so very poor, that they have no manner of Cloaths, only a Belt and wad of Moss, to cover their Nakedness; these are such as are lazy, or will not Work or Hunt, and are given to Gaming and Drunkeness; yet these get Victuals as well as the rest, because that is in common amongst them all: If they are caught in Theft amongst themselves, the Offfender is made a Slave until such time as he makes full satisfaction to the Injured Person; but to steal from the *Christians* they reckon no Crime, nor think any harm in so doing; notwithstanding they are seldom guilty of this Vice amongst themselves or the *Christians*.

The *Indians* (as I observ'd before) are indefatigable and expert Travellers in the Woods, and though they have not the use of our *artificial Compass* to guide them, yet they are never at a loss to find their way, and let them be in never so great a Wilderness, they understand

the *North Point* perfectly well, the principle Guide they have to inſtruct them, being altogether Natural, which is a ſhort *Moſs* that grows on ſome Trees exactly on the *North ſide* thereof.

They have likewiſe Names for eight of the thirty two Points, and call the Winds by their ſeveral Names as we do, but indeed more properly; for the *North-Weſt Wind* they call the *cold Wind*, the *North-Eaſt*, the *wet Wind*, the *South*, the *warm Wind*, and ſo agreeably of the reſt, according to what Weather is produced by each of them.

It frequently happens that they have large Rivers or Lakes to paſs over, and if the Weather be ſo foggy, as it ſometimes happens, eſpecially in the *Spring* and fall of the Leaf, that they cannot ſee what Courſe to ſteer, in this caſe, they being on one ſide of the River or Lake, they know what courſe ſuch a Place (which they intend for) bears from them: Their Method in ſuch caſes is this, they get a great many *Sticks* and *Chunks* of Wood in their *Canoe*, and ſet off directly for their intended Port, and as they proceed, they keep throwing over Board a piece of Wood, which directs them; for by ſeeing how the Stick bears from the Sterne of the *Canoe*, they obſerve to keep right aft; this is their *Compaſs*, by which they will go over a Water of ten or twenty Leagues broad.

They know the Head of any River, though five, ſix, or ſeven hundred Miles off, although they were never there before, as is often proved by their appointing to meet on the Head of ſuch or ſuch a River, where perhaps not one of them ever had been, yet they ſhall rendezvous there exactly at the time prefixed. If they meet with any Obſtructions in their Journey, they leave certain Marks in the way, that thoſe who come after them will underſtand how many have paſſed before them, and which

which way they are gone. It is not to be imagined how they will trace and find out each other in these solitary and desolate Woods and Deserts, where there are no Roads to guide, or any humane Creature to tell the way. They are also very expeditious in finding out the *Negroes* that frequently run away from their Masters into the Woods, where they commit many outrages against the *Christians*, as it happened in *Virginia* not long since, where above *three Hundred* joined together, and did a great deal of Mischief in that Province before they were suppressed. The *Indian* Kings are sent for on these Occasions, who soon find our their Haunts, and commonly kill many of them whenever they are sent in pursuit after them, for they never cease pursuing 'till they destroy or hunt them out of the Woods: this they will do in the tenth part of the Time that the *Europeans* could do. These *Negroes* whenever they find the *Indians* in pursuit of them, they return, and chuse rather to submit to the *Christians*, whom they have injured, than fall into the Hands of the others, who have a natural aversion to the *Negroes*, and take Pleasure in putting them to the most exquisite Torments, when ever they find them thus in the Woods, being allowed so to do by the *Christians*.

I saw four and twenty of these *Negroes* hanged in *Virginia*, for conspiring against their Masters, who had taken Sanctuary in the Woods for some time before they were discovered, or hunted out by the *Indians*, who are very serviceable to the *Christians* in those Parts, and many other Provinces in the hands of the *English*.

Another Instance of this Nature happened not many Years ago in this Province; some of our neighbouring *Indians* made their Complaint to the Governor, that two *Indians* from the Mountains came to their Town when they were abroad, and had taken one of their Wives by surprize,

surprize, and carried her away; the Governor desired them immediately to pursue them, and if it were possible to recover the Woman, which two of them accordingly did: In travelling some Days, they brought back the Woman, and the Skins of the Heads of their Enemies; though they had been three Days gone off with the Woman before the others pursued them; how they could discover which way they went, in those Woods and Deserts, is not a little surprizing, and few or none can account for but themselves.

In their War Expeditions they have certain *Hieroglyphicks*, whereby each Party inform the other of the success or losses they have met with; all which is so exactly performed by their *Sylvan* Marks and Characters, that they are never at a loss to understand one another, yet there never were found any Letters among the People in this Province, and I am perswaded that there are neither Letters or Learning to be met with amongst any of the the Natives in all *America*.

It is admirable to see how exactly they will draw Maps of all the Rivers, Towns, Mountains, and Roads, or what you shall enquire of them, which may be drawn by their Directions, and come to a small matter of Latitude, reckoning by the Days Journies. These Maps they will draw in the Ashes of the Fire, and sometimes on a *Mat* or piece of *Bark*.

I have likewise seen a Pen put into one of their Hands, wherewith he has not only drawn the Rivers, Bays, and other parts of this Country, but likewise has imitated the Hand Writing of those in Company very nicely, but whenever they make these Discoveries to us, we must be very much in their Favour, otherwise they will not show you any thing they do or know.

There

There are several sorts of rich Mines in this Country, some of which the *Indians* are well acquainted with, and particularly one, whereof they make *Bullets* for their Guns to shoot *Deer* and other Game: I have seen some of this Oar with them, which is *Lead*, and of the richest sort, but they will not discover to us where they get it, especially if it be near their hunting Quarters; for, they say, it is this *Metal* the *Europeans* so much covet (as they do their *Peak* and *Ronoak*) which if they should discover to the *Christians*, they would settle near them, and so deprive them of the best hunting Matches they have, as they have already done where they are settled or inhabited; so that by that Means they shall be driven out of their Country to some unknown parts to live, hunt, and get their Bread in.

These are the Reasons that they give for not discovering what they know of this Nature. But amongst the *Christians* there have been few or no Enquiries made at present, but what were discovered by Chance; yet I am satisfied that the Mines and Minerals that this Country produces are extraordinary good and valuable, several Pieces whereof are daily to be seen amongst them, who make no other use of it than what I have already mentioned.

The principal Reason of our want of Knowledge in the Mines and Minerals, and many other valuable Secrets in Nature that are produced in this part of the World (as the *Spaniards* are with theirs) is for want of Encouragement amongst us; for I am certain were such an Affair managed and carried on by a Company of Wealthy Members, they would not only find their Account in so advantagious an Undertaking, but likewise be a great Means to enrich the *British* Monarchy. This I testifie from the Knowledge and Discovery of some Mines

Mines that were made known to me during my ſtay in that Country, which I ſhall be ready to diſcover when ever there is juſt Encouragement given. Such a beneficial Undertaking might be carried on very cheap in this Country, where there is not only the benefit of a fine healthful Climate, and all manner of Neceſſaries for Life in great plenty, but likewiſe all other Conveniencies proper for carrying on ſuch an Affair, to be had in it. I coud ſay a great deal more on this Head, having travelled in ſeveral parts of this Province to make the beſt diſcoverys I poſſibly cou'd of the valuable produce of the Country.

As for *Iron-Mine*, it is no where better and in greater plenty, yet there is none of it Manufactured at preſent. I will juſt mention one thing more about the *Mines*, which I had like to have forgot: Not many Years ago an *Indian* came privately to ſome of the Planters in this Province, and told them he wou'd diſcover a *Mine* for ſome ſmall gratuity, but at the ſame time conjured them to Secrecy, for if it were known to his Nation, they woud put him to Death, and likewiſe that he never durſt come amongſt them the Second time for fear of being diſcovered by his Country-men. Things being agreed upon, the *Indian* brings them to the *Mine*, and deſired that they wou'd take particular care to remember and find out the place again, and immediatly left them, and retired into the Woods; with tranſports of Joy they returne home, bringing ſome of the Oar with them, which was a very rich *Copper-Mine*, for I have ſeen both the Oar and ſome of it that was Smelted, but when they had prepared all things neceſſary to dig and ſearch for it, yet they cou'd never find out the place again, or meet with the *Indian* afterwards.

When

When they are disposed to hunt in the Woods, they generally go out in great Numbers together, and several Days Journies from home. They always begin these Hunting matches at the approach of *Winter*, when the Leaves, are fallen from the Trees, and become dry, or when Skins and Furs are best in Season. It is then they burn the Woods, by setting fire to the witner'd Leaves, *Bent*, and *dry Grass*, which they do with matches made of the Black *Moss* that hangs on the Trees, which is sometimes above six Feet long. This *Moss* when dried becomes black (though of an Ash colour before) and will then hold Fire as well as the best Match in *Europe*. In places where this *Moss* is not to be found (as towards the Mountains and Heads of the Rivers) they make Lentels of the Bark of *Cypress*, which serves as well.

Thus they frequently leave their Houses and retire into the Woods for four or five Months together, *viz. November, December, January, February*, and *March*, at which time the Skins are in Season, and set Fire to the Woods for many Miles together to drive out the Deer and other Game into small Necks of Lands, and other places where they fix their Guards, by which means they kill and destroy what they please, especially such as strive to escape the Fire and get through the passes they have made for that purpose.

In these Hunting matches they bring their Wives and Mistresses along with them, where they eat several kinds of Fruits which that Country produces, and live in all the Mirth and Jolity that it is possible for such People to entertain themselves with. It is in these Hunting matches they get their complement of *Deer-Skins, Furs*, and many other commodities to trade with the *Christians*; the *Deer-Skins* being in Season here in *Winter*, which is contrary in *England* and *Ireland*; most of all their

ſmall Game they kill with their Bows and Arrows, ſuch as *Geeſe*, *Turkeys*, *Ducks*, and various kinds of wild Beaſts, as *Raccoons*, *Poſſums*, *Squirrels*, and ſeveral other ſorts of Vermine, judging it not worth throwing Powder and Shot after them.

The wild *Turkeys* being very plenty in *North-Carolina*, eſpecially in the *Oak Lands*, as moſt of it is that lies any diſtance backwards; ſome of theſe they Roaſt or Boyl, others they Barbecue and eat with *Bears-greaſe*, this is accounted amongſt them a good Diſh, and indeed I do not doubt but it is for the *Bears-greaſe* (as I ſaid before) is the ſweeteſt and leaſt offenſive to the Stomach of any Fat of Animals yet known in *America*; and I am very certain, that the *Turkeys* are Fat, and exceeding good eating, if well dreſs'd.

The Men never beat their *Corn* to make *Bread*, that is the Women's Work, and eſpecially the Girls, where you ſhall ſee four of them beating with long *Peſtils* in a narrow wooden *Mortar*, and every one keeping her ſtroke ſo exactly, that it is worthy of admiration, and curious to behold them when they are thus at Work; for theſe *Indians* have no manner of *Mills*, or any other way to make their *Meal* but with *Mortars*.

Their *Cookery* continues from Morning till Night, dreſſing their *Veniſon* after different Methods, according to each one's Fancy, this being the Women's buſineſs: The Hunting makes them Hungry, and they are a People that eat very often, and frequently get up at Midnight, and other unſeaſonable Hours to eat and ſatisfie their craving Appetites, notwithſtanding you ſhall never ſee any of them Corpulent or Fat.

They plant ſeveral ſorts of *Pulſe*, part of which they eat green in the *Summer*, keeping ſufficient quantities for their *Winter* Proviſion; this they carry with them to

eat

eat in their Hunting Matches. The ſmall *Red Peaſe* are very common with them, and ſeveral other ſorts, which they boyle with their Meat, or with *Pigeon's* or *Bear's* Fat; this Food makes them break Wind backwards, which the Men frequently do, ſeem well pleaſed, and laugh heartily, being accounted no Ill Manners amongſt them; but the Women are ſeldom known to be guilty of that indecent Cuſtom.

At their ſetting out either for War or Peace, or upon any other extraordinary Expedition, there are ſeveral Formalities amongſt them, and they whoſe Buſineſs it is to attend their hunting Camp, are generally thoſe that are not good or expert Hunters, therefore are employed to carry Burthens, to get Bark for their Cabins, and all other ſervile Work, likewiſe to go too and fro to their Towns, and bring News to the old People (whom they leave behind) of their Succeſs and Welfare.

The Women are likewiſe obliged to carry their Loads of Grain and other Proviſions with them to theſe randezvous, and provide Firewood to dreſs Victuals; for a good Hunter or Warrior, in theſe Expeditions is employed in no other Buſineſs than the Affairs of Game or Battle. The great quantities of Fruit that they dry in the *Summer* over Fires and Hurdles, and in the Sun, are at theſe times brought into the Field; as are alſo the *Cakes* and *Quiddonies* of *Peaches*; with this Fruit and the *Bill-berries* dried, they ſtew and make fruit Bread and Cakes, and have variety of other ſorts of Fruits preſerved, which are brought out upon theſe occaſions.

In ſome parts of this Province, eſpecially near the Mountains, and amongſt the *Indians* in thoſe Places, they have ſeveral hundred Gallons of *Pigeon's Oil* or Fat, which they preſerve for their *Winter* Stores, uſing it with their *Pulſe*, *Roots*, and *Bread*, as we do *Butter*:

These Fowl are so plenty, that Millions of them are seen in Flocks in a Day, they sometimes break large Boughs of the *Pine*, and other Trees whereon they perch or roost at Night, making the Ground as white as *Snow* with their Dung, and destroying every Herb or small Plant where it falls, being in some Places above half a Foot deep. The *Indians* take a Light of *Pitch-Pine* in one Hand, a long Pole in the other, and go into the Woods at Night where they are, and kill thousands of them by knocking them off the Trees; this is always done in the *Winter*, at which time they appear in Flocks.

Thus they remain in these hunting Camps all the *Winter*, and part of the *Spring*, 'till such time as the Season approaches for planting their *Maze*, *Pulse*, and other Fruits. In these Quarters at spare Hours, they make *Baskets* and *Mats* to lie upon, and those that are not extraordinary Hunters, make Bowls, Dishes and Spoons, of *Gum-Wood* and *Tulip-Tree*. Others where they find a Vein of *White Clay* fit for their Purpose, make *Tobacco Pipes*, and several other things, which are often transported and bartered with other *Indians* that have plenty of *Deer Skins*, or such Commodities as they have occasion for. They buy with these Manufactures, their Raw Skins with the Hair on, which our Neighbouring *Indians* bring to their Towns, and in the *Summer* make their Slaves and bad Hunters dress them; the *Winter* Sun being not strong enough to dry them; those that are dried in their Cabins are black with the *Light-wood* Smoak, which they commonly burn.

Their way of dressing their Skins is by soaking them in Water; they get the Hair off with an Instrument made of the Bone of a *Deer's Foot* (some use a sort of *Iron Drawing Knife*, which they purchase from the *Europeans*) after the Hair is take off, they dissolve *Deer's Brains*

Brains (which they have made into Cakes and baked in the Embers) in a Bowl of Water, where they ſoak and rub the Skins 'till they have ſucked up all the Water, then they dry them gently, and keep continually working them with an *Oyſter-ſhell*, or ſome ſuch thing to ſcrape withal 'till they are dry, by which means they become ſoft and pliable. The Skins dreſſed after this manner, will not endure Wet, but become hard; they therefore Cure them in the Smoak, or Tan them with the Bark of Trees: When they have not the Brains to dreſs their Skins, they uſe the young *Indian Corn* beaten to *Pulp*, which hath the ſame Effect as the former, for they are never at a loſs for one or the other to Cure them, but whether they have any other Method is unknown to the *Chriſtians*, which I am apt to believe they have; for I have ſeen abundance of them dreſt, which would endure the Water, and were as pliable as any in *Europe*, and would waſh as well.

They are not only good and expert Hunters of the Wild Beaſts and Game of the Foreſt, but likewiſe very dextrous in taking the Fiſh in the Rivers and Waters near which they inhabit, and are acquainted with. Thus they that live a great way up the Rivers practice ſtriking *Sturgeon*, *Rock-fiſh* or *Baſs*, and ſeveral other ſorts of fiſh with lights, that come up the Rivers and Creeks to Spawn.

They have *Fiſh-gigs* that are made of the Reeds or *Hollow Canes*, theſe they cut and make very ſharp, with two Beards, and taper at the Point like a *Harpoon*; being thus provided, they either wade into the Water, or go into their *Canoes*, and paddle about the Edges of the Rivers or Creeks, ſtriking all the Fiſh they meet with in the depth of five or ſix Feet Water, or as far as they can ſee them; this they commonly do in dark calm Nights

Nights, and whilſt one attends with a Light made of the *Pitch-pine*, the other with his *Fiſh-gig* ſtrikes and kills the Fiſh: It is diverting to ſee them fiſh after this manner, which they ſometimes do in the Day; how dexterous they are in ſtriking, is admirable, and the great quantities they kill by this Method.

They likewiſe kill vaſt quantities of *Sturgeon*, which they take in Snares as we do *Pike* and *Trout* in *Europe*. The *Herrings* in *March* and *April* run a great way up the Rivers and freſh Streams to Spawn, where they make large Wears with Hedges of long *Poles* or *Hollow Canes*, that hinder their paſſage only in the middle, where an artificial pond is made to take them in, ſo that they cannot return. Theſe Wears are common all over the Rivers, and freſh Water Streams in theſe parts, where they take vaſt quantities of *Herrings*, *Trouts*, *Pikes*, and ſeveral other ſorts of Fiſh that are plentifully to be met with in them.

The taking of Craw Fiſh is likewiſe very pleaſant and diverting, for when they are diſpoſed to get theſe Shell Fiſh, they take a piece of *Veniſon* and halſt *Barbcue* or *Roaſt* it, then they cut it into thin Slices, which they ſtick through with Reeds about ſix Inches diſtance betwixt each piece, the Reeds are made ſharp at one end, and they ſtrike a great many of them down in the Bottom of the Water (thus baited) in ſmall running Brooks where the Craw fiſh conſtantly frequent. Thus they ſit by and attend thoſe baited Sticks, every now and then taking them up to ſee how many are at the Bait, where they generally find abundance, ſo take them off and put them in Baskets provided for that purpoſe, and then ſtick down the Reeds again, by this method in a little time they will catch ſeveral Buſhels full, which are as good as any in *Europe*.

Theſe

Thoſe that live or frequent near the Salt Water take abundance of Fiſh of ſeveral ſorts, ſome of them are very large, which to preſerve, they firſt Barbecue, then pull them to pieces, and dry them in the Sun, and keep them for their Neceſſities; as for *Scate*, *Oyſters*, *Cockles*, and ſeveral other ſorts of Shell-fiſh, they open and dry upon Hurdles, keeping a conſtant Fire under them; theſe Hurdles are made of *Reeds* or *Hollow Canes*, in ſhape of a Gridiron. Thus they dry ſeveral Buſhels of them, and keep for their Proviſion in time of ſcarcety.

At the time when they are on the Salts and Sea Coaſts, they have another ſort of Fiſhery for little *Shell-fiſh*, called in *England*, *Blackmoor's Teeth*; theſe they catch by tying bits of *Oyſters* to a long String, and lay it in ſuch places as they know theſe Fiſhes haunt; they get hold of the *Oyſters* and ſuck them in, that they pull them up by the Strings in great Quantities; they carry theſe a great way into the Main Land to trade with the remote *Indians*, where they are of great value, but never near the Sea, being common, and therefore not much eſteemed by them that live near the Salts.

It is an eſtabliſhed Cuſtom amongſt all the Natives in theſe Parts, that the young Hunters never eat of that *Buck*, *Bear*, *Fiſh*, or any other ſort of Game which happens to be the firſt they kill, becauſe they believe if they ſhould eat thereof, they never would be afterwards fortunate in Hunting. The like fooliſh Cuſtom they hold when they make a Wear to take Fiſh in, if a Woman with Child eat of the firſt Diſh caught therein, they ſay that Wear will never take much Fiſh in it afterwards.

The *Tobacco* is in ſuch great Eſteem amongſt ſome Nations of the *Indians*, that they think their Gods are delighted therewith, whereupon they make Fires and caſt ſome

ſome of the Powder thereof into it for a Sacrifice, and being in a Storm upon the Waters, to pacifie the *Bad Spirit*, they caſt ſome up into the Air and the Water; likewiſe a Wear to take Fiſh, being newly made, they caſt ſome thereon, and into the Air, as alſo for an eſcape from Danger. All this is performed with ſtrange Ceremonies and Geſtures, one while Stamping, Leaping, Dancing, clapping of Hands, and uttering of ſtrange Words.

As for killing of *Snakes*, moſt *Indians* avoid it, and if they even lye in their way, they will not moleſt them, but paſs by on the other ſide, becauſe their Opinion is, that if they ſhould kill them, the *Serpent's* kindred would deſtroy ſome of their Brethren, Friends, or Relations, in return. They have a thouſand of theſe fooliſh Ceremonies and Cuſtoms amongſt them, which they ſtedfaſtly believe, and are ſtrict obſervers of, but are too tedious to mention, and would be of little or no advantage to the Readers.

There are ſome few of them that uſe the *Jewiſh* Cuſtom of *Circumciſion*, though this kind of Practice is but ſeldom uſed amongſt them; I never knew but two Families in all the Nations of *Indians* I have converſed with, that were ſo; the Reaſon whereof I could never learn, notwithſtanding I was very intimate with them, and have often urged them to give me an account on that Head, but could get no manner of Anſwer, which with them is as much as to ſay, *I will not tell you.* They have many other ſtrange Cuſtoms amongſt them, that they will render no Reaſon for, or give any Account of to the *Europeans*.

The *Savages* in theſe parts are never known to be guilty of that abominable Sin called SODOMY, as many in the *Philippian Iſlands* are ſaid to be. Mr. *Candiſh* in his Travels

Travels reporteth, 'That the *Savages* in *Capul*, an Island near *Manila* in the *West Indies*, have a very ſtrange Cuſtom amongſt them, which is this; every Man and Male Child hath a Nail of Tin thruſt through the Head of his Private Member, being ſplit and rivited at the lower End, this is done whilſt they are young, and the place groweth up again without any great pain to the Child, this Nail they can take out and in as there is occaſion,' And the ſame Author, as a Confirmation of the Truth hereof, ſays, 'We ourſelves have taken one of theſe Nails out of the Private Member of a King's Son, who was ten Years old.' This Cuſtom he likewiſe ſays, was granted at the Requeſt of the Women in that Country, who finding their Men to be given to SODOMY, deſired ſome Remedy againſt that Miſchief, and obtained this of the Magiſtrates.

They are very great *Conjurers*, of whom there are ſeveral ſtrange Stories related who perform their *Exorciſm*, after the following Manner. The *Sorcerer* apparells himſelf in a clean dreſs'd *Deer Skin*; they make a large Fire in the middle of the Plantation, the *Indians* all ſitting round it; the *Conjurer* is blindfolded very ſecure, and ſurrounds the Fire three times; leaving the Company at the Fire, he went ſome diſtance into the Woods, where he ſtayed a ſhort time, at his Return he ſurrounded the Fire as before, and leaving them [illegible] time, he went into the Woods, where he remained about half an Hour, he performed this *Exorciſm* the third time, after this he made a very ſtrange and frightful Howling, which being finiſhed, an *Indian* immediately caught hold of him, and led him to the Fire; by this time he was ſo feeble and weak that he could not ſtand alone, being all over in a Sweat, and as wet as if he had fallen into the River, after ſome little time he recovers his

Strength, and gives them an Account of what they demand.

It is reported by ſeveral Planters in thoſe parts, that they raiſe great Storms of Wind, and that there are many frightful Apparitions that appear above the Fires during the time of their *Conjuration*, that large Swarms of very ſtrange and uncommon ſorts of *Flies* have been ſeen to hover over the Fire for ſome time and then to fall into it, where they were all viſibly conſum'd, and likewiſe the Appearance of ſeveral frightful ſorts of Birds, and laſtly a ſtrong ſmell of *Brimſtone*, whilſt they are performing theſe Charms.

I ſhall mention ſome of their practices, and ſo leave them to the Judgment of every Reader; theſe *Conjurers* are the *Prieſts* and *Doctors* of every Nation amongſt the *Indians*, to whom the common People give great Credit and Reſpect, becauſe they believe them to be great *Magicians*, that they frequently converſe with the *good* and *bad Spirit*. They likewiſe make the Orations at every Feaſt or publick Meeting.

Theſe *Conjurers* likewiſe ſerve them inſtead of *Phyſitians* and *Surgeons*, who conſtantly attend the ſick, and always carry about them a bag full of Herbs to cure their diſorders, theſe make Harangues about the deceas'd, let his Death be occaſioned after ever ſo different a manner, for if it ſhou'd be occaſion'd by Sickneſs, then he tells the People that it is the *bad Spirit* that occaſion'd his Death. But if it ſhoud happen that an *Indian* comes to an untimely Death by any accident, then the *Doctor* makes an Oration ſuitable to the Occaſion.

For it happen'd not many Years ago, that an *Indian* was kill'd by *Lightning*, and before the Interment, according to their Cuſtom, every one had ſome hot Victuals or *Taupan-Tea* given him, which he did with what he pleaſ-

ed,

ed. Then the *Doctor* began to talk, and told the People what *Lightning* was, that it kill'd every thing upon the Earth, that the very Fiſhes did not eſcape, for it often reach'd the *Whales*, *Porpoiſes*, and other Fiſhes, and deſtroyed them; that every thing ſtrove to ſhun it, except the *Mice*, who he ſaid were the buſieſt in eating their *Corn* in the *Fields* when it *Lightned* and *Thunderd* the moſt. He likewiſe added, that no Wood or Tree cou'd withſtand it, except the *Black-Gum*, and that it wou'd run round that Tree a great many times to enter therein, but cou'd not effect it. Now you muſt underſtand that ſort of *Gum* will not ſplit or rive; therefore I ſuppoſe the Story might ariſe from thence. Laſtly he began to tell ridiculous abſurd lyes about *Lightning*, that cou'd be invented; as that an *Indian* of their Nation had once got *Lightning* in the likeneſs of a *Partrige*, that no other *Lightning* cou'd hurt him whilſt he had that about him, that after he had kept it for ſeveral Years it got away from him, and that then he became as liable to be ſtruck with *Lightning* as any other Man; thus they amuſe the People with a Thouſand ſuch like ridiculous ſtories, which they receive for the moſt infallible Truths.

They likewiſe deliver the hearers ſeveral traditional ſtories of great Battles that were fought by their Anceſtors, of ſtrange Beaſts and Birds that were to be met with many Years ago, and that a great *Rattle Snake* that lived in a *Creek* in *North-Carolina* kill'd abundance of *Indians*, but at laſt a *Bald Eagle* kill'd it, and they were rid of a *Serpent* that us'd to devour whole *Canoes* full of *Indians* at a time. So that you may ſee how eaſie theſe Wretches are to be impos'd upon by theſe old *Cunting Knaves*, who I am perſwaded underſtand a little better than to give credit to any ſuch Fooleries.

I will in the next place give some account of their *Physick* and *Surgery*. These *Doctors* or *Conjurors* are those (as I said before) that visit and attend the sick, who use many charms of *Witchcraft*, and to gain a greater esteem and credit amongst these People, they tell them that all their Distempers are the effects of the *bad* or *evil Spirit*, who has struck them with this or that malady. Therefore none of these *Doctors* undertake any distemper, but that he first comes to an *Exorcism* to effect the Cure, and acquaints the sick parties Friends or Relations, that he must converse with the *good Spirit*, to know whether the Patient will recover or not; if so, then he will drive out the *bad Spirit*, and then the sick Person will recover and become well.

When an *Indian* is sick, if they think there is much danger of Life, and that he is a great Man, or hath good Friends, their method or behaviour in curing is as follows. The *Doctor* is immediately sent for, and as soon as he comes into their *Cabin*, the sick Person is placed on a *Mat* or *Skin* stark naked, lying on his Back all uncover'd, except some small trifle that covers their nakedness when ripe, otherwise in Children, or young People there is nothing about them. In this manner the *Patient* lies when the *Conjurer* or *Doctor* appears, and generally the King of that Nation comes to attend him with a Rattle made of a *Gourd* with Pease or *Indian-Corn* in it, which the King delivers into the *Doctors* Hands, whilst another brings a Bowl of Water and sets it down.

Things being thus prepared, the *Doctor* then begins and utters some few Words softly; afterwards he smells to the Patients *Navel*, and sometimes Scarifies him a little with a *Flint*, or an Instrument made of *Rattle-Snake's Teeth* for that purpose, then he Sucks the part, and gets out a Mouthful of *Blood* and *Serum*, but *Serum*, chiefly, which

which he ſpits into the Bowl of Water, by which means he pretends to Suck out what occaſions the Diſtemper.

Then he begins to mutter and talk apace; and at laſt to cut Capers and clap his Hands on his Britch and ſides till he is all over in a Sweat, which to an *European* woud not only ſeem a very odd and ſtrange Sight, but likewiſe that he was running Mad, every now and then Sucking the *Patient*, till ſuch time as he gets great quantities of Blood and ill colour'd Matter, out of the *Belly*, *Armes*, *Breaſt*, *Forehead*, *Temples*, *Neck*, and moſt other parts of the Body, ſtill continuing his Grimaces and Antick Poſtures, which to *Europeans* woud ſeem more like the Actions of Men in *Bedlam* than *Doctors* attending the Sick.

At laſt you will ſee the *Doctor* all over in a Sweat, and ſo feeble, that he is ſcarce able to ſtand or utter one Word, having quite ſpent himſelf, then he will ceaſe for a while to recruit his Spirits, and begin again, 'till he comes to the ſame pitch of raving and ſeeming Madneſs as before; during all this time and theſe performances of the *Doctor*, the ſick Perſon never ſo much as moves, although doubtleſs the Scarifying and Sucking muſt be a great puniſhment to him.

But they are the moſt patient under the Misfortunes of Life, of any People I ever ſaw in all my Travels: Laſtly, the *Doctor* makes an end, and tells the Patient's Friends whether the ſick Perſon will Live or Dye, and then ſome one that waits at this Ceremony takes the Blood away (which remains in a Lump in the middle of the Water) and immediatly Buries it very ſecretly in the Ground, the Place being unknown to any but he that inters it.

Theſe

These People are great Inchanters, and use many Charms of *Witchcraft*, for when they are troubled with the Headach, they tye a great Stone with a String to a Stick or Pole, and with certain Prayers, or bewitching expressions, they lift up the Stone from the Ground to the top of the Pole, which sometimes with all a Man's strength they cannot stir from the place; and at other times they lift as easy as a Feather; by this *Spell* and certain Ceremonious Words, they expect to have immediate ease and help for the Patient. I am throughly satisfied that these *Conjurors* are very great Impostures, yet I have seldom or never known their Judgment fail in regard of the Patients living or dying, though I have seen them give their opinion after this manner several times: Some affirm that there is a smell of *Brimstone* in the *Cabins* whilst they are thus *Conjuring*, which I cannot contradict, nor will I take upon me to argue how it came there, but shall proceed to another relation of one of their *Indian Kings* being sick, and the method us'd by the *Doctor* for the recovery of his health, which is something like the former *viz.*

One of their Kings being sick, the *Doctor* was immediately sent for, and as soon as he arriv'd, he orderd a Bowl of Water to be brought him and placed before the King, on whom he sprinkled some part out of his Mouth, then he took a string of *Ronoak* about too Feet long (which is like a string of small Beads) this he held at one end between his Fingers, and the other touched the Kings Stomach; he began to mutter many expressions or Words, and to use many grimaces for sometime, at length the string of Beads that hung thus perpendicular, turn'd up as an *Eel* woud do, and without any motion of his Hand came all up in a Lump under his Hand, and remain'd so for a considerable time, he never closing his

his Hand all the while; at laſt they returned to their former ſhape and length; at which the *European* Spectators were much ſurprized, ſome of them confidently affirmed, that they heard ſomething anſwer him whilſt he muttered ſome Words, though there was nothing to be ſeen. The *Doctor* told the Company that the King would recover, and that his Diſorder would remove into his Leg, that it would be much inflam'd and ſwell'd, which happened exactly as he foretold.

They alſo conjure for ſtollen Goods, though Robbery and Theft are not common Vices amongſt them, yet they are ſometimes guilty of theſe Crimes; and ſteal *Ronoak* and *Deer Skins* from each other; when they cannot diſcover the Thief, they immediately ſend for the *Conjurer* to find him out, and as ſoon as he appears, he begins after the following manner. Firſt he orders three Fires to be made after a triangular Form, which is accordingly done; he is then hoodwinked very ſecurly with a *Deer Skin*, doubled two or three times, over his Face; when this is done, he is placed in the center of the three Fires: after he has made ſome Motions (as always theſe *Conjurers* do) he went directly out of one of the three gaps of the Fire, as directly as if he could ſee, muttering to himſelf, having a Stick in his Hand, with which, after ſome time, he gives two ſtrokes very hard upon the Ground, and made thereon a kind of a Croſs, after which he told them the Name of the Perſon that had ſtolen the Goods, and ſaid he would have a Mark like a Croſs on his Back, which proved accordingly, for when he was taken and ſearch'd, there appeared two great Wheals on his Back one croſs the other.

There are ſeveral other Stories of this Nature, which the moſt ſubſtantial and credible Planters in theſe parts affirm for Truth, and that they have been Eye-witneſſes

to

to. They also report that they have seen one of these *Conjurers* take a *Hollow Cane* about two Feet long, in his Mouth, and stand by a Creek side, where he called with the Reed two or three times, at last opened his Arms, and flew over a Creek about a quarter of a Mile broad, as if he had been running upon *Terra Firma* I shall urge no Man's belief in this, having never seen it done by any of them, and only give it as reported above; but some of the former I have been a Witness to, therefore dare boldly assert as Fact.

As to their *Religion*, it is impossible to give any true Description of it, for as they can neither read nor write, whatever they have of this kind is founded meerly upon Tradition. There are a great many Customs, or rather Absurdities amongst them, which they keep as the most profound Secret; that they never will acquaint any of the *Christians* with the Knowledge thereof, notwithstanding the many Methods used, such as making them Drunk, the promise of Rewards, *&c.* but to no purpose, for so subtile and cunning are they, that it is next to an impossibility to make them discover it, or to fathom out their secret Designs, whether they do this because they are sensible of their own Weakness in practising them, or any other Motive they may have to induce them so to do, is known to none but themselves, let other Writers pretend what they will to give a true Notion of their Worship; you shall see them amongst their *Idols* and dead Kings in their *Quiogoson* or *Charnel House*, where the Bones of the deceased are laid (a Custom like this we read of practised by the *Indians* in the Kingdom of *Pegu* in the *East Indies*) into which place the King, with the *Conjurers* and some few old Men are admitted to go, but as for the young Men, and the chiefest Number of the *Indians*, they are kept as ignorant of what the Elders

are

are as any *European*, let him be in ever ſo great Eſteem and Friendſhip with the King or great Men; he is not admitted to enter the Houſe at thoſe times, or to have Knowledge of their Secrets or what they are doing.

They are generally very ignorant of the firſt Creation of Man, or from whence they came, for ſome ſay they are deſcended from an old Man who came thither in a Boat, which they call a *Canoe*; but whether this was before or after the Flood, they can give little or no ſatisfactory Account. Others (with whom I have frequently converſed on that Head) believe that they are made out of the fine white Mould or Earth, and that the *Blacks* or *Negroes* are formed out of the black Dirt and ſwampy Earth; this was all that I could ever learn from them on that ſubject. They all believe that the World is round, and that there are two Spirits, the one Good and the other Bad. The Good one they reckon to be the Author and Maker of all Things, and ſay that it is he that gives them the firſt Fruits of the Earth, and teaches them to Hunt, Fiſh, and be wiſe enough to overcome the Beaſts of the Wilderneſs, and all other Creatures, that they may be aſſiſtant unto Man. To which they add, that the *Quera*, or *Good Spirit* has been very kind to the *Europeans*, in teaching them how to make *Guns* and *Amunition*, beſides a great many other Neceſſaries that are helpful to Man, all which they ſay will be delivered to them when the Good Spirit ſhall think fit: They alſo believe the Good Spirit does not puniſh any one in this World or that to come, but that he delights in doing good to Mankind, in giving them plenty of the Fruits of the Earth, inſtructing them to make many uſeful Things, and all the Advantages and Pleaſures they enjoy. But as for the Bad Spirit (who lives ſeperate from the Good one) they ſay it is he that torments

them with Sickneſs, Diſappointments, Loſſes, Hunger, Cold, Travel, and all other Misfortunes that are incident to human Life, whom they worſhip to appeaſe his Wrath. As to what concerns their Treatment in the other World, I ſhall treat of it hereafter, when I come to make mention of their Notions concerning *Heaven* and *Hell*.

Though the *Indians* are very reſolute, and die with a great deal of Courage and Bravery, in the Hands of their Enemies; yet I have known them tremble, and be in the greateſt fear and agony imaginable, when they had ſentence of Death pronounced againſt them by the *Engliſh*, for Capital Crimes, whereof they have been ſometimes guilty. Whether this Fear was owing to their not being put to death by their common Enemies, or being delivered up to the *Engliſh* by their own Nation, I cannot determine. I am certain they meet with more Favour from the *Chriſtians*, than they do amongſt themſelves, who only hang them on Trees for their Offences. Theſe *Savages* ſometimes ſhew the greateſt Reluctance and Concern imaginable to deliver up theſe Offenders to the *Europeans*, eſpecially if he was a great Warrior or Hunter amongſt them; yet for their own ſafety they will comply, and put the Offender into their Hands, to be dealt with according to their Laws.

Theſe Kings have been known to make offers to the *Chriſtians* by way of Exchange for an Innocent Perſon to die in the room of the Guilty: ſo fond are they to preſerve their own Men if poſſibly they can; but theſe being Requeſts contrary to the *Chriſtian* Principles, are never granted or complied with.

When a Criminal is hanged, the King with the Relations of the deceaſed come and pull him by the Hand and ſay Words to this purpoſe: *Thou wilt never play any more*

more roguiſh Tricks in this World, and whether art thou gone now to play thy Tricks. When the Criminal is dead and taken down, they are perfectly eaſy, and free from all manner of Concern about him, though a few Days before ſo unwilling to deliver him up; they generally end theſe Tragedies in Feaſting and a fit of Laughter, which puts an end to their Mourning for the loſs of their Friend, and never think of the deceas'd more.

Their Burials are different from each other, every Nation having peculiar Methods of their own; ſome of which I ſhall here give an account of, *viz.* They raiſe a Mole of Earth, the Mould whereof they take great pains to make ſmooth, and is higher or lower according to the Dignity of the Perſon deceas'd, whoſe Monument it is, over which there is a Shade or Umbrella, made Ridge-ways, like the Roof of a Houſe, this is ſupported by nine Stakes or ſmall Poſts driven into the Ground, the Grave being about ſix or eight Feet in length, and near four Feet in breadth, about which they hang *Gourds*, *Feathers*, and ſuch like Trophies placed by the dead Man's Relations, in reſpect to him in the Grave. The other parts of the Funeral Rights are thus: As ſoon as the Party is dead, they lay the Corps upon a piece of the Bark of a Tree in the Sun, ſeaſoning or embalming it with a ſmall Root beaten to Powder, which they have in plenty, but will never diſcover to the *Europeans* where it grows, it looks as red as *Vermillion*, which they mix with *Bear's-oil*, to beautifie and preſerve their Hair. After the Carcaſe has lain a Day or two in the Sun, they remove and lay it upon Crotches made for that purpoſe to ſupport it from the Earth; they anoint it all over with the above mentioned Oyntment made of the *Red Root* and *Bear's-greaſe*; when this is done, they cover it all over very exactly with the Barks of the *Pine*,

Pine, or *Cypreſs* Tree, to prevent the Rain falling upon it, and other injuries of the Weather, frequently ſweeping the Ground very clean about it. Some of his neareſt Relations bring all the Temporal Eſtate he was poſſeſt of at his Death, ſuch as *Guns*, *Bows* and *Arrows*, *Beads*, *Feathers*, *Deer Skins*, *Matchcoats*, and the like, wherewith they adorn the Grave. The neareſt Relation is the principal Mourner, being clad in Moſs (that grows upon Trees) after a very odd and ſtrange manner, with a Stick in his Hand, keeping a mournful Ditty for three or four Days, his Face being made as black as a *Negroe* with the Smoak and Soot of the *Pitch Pine*, mingled with *Bear's-greaſe*; during this time he tells all the Spectators that approach near him, or paſs by, who the deceaſed was, and what great Feats he performed in his life time, all tending to the Praiſe of the defunct.

When the Fleſh grows Mellow, and cleaves from the Bones, they take it off and burn it, making the Bones very clean, and anoint them with Ointment, wrapping the Scull up very carefully in a Cloth artificially woven of *Poſſum's Hair* or a dreſſed *Deer Skin* which they every Year or oftner, cleanſe and anoint with the *Red Oyntment*, by theſe Means they preſerve them for many Ages; they likewiſe carry them from place to place as they remove their Dwellings; that it is common to ſee an *Indian* in the Poſſeſſion of the Bones of his Grandfather, Father, or ſome Relation of longer Antiquity.

They have other ſorts of Monuments or Tombs for the dead, as where one was ſlain, in that very Place they raiſe a heap of Stones, if any are to be met with in the Place, if not, with Sticks, to his Memory; that every one that paſſeth by that place augments the Heap in reſpect of the deceas'd. Some Nations of theſe *Indians* have great rejoycing and Feaſts at their Burials.

There

There are other Nations who differ from the former in burying their Dead: When one of them dies, the greater he was in Dignity, the more Expenſive is his Funeral, and performed with the greater Ceremony: When a King dies, they bury him with a great deal of Solemnity; (according to their Method) upon his Grave they ſet the Cup wherein he uſed to drink out of, about the Grave they ſtick many Arrows, weep and faſt three Days ſucceſſively without ceaſing; all the Kings who were his Friends make the like Mourning, in token of the Love they had for him; they cut off more than the one half of their Hair, the Women as well as the Men: During the ſpace of ſix Moons (ſo ſome Nations reckon their Months) there are certain Women appointed which lament the death of the King, crying with a loud Voice three time a Day, *viz.* Morning, Noon, and in the Evening. All the goods of the King are put into his Houſe, and then they ſet it on Fire wherein they conſume all. They likewiſe bury the Body of the *Prieſts* or *Conjurors* in their Houſes, which they ſet on Fire with all the Goods.

For it is to be obſerv'd, notwithſtanding theſe People are ſo very illiterate and bred after ſuch a Savage manner: Yet they have as great regard and reſpect for their Kings and great Men, as any People to be met with: When any of theſe great Men dye, their methods in their Burials are different from the former, for the firſt thing that is done is to place the neareſt Relations nigh the Corps, who Mourn and Weep very much, having their Hair hanging down their Shoulders in a very Forlorn manner. After the dead Perſon has lain a Day and a Night upon their Hurdles made of Canes, commonly in ſome out Houſe prepared for that purpoſe. Thoſe that Officiate about the Funeral go into the Town, and the

the firſt young Men they meet with that have *Blankets* or *Match-coats* on, which they think fit for their turn, they ſtrip them from their Backs, who ſuffer them ſo to do without any manner of reſiſtance; this being common amongſt ſeveral of their Nations; theſe they wrap the dead Bodies in, and cover them with two or three Mats, which the *Indians* make of *Ruſhes*, and laſt of all they have a long Web of woven *Reeds* or *Hollow Canes*, which is their *Coffin*, and is brought round the Corps ſeveral times and tyed at both ends, which indeed looks very decent, and well amongſt theſe Savages.

Then the Corps is brought out of the Houſe into their Orchard of Peach Trees, where another Hurdle is made to receive it, about which come all the Relations and Nation that the dead Perſon belong'd to, beſides ſeveral other Nations in alliance with them, they all ſit down upon Mats on the Ground, ſpread for that purpoſe, every one ſeemingly dejected for the loſs of their deceas'd Friend and Country-man, but more eſpecially the Relations.

Things being thus accomodated, their Prieſts or Conjurers appear, and after having commanded their Attention, and every one is ſilent, he pauſes for ſome ſhort time, then begins to give an Account who the deceaſed Perſon was, how ſtout a Man he approved himſelf, how many Enemies and Captives he had kill'd and taken, how ſtrong, tall, and nimble he was, that he was a great Hunter, a lover of his Country, and poſſeſſed of a great many beautiful Wives and Children; which is eſteemed the greateſt of Bleſſings amongſt them, in which they have a very true Notion. Thus this Orator runs on highly extolling the dead Man for his Valour, Conduct, Strength, Riches, good Humour, and even enumerating his Guns, Slaves, and all he was poſſeſt of when living.

After

After this he addreſſes himſelf to the People of that Town or Nation to whom the deceaſed belonged, and bids them ſupply his Place by following his Steps, who he aſſures them is gone into a Country (which lies a great way off in this World, that the Sun viſits in his ordinary Courſe) where he ſhall meet with all his Relations and Friends who are gone there before him, that he ſhall have the enjoyment of handſome Women, great ſtore of *Deer* to hunt, and never meet with Hunger, Cold or Fatigue, but every thing to anſwer his Expectation and Deſire.

This is the Heaven which they propoſe to themſelves, but on the contrary, for thoſe *Indians* that are Lazy and Thieviſh amongſt them, bad Hunters, and no Warriors, nor of much uſe to the Nation, to ſuch they allot in the other World, or the Country that they are to go to, Hunger, Cold, Fatigues, Trouble, old Ugly Women for their Companions, *Snakes*, and all ſorts of Naſtineſs for them conſtantly to feed upon; after this manner they diſcribe their *Heaven* and *Hell*.

After all this Harangue, he amuſes the People with ſome of their traditions, as when there was a violent hot *Summer*, or very hard *Winter*, when any notable diſtemper rag'd amongſt them, when they were at War with ſuch and ſuch Nations, how victorious they were, what were the Names of the *War Captains*, and many other things of Antiquity; and to prove the times more exactly, he produces the Records of the Country, which are a parcel of *Reeds* of different lengths, with variety of diſtinct markes, and Notches, known to none but themſelves, (by which they ſeem to gueſs very exactly at accidents that happen'd many Years ago, nay two or three Ages or more.

They

They likewiſe give an Account that in the Year 1608, there was ſuch a hard *Winter* in *North-Carolina*, that the great Sound was ſo Frozen, that the *Wild Geeſe* and other Fowl came into the Woods to eat *Acorns*, that they were ſo tame (I ſuppoſe through want) that they kill'd abundance in the Woods by knocking them on the Head with Sticks, and it is very ſtrange how exactly one Nation will agree with another as to the time when theſe things happen'd, having no manner of Records to guide them but theſe bits of Sticks.

But to returne to the dead Man, when this long Tale is ended by the *Conjuror* that ſpoke firſt; perhaps a ſecond begins another long ſtory, a third, and fourth, if there be ſo many of theſe *Prieſts* or *Doctors* preſent, which all tell partly one and the ſame thing, at laſt the Corps is brought away from the *Hurdle* to the *Grave* by four young Men, attended by the Relations, the King, old Men and moſt part of the Nation.

When they come to the *Sepulchre* which is about ſix Feet deep, and eight Feet long, having at each end (that is at the Head and Feet) a *Light-wood* or *Pitch Pine-fork* driven down cloſe to the ſides of the *Grave*, firmly into the Ground (theſe two *Forks* are to contain a *Ridge Pole*, as I ſhall preſently deſcribe) before they lay the Corps into the *Grave*, the bottom is covered two or three times over with the Barks of Trees, then they let down the Corps (with two *Belts*, that the *Indians* carry their Burthens with) very leaſurely on the ſaid Bark, then they lay over a Pole of the ſame Wood into the two *Forks*, having a great many Pieces of *Pitch-Pine-logs* about two Feet and a half long, they ſtick down one End of them in the ſides of the *Grave*, and the other End lies on the *Ridge-Pole*, that they decline like the Roof of a Houſe, being thus placed, they cover them (many double) with Barks

Barks of Trees, and throw the Earth thereon that was taken out of the *Grave*, and beat it down very firm: By this means the dead Body lies as in a *Vault*, nothing touching it, which I esteem a very decent way amongst them, having seen several *Christians* buried without the tenth part of that Ceremony and Decency.

As soon as the Flesh begins to cleave from the Bones, they take up the Carcasses and scrape them clean, which they joint in the nature of a *Skeleton*; afterwards they dress them up in pure white *Deer skins*, and depositе them amongst their Kings and Grandees in their *Quiogozon*, which is their Royal Tomb, or Burial Place of their Kings and *War Captains*. This is a large and magnificent Cabin amongst them (according to their way or method of Building) raised at the publick Charge of the Nation, and maintained in due form and neatness. About seven Feet high is a Floor or Loft, whereon lye the Bones of all the Princes and Great Men that have died for several hundred Years past, attired in the *Dressed Deer Skins*, as I have before Remarked. No Person is allowed to have his Bones lie in this *Quiogozon* or *Charnel House*, and to be thus dress'd, unless he gives a good Sum of their Money to the Rulers for Admittance.

It is to be observed, that if they remove to any part of the Continent, they seldom fail to carry these Bones along with them, though the tediousness of their short daily Marches keep them never so long on their Journies. They reverence and adore this *Quiogozon*, with all the Veneration and Respect that is possible for such a People to discharge; they had rather loose all they are possessed of than have any Violence or Injury offered thereto; by this we may see what a Respect they have for their deceas'd Ancestors.

They differ ſome ſmall matter in their Burials from each other, ſome burying right upwards, and ſome otherwiſe, as I have before intimated; yet for the moſt part they all agree in their Method of Mourning, which is to appear every Night, or oftner, at the Sepulchre, and weep and howl after a diſmal manner, having their Faces daubed over with *Light-wood-Soot*, and *Bear's-oil*, which makes the Face as black as *Oil* and *Lamp-black* could do. In this black Figure they remain for a Year or longer, according to the Dignity of the deceaſs'd.

If the deceaſs'd Perſon was a Grandee, ſuch as a *King* or *War Captain*, and the like, to carry on the Funeral Ceremonies with greater Formality and Pomp, they hire People to cry and lament over the deceas'd: There are ſeveral Perſons of both Sexs that practice this for a livelyhood, and are expert at ſhedding abundance of Tears, and howling like a Parcel of *Wolves*, or diſtracted People in *Bedlam*; by this means they diſcharge their Office with abundance of Art, and great Applauſe from the *Indians*. Theſe People regarding thoſe kind of Performances or Ceremonies very reſpectfully, looking upon them as Rights juſtly due to the deceaſs'd.

Their Women are never accompanied with with theſe Pomps or Ceremonies after Death; and to what World they allot that Sex, I could never learn, unleſs it be to wait on their deceaſs'd Husbands, or to be metamorphoſed into thoſe pretty and ugly Women in the other World or Country where the *Indian* Men expect to go after death, which I have before made mention of. Yet theſe Women have more Wit than ſome of the *Eaſtern* Nations (as we are informed) who ſacrifice themſelves to accompany their Husbands in the other World, which the former never do. It is the deceaſed Perſon's Relations by Blood, as his Sons, Daughters, Brothers, Siſters, Uncles, Couſins,

Cousins, that mourn in earnest; the Wives thinking their Duty discharged, and that they are become free when their Husbands are Dead, all their Care being to look out as fast as they can for another to supply his Place.

Thus I have given the most exact Account of the *Indians* of *Carolina* Conjuring over the *Sick*, *Stolen Goods*, and the Nature and Manner of burying their dead. I shall therefore make a small Degression, to inform my Readers with the manner of our Travelling up to the *Charokee Mountains*, having already set forth the many and different Observations we made in this spacious Country, and then proceed to the *Indian Distempers*; some of which I have been Eye-witness to.

The latter end of *February*, *Anno. Dom.* 1730, we set out on our intended Journey, being in Number Ten *White Men*, and Two *Indians*, who served for our Huntsmen and Interpreters. Having provided a sufficient quantity of *Fire-Arms*, *Amunition*, *Horses*, two *Mariners Compasses*, *Rum*, *Salt*, *Pepper*, *Indian Corn*, and other Necessaries, we began our Journey; and after we had past the *Christian Plantations*, our Accommodations were as follows: All the Day we were diverted with variety of beautiful and strange Objects; in the Evening we encamped an Hour before Sunset, tyed our Horses to Trees near us, which we made the *Indians* climb up to procure a sufficient quantity of *Moss* for their Food, and to make Beds for us to lie upon, which was generally under the shade of some large Tree: Our next Business was to send the *Indians* to Hunt; our Care in the mean time was to make a large Fire of the broken pieces of Timber which we found in plenty lying dispersed up and down the Woods; this we piled up in order to con-

time burning all Night, which prevented all manner of Wild Beasts and pernicious *Insects* being troublesome, or approaching us or our Horses.

As soon as our *Indians* had discharged one or two shots, and given us a signal of their Success by *Hollowing*, we immediately dispatched some of our Party to their assistance, to bring home the Game they had killed; for they seldom return'd without more than a sufficient quantity of *Venison*, *wild Turkies*, and other Game for the support of all our Company, during our whole Journey. Being thus provided with Provisions, our next business was to perform our *Cookery*, which consisted chiefly in *Roasting* and *Broiling*, according as each Person was disposed. When Supper was ready, and a sufficient quantity of *Indian Corn* roasted, which we made use of instead of Bread, we sat down upon the Ground, and generally eat with a good Appetite, the Air being no where better or purer than near the Mountains. In this manner we supped each Night, our Kitchin Furniture being a *Wooden Spit*, and our *Table*, *Dishes* and *Trenchers* the Barks of Trees. Supper being ended, we made our *Punch* (the Bowl being a large *Gourd*) which we distributed equally to each Person a good Harmony being observed amongst us during the whole Journey. At Night when our Company were disposed to rest, we made our Beds of *Moss* near the fire, where we slept comfortably, keeping a constant Watch by turns every four Hours. Thus we enjoyed ourselves 'till our arrival at the Mountains, and what continually rendered our Journey more agreeable was the beautiful Prospect of the Country, being adorned with Woods, Savannas, spacious Rivers, together with various kinds of *Beasts*, *Birds*, *Fishes*, &c.

It would not be proper to trouble the Reader with the Adventures of each Day, and the many Observations we made

made therein, these being sufficiently set forth already: Let it suffice to inform them, that after fifteen Days Journey, we arrived at the foot of the Mountains, having met with no Human Specie all the way. It seems upon our first arival we were discovered by a Party of the *Iroquois Indians*, who, as I said before, are very powerful, and continually at War, wandering all over the Continent betwixt the two Bays of *Mexico* and St. *Lawrence*. As soon as they had discovered us they disapeared, (as we were afterwards informed) and gave Notice thereof to their King, who sent immediately an Ambassador, or one of his Attendants, painted as red as *Vermillion*, together with a strong Party of his Men, armed with Bows and Arrows.

When they appeared the second time, the Retinue halted at about half a Mile distant from us and the Ambassador attended with one Person, came to the Place where we were (which was in a large *Savanna*) with a green Bough in his Hand, and gave us to understand that he was sent to us by Order of his King, who desired to know whether we came for Peace or War, or what other Business had brought us to those Parts; In such like Speeches he accosted us. We assured him by our *Indian* Interpreters, that we were come in a friendly manner, with no other Design than a Curiosity of viewing the Mountains. When we had thus satisfied him he sat down with us, and dispatched the other Person that attended him, to acquaint the King with the Reasons of our coming.

During his Abience, we entertained the Ambassador with *Punch*, and made him a Present of some few Toys, which he accepted of, and was highly pleased therewith. About four Hours after the Messenger returned, whom the Ambassador received at a little distance from us, where

where they discourſed for ſome time, and at his return told us, that the Meſſage from the King was, to deſire us to make him a Viſit, aſſuring us at the ſame Time of his Friendſhip. This Meſſage occaſioned ſeveral Debates to ariſe amongſt us, concerning the conſequence that might attend it; we ſeemed unwilling to go, which he perceiving, aſſured us in the ſtrongeſt Terms of our ſafety, and the Sincerity and Friendſhip of the King. At length, rather than incur his Diſpleaſure (notwithſtanding we were determined to ſell our Lives at the deareſt rate, if we met with any oppoſition) we complied, and arrived about ſix o'Clock at the *Indian* Town (attended with the Guards that came with the Ambaſſador, who marched at ſome diſtance from us) and were conducted to the State Houſe, where the King was ſeated with his *War Captains* and *Councellors*, who got up and placed us next to him; after we had paid our due acknowledgments to him, and made him ſome Preſents, he then began to enquire the Reaſons of our coming thither, and among other things, *How his Brother did*, meaning the Governor; and many other ſuch like Speeches paſſed between us. After we had ſatisfied him in each particular that he demanded, he bid us welcome, ſhaking Hands with each of us; aſſuring us of his Friendſhip, and the great Regard he had for thoſe of our Nation. The few Preſents we gave (which were *Knives*, *Glaſs Beads*, *Punch*, and the like) had made ſo favourable an Impreſſion in the Breaſt of his Majeſty, and all his Councellors, in our behalf, that the King's Orders were iſſued out immediately, ſtrictly charging all his Subjects to treat us in the moſt friendly manner, and ſupply us with whatever we had occaſion for during our Pleaſure to ſtay amongſt them. After all theſe Speeches were ended, towards Night we were diſmiſſed, and conducted to one of the

King's

King's Houſes (being an Apartment prepared for us) where we lay upon Benches, with the Skins of Beaſts for our Covering; and this was the beſt Lodging we met with ſince our departure from the *Chriſtians*. They took particular Care of our Horſes, and treated us with all the good Nature poſſibly to be expected from them, ſupplying us with ſufficient quantities of Proviſion, ſuch as *Veniſon*, *Wildfowl*, *Fiſh*, and various Kinds of dried *Fruits*, *Pulſe*, and *Water*, no ſtronger Liquors are to be met with amongſt theſe People.

The King's Houſes are partley in the Center of the Town, the reſt of the Buildings being erected in a confuſed Order, no regular Streets, Shops, or even Handycraft Trades, are to be met with amongſt them.

The news of our arrival brought prodigious Numbers of Men and Women to us, as alſo Boys and Girls, who were ſtark Naked; theſe would come and touch our Cloaths, and view us with admiration, having I am ſatisfied, never had an opportunity to behold any thing of this Nature before. The King diverted us every Day with Men and Women Dancing, ſhooting with Bows and Arrows, their Warlik Exerciſe, and ſeveral other kinds of Diverſions, wherein he imagined we took any Pleaſure. Finding our ſelves thus in favour with the King, the firſt requeſt we made was, that we might have leave to ſee the *Quiogozon*, or *Charnel Houſe*, which was the largeſt of that Nature we had ever beheld: He eaſily complied with our Requeſt, but with a ſtrict Charge, that we ſhould do no hurt, either to the Bones, or any other thing that we ſhould obſerve there.

Two Days after our Arrival, we requeſted the King to have Liberty to depart, in order to view the Mountains, which he ſeemed very unwilling to comply with, preſſing us to continue longer with him, urging many Arguments

Arguments to perſuade us; and that we had not as yet ſufficiently refreſhed ourſelves after our late Fatigue: But we aſſured him that our Governor had given us ſtrict Orders at our Departure, to be as expeditious as poſſibly we could in our return home. Theſe Conſiderations at length moved him to a compliance ſooner than he intended. But the chief Reaſon of our departing ſo ſoon was, that if we had remained there much longer, we ſhould be deprived of all our *Rum*, which was a great ſupport to us in this long and tedious Journey. The King then offered us a Party of his Men to guard us in the Mountains, leaſt we ſhould be moleſted by any *Indians* that might be Hunting in them, during our ſtay there. We moſt gratefully returned him our due Acknowledgments for his kind offer, and the many Favours he had already conferred upon us, and moſt humbly beg'd to be excuſed, which he readily granted us.

Having thus obtained our Licence of Departure, we made him a Preſent of a Bottle of *Rum*, in lieu whereof he gave us *Indian Corn*, *Veniſon*, and ſome dried *Fruits*, for our ſupport in the Mountains, where Proviſions are ſcarce. All things being prepared as uſual, we ſet out the next Morning about ſix o'Clock, continuing our Journey ſtill *Weſtward*: The King and his Guards conducted us about half a Mile, wiſhing us Health, and intreating us at the ſame time, to make him a Viſit at our Return, which we did not, taking a Tour another way.

About the Evening we approached to the top of one of theſe Mountains, where we refreſhed, being all in perfect Health. Here we had the greateſt difficulty to be ſuppliedwith Moſs for Proviſion for our Horſes, but after ſome time ſearching, we found what was ſufficient for them; then making a great Fire, and our Beds for

that

Night of the withered Leaves of the Trees, which we gathered for that Purpose. The next Morning very early having refreshed ourselves, we set forward, and in the Evening got on the other side of the first Ridge of Mountains into a most beautiful Valley, adorned with *Woods*, *Savannas*, and a very rich Soil; here we encamped this Night, being the longest Days Journey we made from our first setting out, by reason that we were destitute of Water in these barren places, for our selves and Horses, only what we met with by chance in the hollow parts of the Rocks, which our Horses would hardly drink.

The next Morning we set forward with a great deal of Chearfulness, having plenty of Water, and all manner of Provisions. In this Days Journey we discovered an *Indian* in the solitary parts of the Woods, but as soon as he espyed us, he fled, notwithstanding we made signs to him to come to us, but in vain, for he quickly vanished out of our sight, that we could not learn what Nation he belonged to, or whether there were any more with him in those Parts. After two Days Journey we arrived at another Ridge of rocky Mountains, with large Trees in several Places, but little or no Pasture like the former, but much higher, having a beautiful Prospect of large Woods and Forrests, as far as our sight would permit. From this Mountain we returned, making our Journey Eastward; meeting with nothing worthy of Observation, but what we have already made mention of; and in thirty two Days, to our great Satisfaction, arrived amongst the *Christians*, our Company being all in perfect Health, having had no Misfortune all the way, but the loss of one of our Compasses.

As there are in this Country many poysonous Herbs and Creatures, so the *Indian* People have excellent Skill

in applying effectual Antidotes to them; for *Medicinal Herbs* are here found in great Plenty, the *Woods* and *Savannas* being their *Apothecary's Shops*, from whence they fetch *Herbs*, *Leaves*, *Barks of Trees*, with which they make all their Medicines, and perform notable Cures; of which it may not be amiss to give some Instances, because they seem strange, if compared with our Method of curing Distempers. They have a certain Method in poysoning their Arrows, and they will temper them so as to work slow or swift as they please; they can make it so strong, that no Art can save the Person or Beast that is wounded with them, except it be by their Kings and Conjurers, their young Men being ignorant of it.

They use Sweating very much, especially if violent Pains seize the Limbs, or any other part of the Body, which is performed by certain Vegetables which they are well acquainted with; for as soon as they are afflicted with these kind of Disorders, they take Reeds or small Wands and bend them, with these they make little Huts, covering them with *Deer Skins*, *Blankets*, or their *Matchcoats*, and the like; they have other Sweating Houses built in shape like large Ovens; they have Fires made not far from these Sweating Houses, wherein they heat Stones, or (where these are wanting) the Bark of Trees, putting them into these Stoves, which occasion an extraordidary Heat, by the help of which, and the Herbs which are boiled in a Pot, they sweat very plentifully. They likewise use Bathing often in the Waters for the like Disorders.

They never miss curing most kinds of *Cutaneous Eruptions* by the Plants that are produced in this Country: They infallibly cure *Scald Heads*, which they chiefly perform with Oil of *Acorns*, but from which *Oak* I never could be rightly informed, they being very secret in what

what they know. They cure Burns beyond Credit; I have ſeen of theſe Wretches burnt in their Drunkeneſs after ſuch a miſerable manner, that in all Appearance they could not live; yet I have ſeen them cured in a very ſhort time, contrary to all expectation; that they have been capable of going abroad in ten or twelve Days. I have known others to be miſerably burnt with Gun Powder, which they have cured in a ſhort time; but by what Ingredients they perform theſe ſpeedy and wonderful Cures is known to none but themſelves. They ſeldom or never make known any Secrets of this Nature to the *Europeans*, but are very ready to ſerve them upon ſuch Occaſions, if required, for a ſmall Gratuity.

What is worthy of Obſervation is, that amongſt all theſe *Indians* there are no running inveterate *Ulcers* to be met with, neither do their Wounds turn to a *Gangrene*, and they are very expert in healing all manner of *green Wounds* and *Diſlocations*, which they perform ſo ſpeedily, that I dare boldly ſay, that they are thegreateſt Artiſts in theſe kind of Performances of any People in the known World.

There was a Planter in *North Carolina* who had a grievous *Ulcer* in his Leg for many Years, which was deemed incurable by all thoſe that beheld it; and many attempts were made by the beſt *Chriſtian* Artiſts in that Country to perfect the Cure, but all to no purpoſe, for his Leg ſtill grew worſe and worſe; at laſt he was prevailed upon to apply himſelf to one of thoſe *Indian* Doctors, who performed the Cure in a very ſhort time for the value of three Shillings *Sterling*, though it had coſt him above one hundred Pounds before to little or no Purpoſe.

The *Indian* Doctor performed this Cure after the following manner; firſt he ma e a ſtrong Decoction of the

Bark of the Root of *Sassafras*, in which he bathed the Patients Leg very well, then he took the rotten Grains of the *Maiz*, or *Indian Corn*, well dried and beaten to Powder, and the soft Down that grows upon the *Turkeys* Rump, with this he quickly dried up the filthy *Ulcer*, and made a perfect Cure, of what was thought incurable, to the great Joy and Satisfaction of the Planter, who had so long laboured under it. This I had affirmed to me by the Planter himself, and several others that were Eye-witnesses to the whole Affair.

The *Pox* is to be met with amongst some Nations of these *Indians*, being as it is Reported, communicated to them by the *Europeans*, it being a Distemper intirely unknown to them before their Arrival. By this Disorder, some of them have lost their Noses, and particularly one of their greatest *Conjurers*, whom I have seen and conversed with; but whether or no this Distemper was known to them before the *Christians* came amongst them, I will not take upon me to decide it, being no way material to my present Design, which is only to satisfie my Readers with the Advantages and Disadvantages that are to be met with in this Spacious part of the World.

These *Savages* of late cure this Distemper with certain *Berries* (that grow in this Province) which Salivate like *Mercury*, notwithstanding they use Sweating and strong Decoctions with it, as they do almost upon every Occasion, and when they are in the greatest Extreamity of Heat, leap into the Rivers or Ponds of Water, by which Practice many have lost their Lives, yet at present it is not sufficient to deter them from this kind of Practice.

The *Yaws*, is a Venerial Disorder (as I said before) in all respects like the *Pox*, only it is not attended with

a *Gonorrhœa* in the beginning, but having all the other Symptoms that attend that Diſorder, ſuch as *Cutaneous Eruptions, Nocturnal Pains*, &c. This Diſtemper of late has been communicated to the *Indians* by the *Chriſtian* Traders, and though it is not very common amongſt them, yet ſome few have loſt their Noſes by it, and others are become moſt miſerable Spectacles by neglecting it's Cure; at laſt they make a ſhift to cure or patch themſelves up, and live for many Years after; ſuch Men commonly turn *Doctors* amongſt them, and ſome of theſe *No-Noſe Doctors* are in very great Eſteem amongſt them. The Juice of the *Tulip* Tree is uſed by the *Indians* as a proper Remedy for this Diſtemper.

The *Small Pox* proved very fatal amongſt them in the late War with the *Chriſtians*, few or none ever eſcaping Death that were ſeized with it. This Diſtemper was intirely unknown to them before the arrival of the *Europeans* amongſt them. Their Method in this, as in all other Fevers, is to run directly into the Water in the extremity of the Diſeaſe, which ſtrikes it in and kills moſt that uſe that Method.

They uſe *Scarification* in moſt Diſtempers; their chief Inſtruments are the Teeth of the *Rattle-Snake*, which they poyſon with upon occaſion. They take out the Teeth of the *Snake*, and ſuck out the Venome with their Mouth, which they ſpit on the Ground, and receive no damage thereby; it is of a greeniſh Colour, as I have frequently obſerved. Theſe Teeth they keep for the uſes above-mentioned, having no Notion of *Lancets*, or other Inſtrument proper in thoſe Operations.

The *Spleen* is a common Diſtemper with the *Indians* in this Province, which they cure by burning on the Belly with a *Reed* or *Hollow Cane*, after the following manner: They take the *Cane* and put the End into the Fire

Fire, where they burn it 'till it is red hot, then they lay the Patient on his Back, and place a piece of thin Leather on his Belly, between the Pit of the Stomach and the Navel, to preſs the hot *Reed* on the *Leather*, which burns the Patient to that degree, that they ever after have the Impreſſion of the *Reed* wherever it was laid: This Method is ſometimes uſed amongſt them for the Belly Ach.

The *Plague* was never known amongſt the *Indians* that I could ever learn; yet the *Small Pox*, their continual Wars with each other, their poyſoning, and ſeveral other Diſtempers and Methods amongſt them, and particularly their drinking *Rum* to exceſs, have made ſuch great deſtruction amongſt them, that I am well informed, that there is not the tenth *Indian* in number, to what there was ſixty Years ago.

They have a kind of *Rheumatiſm*, which generally afflicts their Legs with grievous Pains, and violent Heats; whilſt they are thus tortured, they employ the young People continually to power cold Water upon the part aggrived, 'till ſuch time as the Pains are abated, and they become perfectly eaſy, uſing no other Method for this kind of Diſorder.

They are never troubled with the *Scurvy*, neither are they afflicted with the *Dropſy*, *Diabetes*, *Gout*, *Stone*, *Pthiſick*, *Conſumption*, *Aſthma*, or *Palſie*, which Diſtempers are too well known amongſt us, and frequently attended with moſt fatal Conſequences. Neither is the *Struma* to be met with amongſt them, and many other *European* Diſtempers too tedious to name.

They have ſeveral Remedies which they uſe for the *Tooth-ach*, which frequently carries off the Pain; but if all their Endeavours ſhould fail, they have recourſe to punching out the Tooth, which is done with a ſmall

Cnae

Cane placed againſt it, on a bit of Leather, then they ſtrike the *Reed* and puſh out the Tooth, this they perform with a great deal of Dexterity, and never endanger the Jaw, which other Inſtruments are apt to do.

They ſeldom make uſe of *Amputation*, except it be to the Captives that they take in War, when they cut off the Feet, which I have mentioned in another Place. But in any immoderate defluctions of Blood, or any other Humour from any part of the Body, they are never at a loſs for a ſpeedy Cure.

I never obſerved any of them to practice *Anatomy*, neither do I believe that they have any Knowledge therein, unleſs as I obſerved before, that they make *Skeletons* of their Kings and great Men's Bones. They can colour the Hair Black, though of a Reddiſh Colour, or any other Colour, which they do with a certain Seed or a Plant that grows in their Plantations. They make uſe of no Minerals in *Phyſick*, and very little of Animals, but chiefly depend on *Vegetables*, for all Diſorders amongſt them. They are well acquainted with the *Spontaneous Plants* that are produced in theſe Parts of the World; and a Flux of Blood ſeldom or never follows any of their Operations.

They are ſcarce ever known to make uſe of any *Gums* or *Roſins* in their Phyſick; as for *Catharticks* and *Emeticks*, ſo much in faſhion in *Europe*, they do not eſteem or make uſe of, unleſs it be immoderate Drinking ſuch vaſt quantities of their *Taupan Tea*, and vomiting it up again, this they continue every Morning, or oftner, where they can have this Plant, from which they receive great Benefit, not only in diſcharging and cleanſing the Stomach from the *peccant Humours* there lodged, but likewiſe by its great *Diuretick* quality which carries off thoſe Humours by the *Ureters*, that might be prejudicial

to

to their Health, and occaſion Fevers, Agues, and many other Diſtempers, which they are not ſo ſubject to as the *Europeans*; which I am ſatisfied is owing in a great meaſure to their conſtant uſe of this Plant, which takes away both Hunger and Thirſt for four and twenty Hours.

There is no Plant in theſe Parts in greater Veneration and Eſteem amongſt them than this is, and they frequently carry it to the *Weſtward Indians*, who give *Deer Skins*, and other Neceſſaries they want for it. They take the Leaves and ſmall Twigs, bruiſe them in Wooden Mortars, 'till they become of a blackiſh Colour, and wholly defaced: Then they take and put them into Earthen Pots, over the Fire, till they Smoak, ſtirring them all the time 'till they are cured: Others take them thus bruiſed, and put them into Earthen Bowls, under which they put live Coals and cover them with *Toupan* Leaves, 'till they have done Smoaking, often turning them over, then they ſpread them on Mats and dry them in the Sun or Shade for uſe.

They commonly in moſt of their Diſorders make uſe of the Juices of Plants, not out of any Foppery or Faſhion, as many *Europeans* and other Nations are often fond of, but purely to relieve and free Nature of the Oppreſſion and Burthen that ſhe labours under.

They neither uſe *Unguents* or *Fats* in any external Application for Wounds or Ulcers, but they ſometimes uſe the Fat of Animals to render their Limbs more pliable, and when they are weary to relieve the Joints.

The Bark of the Root of the *Saſſafras* Tree is very much uſed by them, which they generally *Torrefy* in the Embers, and ſtrip off the Bark from the Root, beating it into a Paſte, or a Conſiſtance fit to ſpread, ſo apply it

to

to the grieved parts, which not only cleanſes a foul Ulcer, but after Scarification, being applied to the Contuſion or Swelling, carries off the Pain, and aſſwages the Tumor. Yet theſe People in general are very careleſs and negligent of their Health.

In ſome Places theſe *Savages* Boyl and Roaſt their Meat extraordinary well, and eat abundance of *Broath* except thoſe *Savages* whom we call the Naked *Indians*, who never make uſe of any Soup. Theſe travel from the Banks of the *Meſſiſippi* to War againſt the *Sinagars* or *Iroquois Indians*, and are commonly too hard for them except they are over power'd by unequal Numbers. Theſe naked *Indians* will lye and ſleep in the Woods without any Fire or covering, being inur'd thereto from their Infancy. They are the moſt hardy of all *Indians* that are known, and run ſo faſt that they are never taken by any other *Indians* that purſue them. Their Enemies ſay that their Nimbleneſs and long Wind proceeds from their never making uſe of any *Broath*.

The Salts that the *Indians* in theſe parts make uſe of in their Meat, Bread, and Soup, to give them a grateful reliſh are *Alkalies*, *viz*, Aſhes made of the Wood of *Hickery* and calcin'd Bones of *Deers* and other Animals. They never eat any *Sallads*, and as for *Pepper*, and *Muſtard*, they imagine us to be no better than Madmen to make uſe of them at our Victuals.

The Veſſels that our Neighbouring *Indians* make uſe of and moſt other Nations are, Earthen-Pots of ſeveral ſizes. Their Diſhes and Wooden Platters are made of the ſweet *Gum Tree*, *Poplar*, *Sycomore*, and the like.

Thus I have releated their manner in curing ſeveral Diſtempers; I ſhall now only mention on ſtrange Account more, which was atteſted by the Planter himſelf, and ſeveral other credible Perſons in thoſe Parts.

There was an honeſt and ſubſtantial Planter in thoſe Parts who was afflicted with a ſtrange and lingring diſtemper, not uſual amongſt the *Chriſtians*, under which he emaciated and grew every Month worſe and worſe; this Diſorder continued for ſome Years, during which time he had made uſe of the beſt and ableſt *Doctors* and *Surgeons* in thoſe parts, but all to no purpoſe, for the Diſorder ſtill perſever'd. In the beginning of this Diſtemper the Patient was very wealthy, and had ſeveral Slaves which he was obliged to ſell to ſatisfie the *Doctors*. But one Day it happen'd, as he and his Wife were comiſerating his miſerable Condition, and that in all appearance he coud not expect to recover, and that Death muſt ſpeedily put a period to his Days, and then in what miſery he ſhoud leave his poor Wife and Family, ſince all his *Negroes* were already gone and diſpos'd off. Whilſt he and his Wife were thus debating the Misfortunes that in all probability might attend the Family after his Death. An *Indian* happen'd to come into the Houſe, who was well acquainted in the Family, and hearing their Diſcourſe (and having a very great regard and value for the Sick-man from whom he received many Favours) made this Reply to what he had heard them talk off, *Brother*, you have had a long fit of ſickneſs, you have given away your Slaves to the *Engliſh Doctors*, what made you do ſo, and now become Poor? They do not know how to cure you, for it is an *Indian* Diſtemper that troubles you, and they know not the Nature of it. If it had been a Diſtemper known in their Country, probably they cou'd have cured you. But had you employ'd me at firſt, I coud have cur'd you for a ſmall matter without taking your Slaves from you that provided *Corn* and other Neceſſaries for you, and your Family's ſupport. And yet if you will give me a *Blanket* to keep me

me warm and ſome *Powder* and *Shot*, to kill *Deer* with, I will do my beſt ſtill to recover your Health.

The Poor-man being very much dejected with the Misfortunes that he had already met with, made the *Indian* this reply. I know my Diſtemper is now paſt the power of Man to cure, and if our *Engliſh Doctor's* cou'd not cure it, I am throughly perſwaded that the *Indians* cannot.

But his Wife accoſted him in the moſt endearing and mild terms and told him, he did not know but God might be pleas'd to give a greater bleſſing to the *Indians* undertaking than he had done to the *Engliſh*, and likewiſe ſaid, if it ſhou'd pleaſe God that you ſhou'd dye, I cannot be much more miſerable by giving that ſmall trifle to the *Indian* which he demands. Therefore I beg of you to take my advice and try him.

At length by the many perſwaſions and Importunities of his Wife and Family he conſented. And when the bargain was concluded, the *Indian* went into the Woods and brought with him ſeveral kinds of Roots and Herbs, whereof he made a ſtrong Decoction and gave it to the Patient to drink, and immediately orderd him to go to Bed, adding that it would not be long before he wou'd return again to viſit him. The Patient punctually perform'd every thing as he was orderd by the *Indian*, and had not been long in Bed before the Potion that was adminiſter'd made him Sweat after the moſt violent manner that could be, and during its operation he ſmell'd ſo offenſively to himſelf and all thoſe that were near him, that ſcarce any one cou'd bear to go into the Houſe or Room where he lay.

Late in the Evening the *Indian* comes to viſit the Patient with a great *Rattle-Snake* alive (which terrified the Family almoſt out of their Senſes) and told the Sick-

man that he must take it to Bed with him, at which the Patient was in the greatest consternation in the World, and told the *Indian* that he might as well dye of the Distemper he had, as to be kill'd with the Bite of the *Rattle-Snake*. To which the *Indian* replyed he cou'd not bite him nor do him any harm, for he had already taken out his Poyson and Teeth, and shewed him by opening and putting his Finger into the *Snakes* Mouth, that they all were gone. At last by many perswasions and Intreaties of all that were present, he admitted of the *Snakes* company, which the *Indian* put about the Patients middle and order'd no Body to take it away, or even to meddle with it upon any account, which was strictly observ'd, altho' the Snake girded him as hard for a great while as if he had been drawn in by a *Belt*. At last he found the pressure grow weaker and weaker, till by degrees he felt it not; and opening the Bed the Snake was found dead, and the Patient thought himself grown much better. The *Indian* returned the next Morning to visit his Patient, and finding the Snake dead, was very much transported, and told the Sick-man the distemper was dead along with the Snake, which proved as he said, for the Man very speedily afterwards recover'd his Health, and became perfect well, and lived for many Years after this strange and wounderful Cure.

And what is remarkable in many parts of this Province as you travel up towards the Mountains and through the Woods, when ever you come to any places where the *Indians* formerly dwelt and had Towns, you shall find abundance of Flowers with variety of beautiful Colours, of several sorts, and divers Qualities, and Use; some being Physical others Poysonous, others for Ornament and sweet *Odor*, which at a distance have a fine prospect, and look like a beautiful Flower Garden, the uses whereof the

Indians

Indians are well acquainted with. I am perſwaded that the reaſon why they took all theſe pains in planting theſe Simples was owing to their *Doctor's* Care, that upon all Occaſions they might be provided with thoſe Vegetables that were proper for the *Indian* Diſtempers, or any other uſe they might have occaſion to make of them.

Theſe *Savages* have one of the moſt diabolical Cuſtoms amongſt them, that is to be met with in any part of the known World, which they call *Huſquenawing* their young Men and Girls. Once a Year, or at fartheſt, once in two Years, theſe *Savages* take up ſo many of them as they think are able to undergo this rigid Diſcipline, and *Huſquenaugh* them, which they ſay is to make them obedient and reſpective to their Superiours and inures them to all manner of Fatigues and Hardſhips, and without it they never wou'd be fit to be their *War-Captains*, or Capable to act in their Councils; by this Method they ſay their Children have the ſame benefit as the *European* Children have at their Schools, where they are taught good breeding and Letters. Beſides it carries off thoſe Weak and Infirm Bodies that wou'd have been a Burthen and diſgrace to their Nation.

This Houſe of Correction, or where they undergo this rigid Diſcipline, is a large ſtrong *Cabin*, made on purpoſe for the reception of theſe young Men and Girles that have not already paſs'd theſe Graduations. The Seaſon of the Year wherein they *Huſquenaugh* their youth is always about *Chriſtmas*, at this time they are brought into this Houſe, which is made as dark as any Dungeon, and almoſt ſtarved during the time they remain there. Beſides they give them *Pellitory*, and ſeveral intoxicating Plants that make them go raving Mad, they make the moſt diſmal and hidious cries and howlings that human Creatures are capable of expreſſing, all which continues about

about five or six Weeks, and the little Meat they are allowed to eat is the naſtieſt loathſome ſtuff imaginable. After the time is expired they are brought out of the *Cabin*, which is not in the Town, but at ſome diſtance from it, and is guarded by an *Indian* or two, nominated for that purpoſe, who Watch by turns. When they appear or firſt come abroad, they are as poor and Meager as it is poſſible for any Creatures to be, reſembling rather Skeletons than living Men; ſeveral of them dying under this Diabolical diſcipline. Moreover they either really are or pretend to be Dumb, and do not ſpake for a Month after they are out of their Confinement. It is likewiſe ſaid that after this Diſcipline is over, they have intirely forgot all the Actions of their paſt Lives.

Theſe *Savages* are deſcribed in their proper Colours but by very few, for thoſe that generally write Hiſtories of this *New World* are ſuch as Intereſt, Preferment, or Merchandize draw thither, who know no more of the People or Country, than I do of the *Laplanders*. If we will make juſt Remarks, how near ſuch Relations approach Truth, we ſhall find few worthy of Entertainment, and many parts of their Works ſtuft with Invectives againſt the Government they liv'd under, on which Stage is commonly acted greater Barbarities in murdering worthy Men's Reputations, than all the *Savages* of the *New World* are capable of equalizing, or even imitating. Theſe Authors likewiſe pretend to various and ſtrange accounts, about them, but their Relations ſeem much fitter to fill a Novel than a Hiſtory. I muſt therefore beg leave of the *Gay Part* of the World, who ſeem infinitely pleaſed with ſuch Relations in not gratifying them with the Particulars, which they themſelves will give leſs Credit to every Day as their Judgment ripens.

Laſtly,

Lastly, I shall mention some few Words of the *Indian* Language, together with the *English*, and so conclude this Treatise.

English.	Tuskeruro Indians.	Pamticoe Indians.	Woccon Indians.
One.	*Unche.*	*Weembot.*	*Tone.*
Two.	*Necke.*	*Neshin-nauh,*	*Numperre.*
Three.	*Ohs-sah.*	*Nish-woner.*	*Nam-mee.*
Four.	*Untoe.*	*Yau Ooner.*	*Punnum-punne.*
Five.	*Ouch-whe.*	*Umperren.*	*Webstau.*
Six.	*Hone-yoc.*	*Whoyeoc.*	*Is-sto.*
Seven.	*Chauh-noc.*	*Top-po-osh-*	*Nominis-sau.*
Eight.	*Nec-kara.*	*Nau-haush-shoo.*	*Nupsau.*
Nine.	*Wearah.*	*Pack-ic-conk.*	*Weihere.*
Ten.	*Wartsauh.*	*Cosh.*	*Soone-noponne.*
A Blanket	*Oorewa.*	*Mattosh.*	*Rooiune.*
A Coat.	*Kawhitchra.*	*Taus-won.*	*Rummissau.*
Englishman.	*Nickrerurouh.*	*Tosh-shonte.*	*Winsohore.*
The Fire.	*Utchar.*	*Tinda.*	*Yau.*
A Gun.	*Auk-noc.*	*Gau-hooptop.*	*Wittape.*
A Hat.	*Trossa.*	*Mottau-quahan.*	*Intome-posswa.*
Indians.	*Unqua.*	*Nuppin.*	*Tau-he.*
A Knife.	*Oosocke-nauh.*	*Rig-cosque.*	*Wee*
Rum.	*Onaquod.*	*Weesaccon.*	*Yup-se.*
Shot.	*Cauna.*	*Ar-rounser.*	*Week.*
Tobacco.	*Charho.*	*Hooh-pau.*	*Vu-coone.*
A Wife.	*Kateoca.*	*Squaba.*	*Tesau-au.*

0 1526

To enlarge any more upon this *Indian Jargon*, would be altogether needleſs, and troubleſome to the Reader; they have ſuch a ſtrange way of abbreviating their Speech when they are Debating in their grand Councils, that the young Men do not underſtand what they ſay or treat of. It is to be admir'd, what hath occaſioned ſo many different Speeches as they have; for the three Nations whoſe Languages I have now mentioned, are but a ſmall diſtance from each other. Theſe Differences in their Speech frequently occaſion Jealouſies and Fears amongſt them, and are often the Motives of their continual Wars with each other; and were it not for theſe continual Feuds and Animoſities amongſt themſelves, they would be as happy a People, as to this Life, as any upon the Earth.

F I N I S.

0737
B849n